

PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

PART 10 — REPRESENTATION OF OTHERS BEFORE THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

- Sec.
- 10.1 Definitions.
- 10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.
- 10.3 Committee on Enrollment.
- 10.4 Committee on Discipline.

- INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
- 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.
- 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.
- 10.7 Requirements for registration.
- 10.8 Oath and registration fee.
- 10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.
- 10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.
- 10.11 Removing names from the register.
- 10.12 - 10.13 [Reserved]
- 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.
- 10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.
- 10.16 - 10.17 [Reserved]
- 10.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Patent and Trademark Office.
- 10.19 [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

- 10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.
- 10.21 Canon 1.
- 10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.
- 10.23 Misconduct.
- 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.
- 10.25 - 10.29 [Reserved]
- 10.30 Canon 2.
- 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.
- 10.32 Advertising.

- 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.
- 10.34 Communication of fields of practice.
- 10.35 Firm names and letterheads.
- 10.36 Fees for legal services.
- 10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.
- 10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.
- 10.39 Acceptance of employment.
- 10.40 Withdrawal from employment.
- 10.41 - 10.45 [Reserved]
- 10.46 Canon 3.
- 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.
- 10.48 Sharing legal fees.
- 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.
- 10.50 - 10.55 [Reserved]
- 10.56 Canon 4.
- 10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.
- 10.58 - 10.60 [Reserved]
- 10.61 Canon 5.
- 10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.
- 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.
- 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.
- 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.
- 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.
- 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.
- 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.
- 10.69 - 10.75 [Reserved]
- 10.76 Canon 6.
- 10.77 Failing to act competently.
- 10.78 Limiting liability to client.
- 10.79 - 10.82 [Reserved]
- 10.83 Canon 7.
- 10.84 Representing a client zealously.
- 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.
- 10.86 [Reserved]
- 10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.
- 10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.
- 10.89 Conduct in proceedings.
- 10.90 - 10.91 [Reserved]
- 10.92 Contact with witnesses.
- 10.93 Contact with officials.

- 10.94 - 10.99 [Reserved]
- 10.100 Canon 8.
- 10.101 Action as a public official.
- 10.102 Statements concerning officials.
- 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.
- 10.104 - 10.109 [Reserved]
- 10.110 Canon 9.
- 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.
- 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.
- 10.113 - 10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

- 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.
- 10.131 Investigations.
- 10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.
- 10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.
- 10.134 Complaint.
- 10.135 Service of complaint.
- 10.136 Answer to complaint.
- 10.137 Supplemental complaint.
- 10.138 Contested case.
- 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.
- 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.
- 10.141 Filing of papers.
- 10.142 Service of papers.
- 10.143 Motions.
- 10.144 Hearings.
- 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.
- 10.146 - 10.148 [Reserved]
- 10.149 Burden of proof.
- 10.150 Evidence.
- 10.151 Depositions.
- 10.152 Discovery.
- 10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.
- 10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.
- 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.
- 10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.
- 10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.
- 10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.
- 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.
- 10.160 Petitioner for reinstatement.
- 10.161 Savings clause.
- 10.162 - 10.169 [Reserved]
- 10.170 Suspension of rules.

§ 10.1 Definitions.

This part governs solely the practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Patent and Trademark Office. Nothing in this part shall be construed to preempt the authority of each State to regulate the practice of law, except to the extent necessary for the Patent and Trademark Office to accomplish its federal objectives. Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this part:

(a) *Affidavit* means affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 (see § 1.68 and § 2.20 of this subchapter), or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.

(b) *Application* includes an application for a design, plant, or utility patent, an application to reissue any patent, and an application to register a trademark.

(c) *Attorney or lawyer* means an individual who is a member in good standing of the bar of any United States court or the highest court of any State. A "non-lawyer" is a person who is not an attorney or lawyer.

(d) *Canon* is defined in § 10.20(a).

(e) *Confidence* is defined in § 10.57(a).

(f) *Differing interests* include every interest that may adversely affect either the judgment or the loyalty of a practitioner to a client, whether it be a conflicting, inconsistent, diverse, or other interest.

(g) *Director* means the Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(h) *Disciplinary Rule* is defined in § 10.20(b).

(i) *Employee of a tribunal* includes all employees of courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(j) *Giving information* within the meaning of § 10.23(c) (2) includes making (1) a written statement or representation or (2) an oral statement or representation.

(k) *Law firm* includes a professional legal corporation or a partnership.

(l) *Legal counsel* means practitioner.

(m) *Legal profession* includes the individuals who are lawfully engaged in practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Office.

(n) *Legal service* means any legal service which may lawfully be performed by a practitioner before the Office.

(o) *Legal System* includes the Office and courts and adjudicatory bodies which review matters on which the Office has acted.

(p) *Office* means Patent and Trademark Office.

(q) *Person* includes a corporation, an association, a trust, a partnership, and any other organization or legal entity.

(r) *Practitioner* means (1) an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office in patent cases or (2) an individual authorized under 5 U.S.C. 500(b) or otherwise as provided by this subchapter, to practice before the Office in trademark cases or other non-patent cases. A "suspended or excluded practitioner" is a practitioner who is suspended or excluded under § 10.156. A "non-practitioner" is an individual who is not a practitioner.

(s) A *proceeding before the Office* includes an application, a reexamination, a protest, a public use proceeding, a patent interference, an *inter partes* trademark proceeding, or any other proceeding which is pending before the Office.

(t) *Professional legal corporation* means a corporation authorized by law to practice law for profit.

(u) *Registration* means registration to practice before the Office in patent cases.

(v) *Respondent* is defined in § 10.134(a)(1).

(w) *Secret* is defined in § 10.57(a).

(x) *Solicit* is defined in § 10.33.

(y) *State* includes the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and other federal territories and possessions.

(z) *Tribunal* includes courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(aa) *United States* means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

[Added 50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(a) *Appointment.* The Commissioner shall appoint a Director of Enrollment and Discipline. In the event of the absence of the Director or a vacancy in the Office of the Director, the Commissioner may designate an employee of the Office to serve as acting Director of Enrollment and Discipline. The Director

and any acting Director shall be an active member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) *Duties.* The Director shall:

(1) Receive and act upon applications for registration, prepare and grade the examination provided for in § 10.7(b), maintain the register provided for in § 10.5, and perform such other duties in connection with enrollment and recognition of attorneys and agents as may be necessary.

(2) Conduct investigations into possible violations by practitioners of Disciplinary Rules, with the consent of the Committee on Discipline initiate disciplinary proceedings under § 10.132(b), and perform such other duties in connection with investigations and disciplinary proceedings as may be necessary.

(c) *Review of Director's decision.* Any final decision of the Director refusing to register an individual under § 10.6, recognize an individual under § 10.9 or § 10.14(c), or reinstate a suspended or excluded petitioner under § 10.160, may be reviewed by petition to the Commissioner upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(5). A petition filed more than 30 days after the date of the decision of the Director may be dismissed as untimely. Any petition shall contain (1) a statement of the facts involved and the points to be reviewed and (2) the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support of the petition shall accompany or be embodied therein. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the Director and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record before the Director shall not be submitted with the petition. An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.3 Committee on Enrollment.

(a) The Commissioner may establish a Committee on Enrollment composed of one or more employees of the Office.

(b) The Committee on Enrollment shall, as necessary, advise the Director in connection with the Director's duties under § 10.2(b)(1).

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.4 Committee on Discipline.

(a) The Commissioner shall appoint a Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall consist of at least three employees of the Office, none of whom reports directly or indirectly to the Director or the Solicitor. Each member of the Committee on Discipline shall be a member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) The Committee on Discipline shall meet at the request of the Director and after reviewing evidence presented by the Director shall, by majority vote, determine whether there is probable cause to bring charges under § 10.132 against a practitioner. When charges are brought against a practitioner, no member of the Committee on Discipline, employee under the direction of the Director, or associate solicitor or assistant solicitor in the Office of Solicitor shall participate in rendering a decision on the charges.

(c) No discovery shall be authorized of, and no member of the Committee on Discipline shall be required to testify about, deliberations of the Committee on Discipline.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.

A register of attorneys and agents is kept in the Office on which are entered the names of all individuals recognized as entitled to represent applicants before the Office in the preparation and prosecution of applications for patent. Registration in the Office under the provisions of this part shall only entitle the individuals registered to practice before the Office in patent cases.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.

(a) *Attorneys.* Any citizen of the United States who is an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any

alien who is an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office, *provided:* Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States and *further provided:* The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

(b) *Agents.* Any citizen of the United States who is not an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is not an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office, *provided:* Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States, and *further provided:* The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

NOTE.—All individuals registered prior to November 15, 1938, were registered as attorneys, whether they were attorneys or not, and such registrations have not been changed.

(c) *Foreigners.* Any foreigner not a resident of the United States who shall file proof to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered and in good standing before the patent office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and who is possessed of the qualifications stated in § 10.7, may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office for the limited purpose of presenting and prosecuting patent applications of applicants located in such country, *provided:* The patent office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those admitted to practice before the United States

Patent and Trademark Office. Registration as a patent agent under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; paras. (d) & (e) removed 53 FR 38948, Oct. 4, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988]

§ 10.7 Requirements for registration.

(a) No individual will be registered to practice before the Office unless he or she shall:

(1) Apply to the Commissioner in writing on a form supplied by the Director and furnish all requested information and material and

(2) Establish to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is:

(i) Of good moral character and repute;

(ii) Possessed of the legal, scientific, and technical qualifications necessary to enable him or her to render applicants valuable service; and

(iii) Is otherwise competent to advise and assist applicants for patents in the presentation and prosecution of their applications before the Office.

(b) In order that the Director may determine whether an individual seeking to have his or her name placed upon the register has the qualifications specified in paragraph (a) of this section, satisfactory proof of good moral character and repute and of sufficient basic training in scientific and technical matters must be submitted to the Director. Except as provided in this paragraph, each applicant for registration must take and pass an examination which is held from time to time. Each application for admission to take the examination for registration must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(1) of this subchapter. The taking of an examination may be waived in the case of any individual who has actively served for at least four years in the patent examining corps of the Office. The examination will not be administered as a mere academic exercise.

(c) Within two months from the date an applicant is notified that he or she failed an examination, the applicant may request regrading of the examination upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(6). Any applicant requesting regrading shall particularly point out the errors which the applicant believed occurred in the grading of his or her examination.

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.8 Oath and registration fee.

Before an individual may have his or her name entered on the register of attorneys and agents, the individual must, after his or her application is approved, subscribe and swear to an oath or make a declaration prescribed by the Commissioner and pay the registration fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(2) of this subchapter.

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.

(a) Any individual not registered under § 10.6 may, upon a showing of circumstances which render it necessary or justifiable, be given limited recognition by the Director to prosecute as attorney or agent a specified application or specified applications, but limited recognition under this paragraph shall not extend further than the application or applications specified.

(b) When registration of a resident alien under paragraphs (a) or (b) of § 10.6 is not appropriate, the resident alien may be given limited recognition as may be appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) An individual not registered under § 10.6 may, if appointed by applicant to do so, prosecute an international application only before the U.S. International Searching Authority and the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority, provided: The individual has the right to practice before the national office with which the international application is filed (PCT Art. 49, Rule 90 and § 1.455) or before the International Bureau when acting as Receiving Office pursuant to PCT Rules 83.1^{bis} and 90.1.

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (c) added, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993; para. (c) amended, 60 FR 21438, May 2, 1995, effective June 1, 1995]

§ 10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.

(a) Only practitioners who are registered under § 10.6 or individuals given limited recognition under

§ 10.9 will be permitted to prosecute patent applications of others before the Office.

(b) No individual who has served in the patent examining corps of the Office may practice before the Office after termination of his or her service, unless he or she signs a written undertaking,

(1) Not to prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application pending in any patent examining group during his or her period of service therein and

(2) Not to prepare or prosecute or to assist in any manner in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application of another (i) assigned to such group for examination and (ii) filed within two years after the date he or she left such group, without written authorization of the Director. Associated and related classes in other patent examining groups may be required to be included in the undertaking or designated classes may be excluded from the undertaking. When an application for registration is made after resignation from the Office, the applicant will not be registered if he or she has prepared or prosecuted or assisted in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application as indicated in the paragraph. Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application contrary to the provisions of this paragraph shall constitute misconduct under § 10.23(c)(13) of this part.

(c) A practitioner who is an employee of the Office cannot prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application before the Office.

(d) Practice before the Office by Government employees is subject to any applicable conflict of interest laws, regulations or codes of professional responsibility.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; revised 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988; corrected 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988]

§ 10.11 Removing names from the register.

(a) Registered attorneys and agents shall notify the Director of any change of address. Any notification to the Director of any change of address shall be separate from any notice of change of address filed in individual applications.

(b) A letter may be addressed to any individual on the register, at the address of which separate notice was last received by the Director, for the purpose of ascertaining whether such individual desires to remain on the register. The name of any individual failing to reply and give any information requested by the Director within a time limit specified will be removed from the register and the names of individuals so removed will be published in the *Official Gazette*. The name of any individual so removed may be reinstated on the register as may be appropriate and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(3) of this subchapter.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.12 - 10.13 [Reserved]

§ 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(a) *Attorneys.* Any individual who is an attorney may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) *Non-lawyers.* Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark cases under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(c) *Foreigners.* Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall prove to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark cases, *provided:* The patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark cases before the United States Patent and Trademark

Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section will be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark cases. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent case in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark case for (1) a firm of which he or she is a member or (2) a corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.

Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended or excluded in accordance with the provisions of this part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this subpart or removed under § 10.11(b) shall not be entitled to practice before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.16 - 10.17 [Reserved]

§ 10.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(a) For all documents filed in the Office in patent, trademark, and other non-patent matters, except for correspondence that is required to be signed by the applicant or party, each piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner in the Patent and Trademark Office must bear a signature, personally signed by such practitioner, in compliance with § 1.4(d)(1) of this chapter.

(b) By presenting to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) any paper, the party presenting such paper, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, is certifying that—

(1) All statements made therein of the party's own knowledge are true, all statements made therein on information and belief are believed to be true, and all statements made therein are made with the knowledge that whoever, in any matter within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office, knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals, or covers up by any trick, scheme, or device a material fact, or makes any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or representations, or makes or uses any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or entry, shall be subject to the penalties set forth under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that violations of this paragraph may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom; and

(2) To the best of the party's knowledge, information and belief, formed after an inquiry reasonable under the circumstances, that —

(i) The paper is not being presented for any improper purpose, such as to harass someone or to cause unnecessary delay or needless increase in the cost of prosecution before the Office;

(ii) The claims and other legal contentions therein are warranted by existing law or by a nonfrivolous argument for the extension, modification, or reversal of existing law or the establishment of new law;

(iii) The allegations and other factual contentions have evidentiary support or, if specifically so identified, are likely to have evidentiary support after a reasonable opportunity for further investigation or discovery; and

(iv) The denials of factual contentions are warranted on the evidence, or if specifically so identified, are reasonably based on a lack of information or belief.

(c) Violations of paragraph (b)(1) of this section by a practitioner or non-practitioner may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom. Violations of any of paragraphs (b)(2)(i) through (iv) of this

section are, after notice and reasonable opportunity to respond, subject to such sanctions as deemed appropriate by the Commissioner, or the Commissioner's designee, which may include, but are not limited to, any combination of —

- (1) Holding certain facts to have been established;
 - (2) Returning papers;
 - (3) Precluding a party from filing a paper, or presenting or contesting an issue;
 - (4) Imposing a monetary sanction;
 - (5) Requiring a terminal disclaimer for the period of the delay; or
 - (6) Terminating the proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office.
- (d) Any practitioner violating the provisions of this section may also be subject to disciplinary action. See § 10.23(c)(15).

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993; paras. (a) & (b) revised, paras. (c) & (d) added, 62 FR 53131, Oct. 10, 1997, effective Dec. 1, 1997]

§ 10.19 [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

§ 10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.

(a) Canons are set out in §§ 10.21, 10.30, 10.46, 10.56, 10.61, 10.76, 10.83, 10.100, and 10.110. Canons are statements of axiomatic norms, expressing in general terms the standards of professional conduct expected of practitioners in their relationships with the public, with the legal system, and with the legal profession.

(b) Disciplinary Rules are set out in §§ 10.22-10.24, 10.31-10.40, 10.47-10.57, 10.62-10.68, 10.77, 10.78, 10.84, 10.85, 10.87-10.89, 10.92, 10.93, 10.101-10.103, 10.111, and 10.112. Disciplinary Rules are mandatory in character and state the minimum level of conduct below which no practitioner can fall without being subjected to disciplinary action.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.21 Canon 1.

A practitioner should assist in maintaining the integrity and competence of the legal profession.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.

(a) A practitioner is subject to discipline if the practitioner has made a materially false statement in, or if the practitioner has deliberately failed to disclose a material fact requested in connection with, the practitioner's application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court or any State court or his or her authority to otherwise practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) A practitioner shall not further the application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court, State court, or administrative agency of another person known by the practitioner to be unqualified in respect to character, education, or other relevant attribute.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.23 Misconduct.

(a) A practitioner shall not engage in disreputable or gross misconduct.

(b) A practitioner shall not:

- (1) Violate a Disciplinary Rule.
- (2) Circumvent a Disciplinary Rule through actions of another.
- (3) Engage in illegal conduct involving moral turpitude.
- (4) Engage in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, deceit, or misrepresentation.
- (5) Engage in conduct that is prejudicial to the administration of justice.
- (6) Engage in any other conduct that adversely reflects on the practitioner's fitness to practice before the Office.

(c) Conduct which constitutes a violation of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section includes, but is not limited to:

- (1) Conviction of a criminal offense involving moral turpitude, dishonesty, or breach of trust.

(2) Knowingly giving false or misleading information or knowingly participating in a material way in giving false or misleading information, to:

(i) A client in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(ii) The Office or any employee of the Office.

(3) Misappropriation of, or failure to properly or timely remit, funds received by a practitioner or the practitioner's firm from a client to pay a fee which the client is required by law to pay to the Office.

(4) Directly or indirectly improperly influencing, attempting to improperly influence, offering or agreeing to improperly influence, or attempting to offer or agree to improperly influence an official action of any employee of the Office by:

(i) Use of threats, false accusations, duress, or coercion,

(ii) An offer of any special inducement or promise of advantage, or

(iii) Improperly bestowing of any gift, favor, or thing of value.

(5) Suspension or disbarment from practice as an attorney or agent on ethical grounds by any duly constituted authority of a State or the United States or, in the case of a practitioner who resides in a foreign country or is registered under § 10.6(c), by any duly constituted authority of:

(i) A State,

(ii) The United States, or

(iii) The country in which the practitioner resides.

(6) Knowingly aiding or abetting a practitioner suspended or excluded from practice before the Office in engaging in unauthorized practice before the Office under § 10.158.

(7) Knowingly withholding from the Office information identifying a patent or patent application of another from which one or more claims have been copied. See §§ 1.604(b) and 1.607(c) of this subchapter.

(8) Failing to inform a client or former client or failing to timely notify the Office of an inability to notify a client or former client of correspondence received from the Office or the client's or former client's opponent in an *inter partes* proceeding before

the Office when the correspondence (i) could have a significant effect on a matter pending before the Office, (ii) is received by the practitioner on behalf of a client or former client and (iii) is correspondence of which a reasonable practitioner would believe under the circumstances the client or former client should be notified.

(9) Knowingly misusing a "Certificate of Mailing or Transmission" under § 1.8 of this chapter.

(10) Knowingly violating or causing to be violated the requirements of § 1.56 or § 1.555 of this subchapter.

(11) Except as permitted by § 1.52(c) of this chapter, knowingly filing or causing to be filed an application containing any material alteration made in the application papers after the signing of the accompanying oath or declaration without identifying the alteration at the time of filing the application papers.

(12) Knowingly filing, or causing to be filed, a frivolous complaint alleging a violation by a practitioner of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility.

(13) Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of a patent application in violation of an undertaking signed under § 10.10(b).

(14) Knowingly failing to advise the Director in writing of any change which would preclude continued registration under § 10.6.

(15) Signing a paper filed in the Office in violation of the provisions of § 10.18 or making a scandalous or indecent statement in a paper filed in the Office.

(16) Willfully refusing to reveal or report knowledge or evidence to the Director contrary to § 10.24 or paragraph (b) of § 10.131.

(17) Representing before the Office in a patent case either a joint venture comprising an inventor and an invention developer or an inventor referred to the registered practitioner by an invention developer when (i) the registered practitioner knows, or has been advised by the Office, that a formal complaint filed by a Federal or State agency, based on any violation of any law relating to securities, unfair methods of competition, unfair or deceptive acts or practices, mail fraud, or other civil or criminal conduct, is pending before a Federal or State court or Federal or State agency, or has been resolved unfavorably by such

court or agency, against the invention developer in connection with invention development services and (ii) the registered practitioner fails to fully advise the inventor of the existence of the pending complaint or unfavorable resolution thereof prior to undertaking or continuing representation of the joint venture or inventor. "Invention developer" means any person, and any agent, employee, officer, partner, or independent contractor thereof, who is not a registered practitioner and who advertises invention development services in media of general circulation or who enters into contracts for invention development services with customers as a result of such advertisement. "Invention development services" means acts of invention development required or promised to be performed, or actually performed, or both, by an invention developer for a customer. "Invention development" means the evaluation, perfection, marketing, brokering, or promotion of an invention on behalf of a customer by an invention developer, including a patent search, preparation of a patent application, or any other act done by an invention developer for consideration toward the end of procuring or attempting to procure a license, buyer, or patent for an invention. "Customer" means any individual who has made an invention and who enters into a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to the invention by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than \$5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention). "Contract for invention development services" means a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to an invention made by a customer by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than \$5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention).

(18) In the absence of information sufficient to establish a reasonable belief that fraud or inequitable conduct has occurred, alleging before a tribunal that anyone has committed a fraud on the Office or engaged in inequitable conduct in a proceeding before the Office.

(19) Action by an employee of the Office contrary to the provisions set forth in § 10.10(c).

(20) Knowing practice by a Government employee contrary to applicable Federal conflict of interest laws, or regulations of the Department, agency, or commission employing said individual.

(d) A practitioner who acts with reckless indifference to whether a representation is true or false is chargeable with knowledge of its falsity. Deceitful statements of half-truths or concealment of material facts shall be deemed actual fraud within the meaning of this part.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985; 50 FR 25980, June 24, 1985; paras. (c)(13), (19) & (20), 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988; corrected 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988; paras. (c)(10) & (c)(11), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (c)(9) amended, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993; para. (c)(9) amended, 61 FR 56439, Nov. 1, 1996, effective Dec. 2, 1996; para. (c)(15) amended, 62 FR 53131, Oct. 10, 1997, effective Dec. 1, 1997; para. (c)(11) revised, 65 FR 54604, Sept. 8, 2000, effective Nov. 7, 2000]

§ 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.

(a) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge of a violation of a Disciplinary Rule shall report such knowledge to the Director.

(b) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge or evidence concerning another practitioner, employee of the Office, or a judge shall reveal fully such knowledge or evidence upon proper request of a tribunal or other authority empowered to investigate or act upon the conduct of practitioners, employees of the Office, or judges.

[Added 50 FR 5176, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.25 - 10.29 [Reserved]

§ 10.30 Canon 2.

A practitioner should assist the legal profession in fulfilling its duty to make legal counsel available.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.

(a) No practitioner shall with respect to any prospective business before the Office, by word, circular, letter, or advertising, with intent to defraud in any manner, deceive, mislead, or threaten any prospective applicant or other person having immediate or prospective business before the Office.

(b) A practitioner may not use the name of a Member of either House of Congress or of an individual in the service of the United States in advertising the practitioner's practice before the Office.

(c) Unless authorized under § 10.14(b), a non-lawyer practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(d) Unless a practitioner is an attorney, the practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out:

- (1) To be an attorney or lawyer or
- (2) As authorized to practice before the Office in non-patent and trademark cases.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.32 Advertising.

(a) Subject to § 10.31, a practitioner may advertise services through public media, including a telephone directory, legal directory, newspaper, or other periodical, radio, or television, or through written communications not involving solicitation as defined by § 10.33.

(b) A practitioner shall not give anything of value to a person for recommending the practitioner's services, except that a practitioner may pay the reasonable cost of advertising or written communication permitted by this section and may pay the usual charges of a not-for-profit lawyer referral service or other legal service organization.

(c) Any communication made pursuant to this section shall include the name of at least one practitioner responsible for its content.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.

A practitioner may not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practi-

tioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person, or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching. The term "solicit" includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular matter, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.34 Communication of fields of practice.

A registered practitioner may state or imply that the practitioner is a specialist as follows:

(a) A registered practitioner who is an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Attorney," "Patent Lawyer," "Registered Patent Attorney," or a substantially similar designation.

(b) A registered practitioner who is not an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Agent," "Registered Patent Agent," or a substantially similar designation, except that any practitioner who was registered prior to November 15, 1938, may refer to himself or herself as a "patent attorney."

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.35 Firm names and letterheads.

(a) A practitioner shall not use a firm name, letterhead, or other professional designation that violates § 10.31. A trade name may be used by a practitioner in private practice if it does not imply a current connection with a government agency or with a public or charitable legal services organization and is not otherwise in violation of § 10.31.

(b) Practitioners may state or imply that they practice in a partnership or other organization only when that is the fact.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.36 Fees for legal services.

(a) A practitioner shall not enter into an agreement for, charge, or collect an illegal or clearly excessive fee.

(b) A fee is clearly excessive when, after a review of the facts, a practitioner of ordinary prudence would be left with a definite and firm conviction that the fee is in excess of a reasonable fee. Factors to be considered as guides in determining the reasonableness of a fee include the following:

(1) The time and labor required, the novelty and difficulty of the questions involved, and the skill requisite to perform the legal service properly.

(2) The likelihood, if apparent to the client, that the acceptance of the particular employment will preclude other employment by the practitioner.

(3) The fee customarily charged for similar legal services.

(4) The amount involved and the results obtained.

(5) The time limitations imposed by the client or by the circumstances.

(6) The nature and length of the professional relationship with the client.

(7) The experience, reputation, and ability of the practitioner or practitioners performing the services.

(8) Whether the fee is fixed or contingent.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.

(a) A practitioner shall not divide a fee for legal services with another practitioner who is not a partner in or associate of the practitioner's law firm or law office, unless:

(1) The client consents to employment of the other practitioner after a full disclosure that a division of fees will be made.

(2) The division is made in proportion to the services performed and responsibility assumed by each.

(3) The total fee of the practitioners does not clearly exceed reasonable compensation for all legal services rendered to the client.

(b) This section does not prohibit payment to a former partner or associate pursuant to a separation or retirement agreement.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall not be a party to or participate in a partnership or employment agreement with another practitioner that restricts the right of a practitioner to practice before the Office after the termination of a relationship created by the agreement, except as a condition to payment of retirement benefits.

(b) In connection with the settlement of a controversy or suit, a practitioner shall not enter into an agreement that restricts the practitioner's right to practice before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.39 Acceptance of employment.

A practitioner shall not accept employment on behalf of a person if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such person wishes to:

(a) Bring a legal action, commence a proceeding before the Office, conduct a defense, assert a position in any proceeding pending before the Office, or otherwise have steps taken for the person, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any other person.

(b) Present a claim or defense in litigation or any proceeding before the Office that it is not warranted under existing law, unless it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.40 Withdrawal from employment.

(a) A practitioner shall not withdraw from employment in a proceeding before the Office without permission from the Office (see §§ 1.36 and 2.19 of this subchapter). In any event, a practitioner shall not withdraw from employment until the practitioner has taken reasonable steps to avoid foreseeable prejudice to the rights of the client, including giving due notice to his or her client, allowing time for employment of another practitioner, delivering to the client all papers

and property to which the client is entitled, and complying with applicable laws and rules. A practitioner who withdraws from employment shall refund promptly any part of a fee paid in advance that has not been earned.

(b) *Mandatory withdrawal.* A practitioner representing a client before the Office shall withdraw from employment if:

(1) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the client is bringing a legal action, commencing a proceeding before the Office, conducting a defense, or asserting a position in litigation or any proceeding pending before the Office, or is otherwise having steps taken for the client, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any person;

(2) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner's continued employment will result in violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively; or

(4) The practitioner is discharged by the client.

(c) *Permissive withdrawal.* If paragraph (b) of this section is not applicable, a practitioner may not request permission to withdraw in matters pending before the Office unless such request or such withdrawal is because:

(1) The petitioner's client:

(i) Insists upon presenting a claim or defense that is not warranted under existing law and cannot be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law;

(ii) Personally seeks to pursue an illegal course of conduct;

(iii) Insists that the practitioner pursue a course of conduct that is illegal or that is prohibited under a Disciplinary Rule;

(iv) By other conduct renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(v) Insists, in a matter not pending before a tribunal, that the practitioner engage in conduct that is contrary to the judgment and advice of the practitioner but not prohibited under the Disciplinary Rule; or

(vi) Has failed to pay one or more bills rendered by the practitioner for an unreasonable period of time or has failed to honor an agreement to pay a

retainer in advance of the performance of legal services.

(2) The practitioner's continued employment is likely to result in a violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's inability to work with co-counsel indicates that the best interests of the client likely will be served by withdrawal;

(4) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(5) The practitioner's client knowingly and freely assents to termination of the employment; or

(6) The practitioner believes in good faith, in a proceeding pending before the Office, that the Office will find the existence of other good cause for withdrawal.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.41 - 10.45 [Reserved]

§ 10.46 Canon 3.

A practitioner should assist in preventing the unauthorized practice of law.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.

(a) A practitioner shall not aid a non-practitioner in the unauthorized practice of law before the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not aid a suspended or excluded practitioner in the practice of law before the Office.

(c) A practitioner shall not aid a non-lawyer in the unauthorized practice of law.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.48 Sharing legal fees.

A practitioner or a firm of practitioners shall not share legal fees with a non-practitioner except that:

(a) An agreement by a practitioner with the practitioner's firm, partner, or associate may provide for the payment of money, over a reasonable period of

time after the practitioner's death, to the practitioner's estate or to one or more specified persons.

(b) A practitioner who undertakes to complete unfinished legal business of a deceased practitioner may pay to the estate of the deceased practitioner that proportion of the total compensation which fairly represents the services rendered by the deceased practitioner.

(c) A practitioner or firm of practitioners may include non-practitioner employees in a compensation or retirement plan, even though the plan is based in whole or in part on a profit-sharing arrangement, providing such plan does not circumvent another Disciplinary Rule.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993, effective June 3, 1994]

§ 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.

A practitioner shall not form a partnership with a nonpractitioner if any of the activities of the partnership consist of the practice of patent, trademark, or other law before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.50 - 10.55 [Reserved]

§ 10.56 Canon 4.

A practitioner should preserve the confidences and secrets of a client.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.

(a) "Confidence" refers to information protected by the attorney-client or agent-client privilege under applicable law. "Secret" refers to other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client.

(b) Except when permitted under paragraph (c) of this section, a practitioner shall not knowingly:

- (1) Reveal a confidence or secret of a client.
- (2) Use a confidence or secret of a client to the disadvantage of the client.
- (3) Use a confidence or secret of a client for the advantage of the practitioner or of a third person, unless the client consents after full disclosure.

(c) A practitioner may reveal:

- (1) Confidences or secrets with the consent of the client affected but only after a full disclosure to the client.
- (2) Confidences or secrets when permitted under Disciplinary Rules or required by law or court order.
- (3) The intention of a client to commit a crime and the information necessary to prevent the crime.

(4) Confidences or secrets necessary to establish or collect the practitioner's fee or to defend the practitioner or the practitioner's employees or associates against an accusation of wrongful conduct.

(d) A practitioner shall exercise reasonable care to prevent the practitioner's employees, associates, and others whose services are utilized by the practitioner from disclosing or using confidences or secrets of a client, except that a practitioner may reveal the information allowed by paragraph (c) of this section through an employee.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.58 - 10.60 [Reserved]

§ 10.61 Canon 5.

A practitioner should exercise independent professional judgment on behalf of a client.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.

(a) Except with the consent of a client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not accept employment if the exercise of the practitioner's professional judgment on behalf of the client will be or reasonably may

be affected by the practitioner's own financial, business, property, or personal interests.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept employment in a proceeding before the Office if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness, except that the practitioner may undertake the employment and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify:

(1) If the testimony will relate solely to an uncontested matter.

(2) If the testimony will relate solely to a matter of formality and there is no reason to believe that substantial evidence will be offered in opposition to the testimony.

(3) If the testimony will relate solely to the nature and value of legal services rendered in the case by the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to the client.

(4) As to any matter, if refusal would work a substantial hardship on the client because of the distinctive value of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm as counsel in the particular case.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.

(a) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding in the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness on behalf of a practitioner's client, the practitioner shall withdraw from the conduct of the proceeding and the practitioner's firm, if any, shall not continue representation in the proceeding, except that the practitioner may continue the representation and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify in the circumstances enumerated in paragraphs (1) through (4) of § 10.62(b).

(b) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding before the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may be asked to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness other than on behalf of the practitioner's client, the

practitioner may continue the representation until it is apparent that the practitioner's affidavit or testimony is or may be prejudicial to the practitioner's client.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.

(a) A practitioner shall not acquire a proprietary interest in the subject matter of a proceeding before the Office which the practitioner is conducting for a client, except that the practitioner may:

(1) Acquire a lien granted by law to secure the practitioner's fee or expenses; or

(2) Contract with a client for a reasonable contingent fee; or

(3) In a patent case, take an interest in the patent as part or all of his or her fee.

(b) While representing a client in connection with a contemplated or pending proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not advance or guarantee financial assistance to a client, except that a practitioner may advance or guarantee the expenses of going forward in a proceeding before the Office including fees required by law to be paid to the Office, expenses of investigation, expenses of medical examination, and costs of obtaining and presenting evidence, provided the client remains ultimately liable for such expenses. A practitioner may, however, advance any fee required to prevent or remedy an abandonment of a client's application by reason of an act or omission attributable to the practitioner and not to the client, whether or not the client is ultimately liable for such fee.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.

A practitioner shall not enter into a business transaction with a client if they have differing interests therein and if the client expects the practitioner to exercise professional judgment therein for the protection of the client, unless the client has consented after full disclosure.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall decline proffered employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the acceptance of the proffered employment, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) A practitioner shall not continue multiple employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the practitioner's representation of another client, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In the situations covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, a practitioner may represent multiple clients if it is obvious that the practitioner can adequately represent the interest of each and if each consents to the representation after full disclosure of the possible effect of such representation on the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment on behalf of each.

(d) If a practitioner is required to decline employment or to withdraw from employment under a Disciplinary Rule, no partner, or associate, or any other practitioner affiliated with the practitioner or the practitioner's firm, may accept or continue such employment unless otherwise ordered by the Director or Commissioner.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.

A practitioner who represents two or more clients shall not make or participate in the making of an aggregate settlement of the claims of or against the practitioner's clients, unless each client has consented to the settlement after being advised of the existence and nature of all the claims involved in the proposed settlement, of the total amount of the settlement, and of the participation of each person in the settlement.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.

(a) Except with the consent of the practitioner's client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Accept compensation from one other than the practitioner's client for the practitioner's legal services to or for the client.

(2) Accept from one other than the practitioner's client any thing of value related to the practitioner's representation of or the practitioner's employment by the client.

(b) A practitioner shall not permit a person who recommends, employs, or pays the practitioner to render legal services for another, to direct or regulate the practitioner's professional judgment in rendering such legal services.

(c) A practitioner shall not practice with or in the form of a professional corporation or association authorized to practice law for a profit, if a non-practitioner has the right to direct or control the professional judgment of a practitioner.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.69 - 10.75 [Reserved]

§ 10.76 Canon 6.

A practitioner should represent a client competently.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.77 Failing to act competently.

A practitioner shall not:

(a) Handle a legal matter which the practitioner knows or should know that the practitioner is not competent to handle, without associating with the practitioner another practitioner who is competent to handle it.

(b) Handle a legal matter without preparation adequate in the circumstances.

(c) Neglect a legal matter entrusted to the practitioner.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.78 Limiting liability to client.

A practitioner shall not attempt to exonerate himself or herself from, or limit his or her liability to, a client for his or her personal malpractice.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.79 - 10.82 [Reserved]

§ 10.83 Canon 7.

A practitioner should represent a client zealously within the bounds of the law.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.84 Representing a client zealously.

(a) A practitioner shall not intentionally:

(1) Fail to seek the lawful objectives of a client through reasonable available means permitted by law and the Disciplinary Rules, except as provided by paragraph (b) of this section. A practitioner does not violate the provisions of this section, however, by acceding to reasonable requests of opposing counsel which do not prejudice the rights of the client, by being punctual in fulfilling all professional commitments, by avoiding offensive tactics, or by treating with courtesy and consideration all persons involved in the legal process.

(2) Fail to carry out a contract of employment entered into with a client for professional services, but a practitioner may withdraw as permitted under §§ 10.40, 10.63, and 10.66.

(3) Prejudice or damage a client during the course of a professional relationship, except as required under this part.

(b) In representation of a client, a practitioner may:

(1) Where permissible, exercise professional judgment to waive or fail to assert a right or position of the client.

(2) Refuse to aid or participate in conduct that the practitioner believes to be unlawful, even though there is some support for an argument that the conduct is legal.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.

(a) In representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Initiate or defend any proceeding before the Office, assert a position, conduct a defense, delay a trial or proceeding before the Office, or take other action on behalf of the practitioner's client when the practitioner knows or when it is obvious that such action would serve merely to harass or maliciously injure another.

(2) Knowingly advance a claim or defense that is unwarranted under existing law, except that a practitioner may advance such claim or defense if it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

(3) Conceal or knowingly fail to disclose that which the practitioner is required by law to reveal.

(4) Knowingly use perjured testimony or false evidence.

(5) Knowingly make a false statement of law or fact.

(6) Participate in the creation or preservation of evidence when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the evidence is false.

(7) Counsel or assist a client in conduct that the practitioner knows to be illegal or fraudulent.

(8) Knowingly engage in other illegal conduct or conduct contrary to a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) A practitioner who receives information clearly establishing that:

(1) A client has, in the course of the representation, perpetrated a fraud upon a person or tribunal shall promptly call upon the client to rectify the same, and if the client refuses or is unable to do so the practitioner shall reveal the fraud to the affected person or tribunal.

(2) A person other than a client has perpetrated a fraud upon a tribunal shall promptly reveal the fraud to the tribunal.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.86 [Reserved]

§ 10.87 **Communicating with one of adverse interest.**

During the course of representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(a) Communicate or cause another to communicate on the subject of the representation with a party the practitioner knows to be represented by another practitioner in that matter unless the practitioner has the prior consent of the other practitioner representing such other party or is authorized by law to do so. It is not improper, however, for a practitioner to encourage a client to meet with an opposing party for settlement discussions.

(b) Give advice to a person who is not represented by a practitioner other than the advice to secure counsel, if the interests of such person are or have a reasonable possibility of being in conflict with the interests of the practitioner's client.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.88 **Threatening criminal prosecution.**

A practitioner shall not present, participate in presenting, or threaten to present criminal charges solely to obtain an advantage in any prospective or pending proceeding before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.89 **Conduct in proceedings.**

(a) A practitioner shall not disregard or advise a client to disregard any provision of this Subchapter or a decision of the Office made in the course of a proceeding before the Office, but the practitioner may

take appropriate steps in good faith to test the validity of such provision or decision.

(b) In presenting a matter to the Office, a practitioner shall disclose:

(1) Controlling legal authority known to the practitioner to be directly adverse to the position of the client and which is not disclosed by opposing counsel or an employee of the Office.

(2) Unless privileged or irrelevant, the identities of the client the practitioner represents and of the persons who employed the practitioner.

(c) In appearing in a professional capacity before a tribunal, a practitioner shall not:

(1) State or allude to any matter that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case or that will not be supported by admissible evidence.

(2) Ask any question that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case and that is intended to degrade a witness or other person.

(3) Assert the practitioner's personal knowledge of the facts in issue, except when testifying as a witness.

(4) Assert the practitioner's personal opinion as to the justness of a cause, as to the credibility of a witness, as to the culpability of a civil litigant, or as to the guilt or innocence of an accused; but the practitioner may argue, on the practitioner's analysis of the evidence, for any position or conclusion with respect to the matters stated herein.

(5) Engage in undignified or discourteous conduct before the Office (see § 1.3 of the subchapter).

(6) Intentionally or habitually violate any provision of this subchapter or established rule of evidence.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.90 - 10.91 [Reserved]

§ 10.92 **Contact with witnesses.**

(a) A practitioner shall not suppress any evidence that the practitioner or the practitioner's client has a legal obligation to reveal or produce.

(b) A practitioner shall not advise or cause a person to be sequestered or to leave the jurisdiction of a tribunal for the purpose of making the person unavailable as a witness therein.

(c) A practitioner shall not pay, offer to pay, or acquiesce in payment of compensation to a witness contingent upon the content of the witness' affidavit, testimony or the outcome of the case. But a practitioner may advance, guarantee, or acquiesce in the payment of:

(1) Expenses reasonably incurred by a witness in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(2) Reasonable compensation to a witness for the witness' loss of time in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(3) A reasonable fee for the professional services of an expert witness.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.93 Contact with officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not give or lend anything of value to a judge, official, or employee of a tribunal under circumstances which might give the appearance that the gift or loan is made to influence official action.

(b) In an adversary proceeding, including any *inter partes* proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not communicate, or cause another to communicate, as to the merits of the cause with a judge, official, or Office employee before whom the proceeding is pending, except:

(1) In the course of official proceedings in the cause.

(2) In writing if the practitioner promptly delivers a copy of the writing to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(3) Orally upon adequate notice to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(4) As otherwise authorized by law.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.94 - 10.99 [Reserved]

§ 10.100 Canon 8.

A practitioner should assist in improving the legal system.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.101 Action as a public official.

(a) A practitioner who holds public office shall not:

(1) Use the practitioner's public position to obtain, or attempt to obtain, a special advantage in legislative matters for the practitioner or for a client under circumstances where the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such action is not in the public interest.

(2) Use the practitioner's public position to influence, or attempt to influence, a tribunal to act in favor of the practitioner or of a client.

(3) Accept any thing of value from any person when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the offer is for the purpose of influencing the practitioner's action as a public official.

(b) A practitioner who is an officer or employee of the United States shall not practice before the Office in patent cases except as provided in § 10.10(c) and (d).

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (b) amended, 54 FR 6520, Feb. 13, 1989]

§ 10.102 Statements concerning officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false statements of fact concerning the qualifications of a candidate for election or appointment to a judicial office or to a position in the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false accusations against a judge, other adjudicatory officer, or employee of the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.

A practitioner who is a candidate for judicial office shall comply with applicable provisions of law.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.104 - 10.109 [Reserved]

§ 10.110 Canon 9.

A practitioner should avoid even the appearance of professional impropriety.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.

(a) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter upon the merits of which he or she has acted in a judicial capacity.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter in which he or she had personal responsibility while a public employee.

(c) A practitioner shall not state or imply that the practitioner is able to influence improperly or upon irrelevant grounds any tribunal, legislative body, or public official.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.

(a) All funds of clients paid to a practitioner or a practitioner's firm, other than advances for costs and expenses, shall be deposited in one or more identifiable bank accounts maintained in the United States or, in the case of a practitioner having an office in a foreign country or registered under § 10.6(c), in the United States or the foreign country.

(b) No funds belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm shall be deposited in the bank accounts required by paragraph (a) of this section except as follows:

(1) Funds reasonably sufficient to pay bank charges may be deposited therein.

(2) Funds belonging in part to a client and in part presently or potentially to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm must be deposited therein, but the

portion belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm may be withdrawn when due unless the right of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to receive it is disputed by the client, in which event the disputed portion shall not be withdrawn until the dispute is finally resolved.

(c) A practitioner shall:

(1) Promptly notify a client of the receipt of the client's funds, securities, or other properties.

(2) Identify and label securities and properties of a client promptly upon receipt and place them in a safe deposit box or other place of safekeeping as soon as practicable.

(3) Maintain complete records of all funds, securities, and other properties of a client coming into the possession of the practitioner and render appropriate accounts to the client regarding the funds, securities, or other properties.

(4) Promptly pay or deliver to the client as requested by a client the funds, securities, or other properties in the possession of the practitioner which the client is entitled to receive.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.113 - 10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

§ 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.

(a) The Commissioner may, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, (1) reprimand or (2) suspend or exclude, either generally or in any particular case, any individual, attorney, or agent shown to be incompetent or disreputable, who is guilty of gross misconduct, or who violates a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) Petitions to disqualify a practitioner in *ex parte* or *inter partes* cases in the Office are not governed by §§ 10.130 through 10.170 and will be handled on a case-by-case basis under such conditions as the Commissioner deems appropriate.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.131 Investigations.

(a) The Director is authorized to investigate possible violations of Disciplinary Rules by practitioners. See § 10.2(b)(2).

(b) Practitioners shall report and reveal to the Director any knowledge or evidence required by § 10.24. A practitioner shall cooperate with the Director in connection with any investigation under paragraph (a) of this section and with officials of the Office in connection with any disciplinary proceeding instituted under § 10.132(b).

(c) Any nonpractitioner possessing knowledge or information concerning a violation of a Disciplinary Rule by a practitioner may report the violation to the Director. The Director may require that the report be presented in the form of an affidavit.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.

(a) If after conducting an investigation under § 10.131(a) the Director is of the opinion that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall, after complying where necessary with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 558(c), call a meeting of the Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall then determine as specified in § 10.4(b) whether a disciplinary proceeding shall be instituted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the Committee on Discipline determines that probable cause exists to believe that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall institute a disciplinary proceeding by filing a complaint under § 10.134. The complaint shall be filed in the Office of the Director. A disciplinary proceeding may result in:

(1) A reprimand, or

(2) Suspension or exclusion of a practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) Upon the filing of a complaint under § 10.134, the Commissioner will refer the disciplinary proceeding to an administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.

(a) *General.* The Director may confer with a practitioner concerning possible violations by the practitioner of a Disciplinary Rule whether or not a disciplinary proceeding has been instituted.

(b) *Resignation.* Any practitioner who is the subject of an investigation under § 10.131 or against whom a complaint has been filed under § 10.134 may resign from practice before the Office only by submitting with the Director an affidavit stating his or her desire to resign.

(c) If filed prior to the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall state that:

(1) The resignation is freely and voluntarily proffered;

(2) The practitioner is not acting under duress or coercion from the Office;

(3) The practitioner is fully aware of the implications of filing the resignation;

(4) The practitioner is aware (i) of a pending investigation or (ii) of charges arising from the complaint alleging that he or she is guilty of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility, the nature of which shall be set forth by the practitioner to the satisfaction of the Director;

(5) The practitioner acknowledges that, if and when he or she applies for reinstatement under § 10.160, the Director will conclusively presume, for the limited purpose of determining the application for reinstatement, that:

(i) The facts upon which the complaint is based are true and

(ii) The practitioner could not have successfully defended himself or herself against (A) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (B) charges set out in the complaint filed against the practitioner.

(d) If filed on or after the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall make the statements required by paragraphs (b) (1) through (4) of this section and shall state that:

(1) The practitioner acknowledges the facts upon which the complaint is based are true; and

(2) The resignation is being submitted because the practitioner could not successfully defend himself or herself against (i) charges predicated on the

violation under investigation or (ii) charges set out in the complaint.

(e) When an affidavit under paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section is received while an investigation is pending, the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner "on consent." When an affidavit under paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section is received after a complaint under § 10.134 has been filed, the Director shall notify the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge shall enter an order transferring the disciplinary proceeding to the Commissioner and the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner "on consent."

(f) Any practitioner who resigns from practice before the Office under this section and who intends to reapply for admission to practice before the Office must comply with the provisions of § 10.158.

(g) *Settlement.* Before or after a complaint is filed under § 10.134, a settlement conference may occur between the Director and a practitioner for the purpose of settling any disciplinary matter. If an offer of settlement is made by the Director or the practitioner and is not accepted by the other, no reference to the offer of settlement or its refusal shall be admissible in evidence in the disciplinary proceeding unless both the Director and the practitioner agree in writing.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.134 Complaint.

(a) A complaint instituting a disciplinary proceeding shall:

(1) Name the practitioner, who may then be referred to as the "respondent."

(2) Give a plain and concise description of the alleged violations of the Disciplinary Rules by the practitioner.

(3) State the place and time for filing an answer by the respondent.

(4) State that a decision by default may be entered against the respondent if an answer is not timely filed.

(5) Be signed by the Director.

(b) A complaint will be deemed sufficient if it fairly informs the respondent of any violation of the

Disciplinary Rules which form the basis for the disciplinary proceeding so that the respondent is able to adequately prepare a defense.

[Added 50 FR 5182, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by "Express Mail" or first-class mail to:

(i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or

(ii) A nonregistered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the *Official Gazette* for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under § 10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the § 10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the § 10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the § 10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by § 10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under § 10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.136 Answer to complaint.

(a) *Time for answer.* An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) *With whom filed.* The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an answer may be extended once for a period of no more than thirty days by the administrative law judge upon a showing of good cause provided a motion requesting an extension of time is filed within thirty days after the date the complaint is filed by the Director. A copy of the answer shall be served on the Director.

(c) *Content.* The respondent shall include in the answer a statement of the facts which constitute the grounds of defense and shall specifically admit or deny each allegation set forth in the complaint. The respondent shall not deny a material allegation in the complaint which the respondent knows to be true or state that respondent is without sufficient information to form a belief as to the truth of an allegation when in fact the respondent possesses that information. The respondent shall also state affirmatively special matters of defense.

(d) *Failure to deny allegations in complaint.* Every allegation in the complaint which is not denied by a respondent in the answer is deemed to be admitted and may be considered proven. No further evidence in respect of that allegation need be received by the administrative law judge at any hearing. Failure to timely file an answer will constitute an admission of the allegations in the complaint.

(e) *Reply by the Director.* No reply to an answer is required by the Director and any affirmative defense in the answer shall be deemed to be denied. The Director may, however, file a reply if he or she chooses or if ordered by the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.137 Supplemental complaint.

False statements in an answer may be made the basis of a supplemental complaint.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.138 Contested case.

Upon the filing of an answer by the respondent, a disciplinary proceeding shall be regarded as a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24. Evidence obtained by a subpoena issued under 35 U.S.C. 24 shall not be admitted into the record or considered unless leave to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 24 was previously authorized by the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.

(a) *Appointment.* An administrative law judge, appointed under 5 U.S.C. 3105, shall conduct disciplinary proceedings as provided by this part.

(b) *Responsibilities.* The administrative law judge shall have authority to:

- (1) Administer oaths and affirmations;
- (2) Make rulings upon motions and other requests;
- (3) Rule upon offers of proof, receive relevant evidence, and examine witnesses;
- (4) Authorize the taking of a deposition of a witness in lieu of personal appearance of the witness before the administrative law judge;
- (5) Determine the time and place of any hearing and regulate its course and conduct;
- (6) Hold or provide for the holding of conferences to settle or simplify the issues;
- (7) Receive and consider oral or written arguments on facts or law;
- (8) Adopt procedures and modify procedures from time to time as occasion requires for the orderly disposition of proceedings;
- (9) Make initial decisions under § 10.154; and
- (10) Perform acts and take measures as necessary to promote the efficient and timely conduct of any disciplinary proceeding.

(c) *Time for making initial decision.* The administrative law judge shall set times and exercise control over a disciplinary proceeding such that an initial decision under § 10.154 is normally issued within six months of the date a complaint is filed. The administrative law judge may, however, issue an initial decision more than six months after a complaint is filed if in his or her opinion there exist unusual circumstances which preclude issuance of an initial decision within six months of the filing of the complaint.

(d) *Review of interlocutory orders.* An interlocutory order of an administrative law judge will not be reviewed by the Commissioner except:

(1) When the administrative law judge shall be of the opinion (i) that the interlocutory order involves a controlling question of procedure or law as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and (ii) that an immediate decision by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the disciplinary proceeding or

(2) In an extraordinary situation where justice requires review.

(e) *Stays pending review of interlocutory order.* If the Director or a respondent seeks review of an interlocutory order of an administrative law judge under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, any time period set for taking action by the administrative law judge shall not be stayed unless ordered by the Commissioner or the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.

(a) A respondent may be represented before the Office in connection with an investigation or disciplinary proceeding by an attorney. The attorney shall file a written declaration that he or she is an attorney within the meaning of § 10.1(c) and shall state:

(1) The address to which the attorney wants correspondence related to the investigation or disciplinary proceeding sent and

(2) A telephone number where the attorney may be reached during normal business hours.

(b) The Commissioner shall designate at least two associate solicitors in the Office of the Solicitor to act as representatives for the Director in disciplinary

proceedings. In prosecuting disciplinary proceedings, the designated associate solicitors shall not involve the Solicitor or the Deputy Solicitor. The Solicitor and the Deputy Solicitor shall remain insulated from the investigation and prosecution of all disciplinary proceedings in order that they shall be available as counsel to the Commissioner in deciding disciplinary proceedings.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.141 Filing of papers.

(a) The provisions of § 1.8 of this subchapter do not apply to disciplinary proceedings.

(b) All papers filed after the complaint and prior to entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the administrative law judge at an address or place designated by the administrative law judge. All papers filed after entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the Director. The Director shall promptly forward to the Commissioner any paper which requires action under this part by the Commissioner.

(c) The administrative law judge or the Director may provide for filing papers and other matters by hand or by "Express Mail."

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.142 Service of papers.

(a) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the office of the attorney; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the attorney at the address provided by the attorney under § 10.140(a)(1); or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the attorney and a representative for the Director.

(b) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent who is not represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the respondent; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the respondent at the address to which a complaint may be served or such other address as may be designated in writing by the respondent; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and a representative of the Director.

(c) A respondent shall serve on the representative for the Director one copy of each paper filed with the administrative law judge or the Director. A paper may be served on the representative for the Director by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the representative; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to an address designated in writing by the representative; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and the representative.

(d) Each paper filed in a disciplinary proceeding shall contain therein a certificate of service indicating:

(1) The date of which service was made and

(2) The method by which service was made.

(e) The administrative law judge or the Commissioner may require that a paper be served by hand or by "Express Mail."

(f) Service by mail is completed when the paper mailed in the United States is placed into the custody of the U.S. Postal Service.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.143 Motions.

Motions may be filed with the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge will determine on a case-by-case basis the time period for response to a motion and whether replies to responses will be authorized. No motion shall be filed with the administrative law judge unless such motion is supported by a written statement by the moving party that the moving party or attorney for the moving party has conferred with the opposing party or attorney for the opposing party in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised by a motion are resolved by the parties prior to a decision on the motion by the administrative law judge, the

parties shall promptly notify the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.144 Hearings.

(a) The administrative law judge shall preside at hearings in disciplinary proceedings. Hearings will be stenographically recorded and transcribed and the testimony of witnesses will be received under oath or affirmation. The administrative law judge shall conduct hearings in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 556. A copy of the transcript of the hearing shall become part of the record. A copy of the transcript shall be provided to the Director and the respondent at the expense of the Office.

(b) If the respondent to a disciplinary proceeding fails to appear at the hearing after a notice of hearing has been given by the administrative law judge, the administrative law judge may deem the respondent to have waived the right to a hearing and may proceed with the hearing in the absence of the respondent.

(c) A hearing under this section will not be open to the public except that the Director may grant a request by a respondent to open his or her hearing to the public and make the record of the disciplinary proceeding available for public inspection, *provided*, Agreement is reached in advance to exclude from public disclosure information which is privileged or confidential under applicable laws or regulations. If a disciplinary proceeding results in disciplinary action against a practitioner, and subject to § 10.159(c), the record of the entire disciplinary proceeding, including any settlement agreement, will be available for public inspection.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.

In case of a variance between the evidence and the allegations in a complaint, answer, or reply, if any, the administrative law judge may order or authorize amendment of the complaint, answer, or reply to conform to the evidence. Any party who would otherwise be prejudiced by the amendment will be given reason-

able opportunity to meet the allegations in the complaint, answer, or reply, as amended, and the administrative law judge shall make findings on any issue presented by the complaint, answer, or reply as amended.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.146 - 10.148 [Reserved]

§ 10.149 Burden of proof.

In a disciplinary proceeding, the Director shall have the burden of proving his or her case by clear and convincing evidence and a respondent shall have the burden of proving any affirmative defense by clear and convincing evidence.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.150 Evidence.

(a) *Rules of evidence.* The rules of evidence prevailing in courts of law and equity are not controlling in hearings in disciplinary proceedings. However, the administrative law judge shall exclude evidence which is irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious.

(b) *Depositions.* Depositions of witnesses taken pursuant to § 10.151 may be admitted as evidence.

(c) *Government documents.* Official documents, records, and papers of the Office are admissible without extrinsic evidence of authenticity. These documents, records, and papers may be evidenced by a copy certified as correct by an employee of the Office.

(d) *Exhibits.* If any document, record, or other paper is introduced in evidence as an exhibit, the administrative law judge may authorize the withdrawal of the exhibit subject to any conditions the administrative law judge deems appropriate.

(e) *Objections.* Objections to evidence will be in short form, stating the grounds of objection. Objections and rulings on objections will be a part of the record. No exception to the ruling is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.151 Depositions.

(a) Depositions for use at the hearing in lieu of personal appearance of a witness before the administrative law judge may be taken by respondent or the Director upon a showing of good cause and with the approval of, and under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by, the administrative law judge. Depositions may be taken upon oral or written questions, upon not less than ten days written notice to the other party, before any officer authorized to administer an oath or affirmation in the place where the deposition is to be taken. The requirement of ten days notice may be waived by the parties and depositions may then be taken of a witness at a time and place mutually agreed to by the parties. When a deposition is taken upon written questions, copies of the written questions will be served upon the other party with the notice and copies of any written cross-questions will be served by hand or "Express Mail" not less than five days before the date of the taking of the deposition unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. A party on whose behalf a deposition is taken shall file a copy of a transcript of the deposition signed by a court reporter with the administrative law judge and shall serve one copy upon the opposing party. Expenses for a court reporter and preparing, serving, and filing depositions shall be borne by the party at whose instance the deposition is taken.

(b) When the Director and the respondent agree in writing, a deposition of any witness who will appear voluntarily may be taken under such terms and conditions as may be mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent. The deposition shall not be filed with the administrative law judge and may not be admitted in evidence before the administrative law judge unless he or she orders the deposition admitted in evidence. The admissibility of the deposition shall lie within the discretion of the administrative law judge who may reject the deposition on any reasonable basis including the fact that demeanor is involved and that the witness should have been called to appear personally before the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.152 Discovery.

Discovery shall not be authorized except as follows:

(a) After an answer is filed under § 10.136 and when a party establishes in a clear and convincing manner that discovery is necessary and relevant, the administrative law judge, under such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, may order an opposing party to:

(1) Answer a reasonable number of written requests for admission or interrogatories;

(2) Produce for inspection and copying a reasonable number of documents; and

(3) Produce for inspection a reasonable number of things other than documents.

(b) Discovery shall not be authorized under paragraph (a) of this section of any matter which:

(1) Will be used by another party solely for impeachment or cross-examination;

(2) Is not available to the party under 35 U.S.C. § 122;

(3) Relates to any disciplinary proceeding commenced in the Patent and Trademark Office prior to March 8, 1985;

(4) Relates to experts except as the administrative law judge may require under paragraph (e) of this section.

(5) Is privileged; or

(6) Relates to mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of any attorney or other representative of a party.

(c) The administrative law judge may deny discovery requested under paragraph (a) of this section if the discovery sought:

(1) Will unduly delay the disciplinary proceeding;

(2) Will place an undue burden on the party required to produce the discovery sought; or

(3) Is available (i) generally to the public, (ii) equally to the parties; or (iii) to the party seeking the discovery through another source.

(d) Prior to authorizing discovery under paragraph (a) of this section, the administrative law judge shall require the party seeking discovery to file a motion (§ 10.143) and explain in detail for each

request made how the discovery sought is necessary and relevant to an issue actually raised in the complaint or the answer.

(e) The administrative law judge may require parties to file and serve, prior to any hearing, a pre-hearing statement which contains:

(1) A list (together with a copy) of all proposed exhibits to be used in connection with a party's case-in-chief,

(2) A list of proposed witnesses,

(3) As to each proposed expert witness:

(i) An identification of the field in which the individual will be qualified as an expert;

(ii) A statement as to the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify; and

(iii) A statement of the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify,

(4) The identity of government employees who have investigated the case, and

(5) Copies of memoranda reflecting respondent's own statements to administrative representatives.

(f) After a witness testifies for a party, if the opposing party requests, the party may be required to produce, prior to cross-examination, any written statement made by the witness.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.

Except in cases when the respondent has failed to answer the complaint, the administrative law judge, prior to making an initial decision, shall afford the parties a reasonable opportunity to submit proposed findings and conclusions and a post-hearing memorandum in support of the proposed findings and conclusions.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.

(a) The administrative law judge shall make an initial decision in the case. The decision will include (1) a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as

the reasons or basis therefor with appropriate references to the record, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record, and (2) an order of suspension or exclusion from practice, an order of reprimand, or an order dismissing the complaint. The administrative law judge shall file the decision with the Director and shall transmit a copy to the representative of the Director and to the respondent. In the absence of an appeal to the Commissioner, the decision of the administrative law judge will, without further proceedings, become the decision of the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks thirty (30) days from the date of the decision of the administrative law judge.

(b) The initial decision of the administrative law judge shall explain the reason for any penalty or reprimand, suspension or exclusion. In determining any penalty, the following should normally be considered:

- (1) The public interest;
- (2) The seriousness of the violation of the Disciplinary Rule;
- (3) The deterrent effects deemed necessary;
- (4) The integrity of the legal profession; and
- (5) Any extenuating circumstances.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.

(a) Within thirty (30) days from the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge under § 10.154, either party may appeal to the Commissioner. If an appeal is taken, the time for filing a cross-appeal expires 14 days after the date of service of the appeal pursuant to § 10.142 or 30 days after the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge, whichever is later. An appeal or cross-appeal by the respondent will be filed and served with the Director in duplicate and will include exceptions to the decisions of the administrative law judge and supporting reasons for those exceptions. If the Director files the appeal or cross-appeal, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the appeal or cross-appeal. The other party to an appeal or cross-appeal may file a reply brief. A respondent's reply brief shall be filed and served in duplicate with the Director. The time for filing any reply brief expires thirty (30) days after the date of service pursuant to § 10.142 of an appeal,

cross-appeal or copy thereof. If the Director files a reply brief, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the reply brief. Upon the filing of an appeal, cross-appeal, if any, and reply briefs, if any, the Director shall transmit the entire record to the Commissioner.

(b) The appeal will be decided by the Commissioner on the record made before the administrative law judge.

(c) The Commissioner may order reopening of a disciplinary proceeding in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials. Any request to reopen a disciplinary proceeding on the basis of newly discovered evidence must demonstrate that the newly discovered evidence could not have been discovered by due diligence.

(d) In the absence of an appeal by the Director, failure by the respondent to appeal under the provisions of this section shall be deemed to be both acceptance by the respondent of the initial decision and waiver by the respondent of the right to further administrative or judicial review.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (d) added, 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989, effective Aug. 1, 1989; para. (a) amended, 60 FR 64125, Dec. 14, 1995, effective Jan. 16, 1996]

§ 10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.

(a) An appeal from an initial decision of the administrative law judge shall be decided by the Commissioner. The Commissioner may affirm, reverse, or modify the initial decision or remand the matter to the administrative law judge for such further proceedings as the Commissioner may deem appropriate. Subject to paragraph (c) of this section, a decision by the Commissioner does not become a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding until 20 days after it is entered. In making a final decision, the Commissioner shall review the record or those portions of the record as may be cited by the parties in order to limit the issues. The Commissioner shall transmit a copy of the final decision to the Director and to the respondent.

(b) A final decision of the Commissioner may dismiss a disciplinary proceeding, reprimand a practitioner, or may suspend or exclude the practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the Commissioner's decision may be made by the respondent or the Director if filed within 20 days from the date of entry of the decision. Such a request shall have the effect of staying the effective date of the decision. The decision by the Commissioner on the request is a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding and is effective on its date of entry.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (a) amended and para. (c) added, 54 FR 6660, Feb. 14, 1989]

§ 10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.

(a) Review of the Commissioner's final decision in a disciplinary case may be had, subject to § 10.155(d), by a petition filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. See 35 U.S.C. 32 and Local Rule 213 of the United States District Court for the District of Columbia.

(b) The Commissioner may stay a final decision pending review of the Commissioner's final decision.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 53 FR 13120, Apr. 21, 1988; para. (a) amended, 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989, effective Aug. 1, 1989]

§ 10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.

(a) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall not engage in unauthorized practice of patent, trademark and other non patent law before the Office.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, any practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall:

(1) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, notify all bars of which he or she is a member and all clients of the practitioner for whom he or she is handling matters before the Office in separate written communications of the suspension or exclusion and shall file a copy of each written communication with the Director.

(2) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, surrender a client's active Office case files to (i) the client or (ii) another practitioner designated by the client.

(3) Not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice law before the Office.

(4) Promptly take any necessary and appropriate steps to remove from any telephone, legal, or other directory any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice patent, trademark, or other non-patent law before the Office, and within 30 days of taking those steps, file with the Director an affidavit describing the precise nature of the steps taken.

(5) Not advertise the practitioner's availability or ability to perform or render legal services for any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(6) Not render legal advice or services to any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office as to that business.

(7) Promptly take steps to change any sign identifying a practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's office and the practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's stationery to delete therefrom any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice law before the Office.

(8) Within 30 days, return to any client any unearned funds, including any unearned retainer fee, and any securities and property of the client.

(c) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office and who aids another practitioner in any way in the other practitioner's practice of law before the Office, may, under the direct supervision of the other practitioner, act as a paralegal for the other practitioner or perform other services for the other practitioner which are normally performed by lay-persons, *provided*:

(1) The practitioner who is suspended or excluded is:

(i) A salaried employee of:

(A) The other practitioner;

(B) The other practitioner's law firm; or

(C) A client-employer who employs the other practitioner as a salaried employee;

(2) The other practitioner assumes full professional responsibility to any client and the Office for any work performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner for the other practitioner;

(3) The suspended or excluded practitioner, in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office, does not:

(i) Communicate directly in writing, orally, or otherwise with a client of the other practitioner;

(ii) Render any legal advice or any legal services to a client of the other practitioner; or

(iii) Meet in person or in the presence of the other practitioner with:

(A) Any Office official in connection with the prosecution of any patent, trademark, or other case;

(B) Any client of the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the client-employer of the other practitioner;

(C) Any witness or potential witness which the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the other practitioner's client-employer may or intends to call as a witness in any proceeding before the Office. The term "witness" includes individuals who will testify orally in a proceeding before, or sign an affidavit or any other document to be filed in, the Office.

(d) When a suspended or excluded practitioner acts as a paralegal or performs services under paragraph (c) of this section, the suspended or excluded practitioner shall not thereafter be reinstated to practice before the Office unless:

(1) The suspended or excluded practitioner shall have filed with the Director an affidavit which (i) explains in detail the precise nature of all paralegal or other services performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner and (ii) shows by clear and convincing evidence that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of this section and all Disciplinary Rules, and

(2) The other practitioner shall have filed with the Director a written statement which (i) shows that the other practitioner has read the affidavit required by subparagraph (d)(1) of this section and that the other practitioner believes every statement in the affidavit to be true and (ii) states why the other practitioner believes that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with paragraph (c) of this section.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.

(a) Upon issuance of a final decision reprimanding a practitioner or suspending or excluding a practitioner from practice before the Office, the Director shall give notice of the final decision to appropriate employees of the Office and to interested departments, agencies, and courts of the United States. The Director shall also give notice to appropriate authorities of any State in which a practitioner is known to be a member of the bar and any appropriate bar association.

(b) The Director shall cause to be published in the *Official Gazette* the name of any practitioner suspended or excluded from practice. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, the Director shall publish in the *Official Gazette* the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.

(c) The Director shall maintain records, which shall be available for public inspection, of every disciplinary proceeding where practitioner is reprimanded, suspended, or excluded unless the Commissioner orders that the proceeding be kept confidential.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.160 Petitioner for reinstatement.

(a) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner suspended for a period of less than five years will not be considered until the period of suspension has passed.

(b) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner excluded from practice will not be considered until five years after the effective date of the exclusion.

(c) An individual who has resigned under § 10.133 or who has been suspended or excluded may file a petition for reinstatement. The Director may grant a petition for reinstatement when the individual makes a clear and convincing showing that the individual will conduct himself or herself in accordance with the regulations of this part and that granting a petition for reinstatement is not contrary to the public interest. As a condition to reinstatement, the Director may require the individual to:

(1) Meet the requirements of § 10.7, including taking and passing an examination under § 10.7(b) and

(2) Pay all or a portion of the costs and expenses, not to exceed \$1,500, of the disciplinary proceeding which led to suspension or exclusion.

(d) Any suspended or excluded practitioner who has violated the provisions of § 10.158 during his or her period of suspension or exclusion shall not be entitled to reinstatement until such time as the Director is satisfied that a period of suspension equal in time to that ordered by the Commissioner or exclusion for five years has passed during which the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of § 10.158.

(e) Proceedings on any petition for reinstatement shall be open to the public. Before reinstating any suspended or excluded practitioner, the Director shall publish in the *Official Gazette* a notice of the suspended or excluded practitioner's petition for reinstatement and shall permit the public a reasonable opportunity to comment or submit evidence with respect to the petition for reinstatement.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.161 Savings clause.

(a) A disciplinary proceeding based on conduct engaged in prior to the effective date of these regulations may be instituted subsequent to such effective

date, if such conduct would continue to justify suspension or exclusion under the provisions of this part.

(b) No practitioner shall be subject to a disciplinary proceeding under this part based on conduct engaged in before the effective date hereof if such conduct would not have been subject to disciplinary action before such effective date.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

§ 10.162 - 10.169 [Reserved]

§ 10.170 Suspension of rules.

(a) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations of this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, *sua sponte*, or on petition of any party, including the Director or the Director's representative, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.

(b) Any petition under this section will not stay a disciplinary proceeding unless ordered by the Commissioner or an administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

The purpose of this manual is to provide a guide for the examination of patent applications. It is intended for use by examiners and is not to be construed as a rule. The manual is divided into two parts: Part I, which deals with the general principles of patent law, and Part II, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications. Part I is divided into three chapters: Chapter 1, which deals with the general principles of patent law; Chapter 2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Chapter 3, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications.

Part II is divided into two chapters: Chapter 4, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Chapter 5, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications. Chapter 4 is divided into two sections: Section 4.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Section 4.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications.

Chapter 5 is divided into two sections: Section 5.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Section 5.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications. Section 5.1 is divided into two subsections: Subsection 5.1.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Subsection 5.1.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications.

Section 5.2 is divided into two subsections: Subsection 5.2.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Subsection 5.2.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications. Subsection 5.2.1 is divided into two subsubsections: Subsubsection 5.2.1.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Subsubsection 5.2.1.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications.

Subsubsection 5.2.1.2 is divided into two subsubsubsections: Subsubsubsection 5.2.1.2.1, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications; and Subsubsubsection 5.2.1.2.2, which deals with the specific procedures for examining patent applications.

**Index II – RULES RELATING TO PRACTICE
BEFORE THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND
TRADEMARK OFFICE**

A

Address change 10.11
 Advertising 10.31, 10.32
 Agents, registration of 10.6
 Agreements restricting practice 10.38
 Aliens 10.6, 10.9
 Applicant for patent, representation of 1.31, 10.10
 Applicant for trademark, representation of 2.11
 Attorneys, recognition of to practice in
 trademark cases 10.14
 Attorneys, registration of to practice in
 patent cases 10.6, 10.7

B

Breach of trust 10.23
 Business transactions or relations with client 10.65

C

Candidate for judicial office 10.103
 Canons and disciplinary rules 10.20 - 10.112
 Certificate of mailing 1.8, 10.23, 10.141
 Certification effect of signature 10.18
 Circumventing a disciplinary rule,
 amendment 10.23
 Code of Professional Responsibility 10.20 - 10.112
 Coercion, Use of 10.23
 Committee on Discipline 10.4
 Committee on Enrollment 10.3
 Communicating with person having adverse
 interest 10.67
 Communications concerning practitioner's
 service 10.31
 Compensation for legal services 10.68
 Competence 10.76, 10.77
 Complaint instituting disciplinary proceedings ... 10.134
 Concealment of material information 10.23
 Conduct in proceeding before Office 10.89
 Conduct prejudicial to the administration of
 justice 10.23
 Conflict of interest 10.66
 Conviction of criminal offense 10.23

D

Deceit 10.23
 Decisions of the Commissioner 10.156, 10.157

Definitions:

Affidavit 10.1
 Agent 10.6
 Application 10.1
 Canon 10.20
 Confidence 10.57
 Differing interests 10.1
 Director of Enrollment and Discipline 10.1
 Disciplinary rule 10.20
 Employee of a tribunal 10.1
 Excessive legal fees 10.36
 Excluded practitioner 10.1
 Giving information 10.1
 Invention development services 10.23
 Law firm 10.1
 Lawyer 10.1
 Legal counsel 10.1
 Legal profession 10.1
 Legal service 10.1
 Legal system 10.1
 Non-practitioner 10.1
 Office 10.1
 Person 10.1
 Practitioner 10.1
 Proceeding before the Office 10.1
 Professional legal corporation 10.1
 Registration 10.1
 Respondent 10.134
 Secret 10.33, 10.57
 State 10.1
 Suspended practitioner 10.1
 Tribunal 10.1
 United States 10.1
 Designation as registered attorney or agent 10.34
 Direct contact with prospective clients 10.33
 Director of Enrollment and Discipline:
 Appointment 10.2
 Duties 10.2
 Review of decisions of the Director 10.2
 Disbarment from practice on ethical grounds ... 10.130
 Discharge of attorney or agent by client 10.40
 Disciplinary proceedings and investigations:
 Administrative Law Judge 10.139
 Administrative Procedures Act 10.132, 10.144
 Review of interlocutory orders by
 Administrative Law Judge 10.139
 Amendment of complaint 10.145
 Amendment of pleadings 10.145
 Answer to complaint 10.136
 Appeal of initial decision of
 Administrative Law Judge 10.155
 Burden of proof 10.149

Certificate of mailing	1.8, 10.141
Complaint	10.134
Contested case	10.138
Deliberations of Committee on Discipline	10.4
Discovery (see also Discovery in Disciplinary Proceedings)	10.152
Exception to ruling	10.150
Filing papers after complaint filed	10.141
Hearings before Administrative Law Judge	10.144
Initial decision of Administrative Law Judge	10.139, 10.154
Initiating disciplinary proceeding	10.132
Investigations of violations of disciplinary rules	10.131
Notice of suspension or exclusion of practitioner	10.159
Objections to evidence	10.150
Post hearing memorandum	10.153
Pre-hearing statement	10.153
Reinstatement of suspended or excluded practitioner	10.160
Reprimand of registered attorney or agent	10.130, 10.132
Resignation of practitioner	10.133
Review of Commissioner's final decision	10.157
Review of decision denying reinstatement of practitioner	10.2
Savings clause	10.161
Service of complaint	10.135
Settlement of complaint	10.133
Stay pending review of interlocutory order	10.139
Supplemental complaint	10.137
Disciplinary rule violation	
Disclosure of	10.23, 10.24, 10.84, 10.85, 10.131
Discourteous conduct	10.89
Discovery in disciplinary proceedings:	
Copying of documents	10.152
Cross-examination	10.152
Deliberations of committee on enrollment	10.4
Depositions	10.151
Evidence	10.150, 10.152
Impeachment	10.152
Inspection of documents	10.152
Interrogatories	10.152
Motions filed with Administrative Law Judge	10.143, 10.152
Privileged information	10.152
Undue delay in proceedings	10.152
Division of legal fees	10.37

Duress, use of	10.23
Duty to make counsel available	10.30

E

Employment:	
Acceptance	10.39
Failure to carry out contract	10.84
Refusing employment	10.62, 10.63, 10.66
Withdrawal from employment	10.40, 10.63, 10.66
Exception to ruling	10.151
Excessive legal fees	10.36
Exclusion of practitioner	10.130, 10.132, 10.158

F

Failure to disclose material fact with regard to reg- istration	10.22
Failure to notify client	10.23
False accusations	10.23
False statements concerning officials	10.102
Favors, improperly bestowing	10.23
Fees:	
In general	1.21
Petition to review decision of Director of Enrollment and Discipline	10.2
Registration	10.8
Registration examination	10.7
Reinstatement	10.11
Request regrade of examination	10.6
Fees for legal services	10.36
Firm name, use of	10.35
Fitness to practice before the Office	10.23
Foreigners	10.6, 10.9, 10.14
Former Patent and Trademark Office employees	10.7, 10.10, 10.23
Fraud or inequitable conduct	10.23, 10.85
Frivolous complaint	10.23
Funds of client, preserving identity of	10.112

G

Gift, improperly bestowing	10.23
Government employees, registration of to practice in patent cases	10.10

I

Illegal conduct involving moral turpitude	10.23
Illegal fees for services	10.36
Improper alteration of patent application	10.23
Improper execution of oath or declaration	10.23
Improper influence	10.23
Improper signature	10.18, 10.23

Improperly bestowing thing of value 10.23
 Incompetence 10.77, 10.78
 Indecent statement, making of 10.23
 Independent professional
 judgment, exercise of 10.61, 10.62, 10.66, 10.68
 Individual unqualified in respect
 to character, education, etc. 10.7, 10.22
 Influence by others than client 10.68
 Information precluding registration, failure
 to disclose. 10.22
 Initial decision of Administrative
 Law Judge 10.139, 10.154
 Integrity and competence of the legal
 profession, maintaining of 10.22
 Interest in litigation or proceeding before
 Office, acquiring of 10.64
 Investigation of violations of disciplinary rules . . 10.131

J

Joint venture 10.23
 Judicial office, candidate for 10.103

L

Legal fees:
 Division of 10.37
 Failure to pay 10.40
 Sharing of 10.48
 Legal system, assistance in improving the 10.100
 Letterheads, use of 10.35
 Limited recognition to practice in patent cases 10.9

M

Malpractice, limiting client's liability 10.78
 Materially false statements in application
 for registration 10.22
 Misappropriation of funds 10.23
 Misconduct 10.23
 Misrepresentations 10.22, 10.23
 Multiple employment 10.66

N

Neglecting legal matters 10.77
 Non-practitioner, formation of partnership with . . . 10.49
 Notice of suspension or exclusion 10.159

O

Oath requirement 10.8
 Officials, contact with 10.93

P

Petitions:
 Fees in general 1.21
 Regrade of examination 10.7(c)
 Reinstatement 10.160
 Review decision of Commissioner 10.157
 Review decision of Director of
 Enrollment and Discipline 10.2
 Suspension of rules 10.170
 Preserve secrets and confidence of client . . . 10.56, 10.57
Pro se applicant 1.31, 2.11
 Professional impropriety, avoiding
 appearance of 10.110, 10.111
 Promise of advantage, offer of 10.23
 Property of client 10.112
 Proprietary interest in subject matter 10.64
 Publication in *Official Gazette* 10.11, 10.159, 10.160

R

Recognition to practice before the Patent and
 Trademark Office:
 Agents 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
 Aliens 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
 Attorneys 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
 Change of address, requirement to
 notify Director 10.11
 Contents of petition for reinstatement of:
 person not suspended or excluded. 10.2
 suspended or excluded practitioner 10.160
 Examination of registration in patent cases 10.7
 Examination fee 10.7
 Foreigners 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
 Former Patent and Trademark
 Office employees 10.7, 10.10, 10.23
 Government employees 10.10, 10.23
 Limited recognition in patent cases 10.9
 Non-lawyers, recognition in
 trademark cases 10.10
 Patent cases 10.6 - 10.10
 Recognition for representation 1.34, 2.17, 10.14
 Recognition to practice 10.6 - 10.18
 Refusal to recognize practitioner 10.15
 Register of attorneys and agents in
 patent cases 10.5
 Registration fee 10.8
 Registration number 1.34

Removal of attorneys and agents from the register 10.11

Representation by registered attorney or agent in patent cases 1.31

Request for regrade of examination 10.6

Requirements for registration 10.7

Review of Director's decision refusing registration 10.2

Trademark cases 10.14

Unauthorized representation by an agent 10.10, 10.31

Records, property and funds of client, maintaining of 10.112

Reinstatement after removal from the register 10.2, 10.11

Reinstatement of suspended or excluded non-practitioner 10.160

Representing client within bounds of the law 10.85

Reprimand of registered attorney or agent 10.130, 10.132

Resignation 10.133

Revocation of power of attorney in trademark case 2.19

S

Scandalous statements, making of 10.23

Secrets and confidence, preservation of clients 10.56, 10.57

Settlement of claims of clients 10.67

Sharing legal fees 10.48

Signature and certificate of practitioner 10.18

Solicitation 10.32, 10.33

Statement concerning officials, making false 10.102

Suspension of practitioner 10.23, 10.130, 10.132, 10.158

Suspension of rules 10.170

T

Threats of criminal prosecution 10.88

Threats, use of 10.23

U

Unauthorized practice 10.14, 10.23, 10.31, 10.46, 10.47

Undignified conduct 10.89

V

Violating duty of candor and good faith 10.23

Violation of disciplinary rule, misconduct 10.23

W

Withdrawal from employment 10.40

Withdrawal material information 10.22, 10.23

Witnesses 10.63, 10.92

Z

Zealously representing the client 10.83, 10.84

PART 15 — [Reserved]

[Part 15 removed and reserved, 61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

PART 15a — [Reserved]

[Part 15a removed and reserved, 61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

SUBCHAPTER B – GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

PART 102 — DISCLOSURE OF GOVERNMENT INFORMATION

Subpart A - Freedom of Information Act

Sec.

- 102.1 General.
- 102.2 Public reference facilities.
- 102.3 Records under FOIA.
- 102.4 Requirements for making requests.
- 102.5 Responsibility for responding to requests.
- 102.6 Time limits and expedited processing.
- 102.7 Responses to requests.
- 102.9 Business Information.
- 102.10 Appeals from initial determinations or untimely delays.
- 102.11 Fees.

Subpart B - Privacy Act

- 102.21 Purpose and scope.
- 102.22 Definitions.
- 102.23 Procedures for making inquiries.
- 102.24 Procedures for making requests for records.
- 102.25 Disclosure of requested records to individuals.
- 102.26 Special procedures: Medical records.
- 102.27 Procedures for making requests for correction or amendment.
- 102.28 Review of requests for correction or amendment.
- 102.29 Appeal of initial adverse determination on correction or amendment.

- 102.30 Disclosure of record to person other than the individual to whom it pertains.
- 102.31 Fees.
- 102.32 Penalties.
- 102.33 General exemptions.
- 102.34 Specific exemptions.

Appendix to Part 102— Systems of Records Noticed by Other Federal Agencies and Applicable to USPTO Records, and Applicability of this Part Thereto

Subpart A - Freedom of Information Act

§ 102.1 General.

(a) The information in this part is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), as amended (5 U.S.C. 552). This part sets forth the procedures the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) follows to make publicly available the materials and indices specified in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2) and records requested under 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(3). Information routinely provided to the public as part of a regular USPTO activity (for example, press releases issued by the Office of Public Affairs) may be provided to the public without following this part. USPTO's policy is to make discretionary disclosures of records or information exempt from disclosure under FOIA whenever disclosure would not foreseeably harm an interest protected by a FOIA exemption, but this policy does not create any right enforceable in court.

(b) As used in this subpart, *FOIA Officer* means the USPTO employee designated to administer FOIA for USPTO. To ensure prompt processing of a request, correspondence should be addressed to the FOIA Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, WASHINGTON DC 20231 or delivered by hand to Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.2 Public reference facilities.

(a) USPTO maintains a public reference facility that contains the records FOIA requires to be made regularly available for public inspection and copying;

furnishes information and otherwise assists the public concerning USPTO operations under FOIA; and receives and processes requests for records under FOIA. The FOIA Officer is responsible for determining which of USPTO's records are required to be made available for public inspection and copying, and for making those records available in USPTO's reference and records inspection facility. The FOIA Officer shall maintain and make available for public inspection and copying a current subject-matter index of USPTO's public inspection facility records. Each index shall be updated regularly, at least quarterly, with respect to newly included records. In accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2), USPTO has determined that it is unnecessary and impracticable to publish quarterly, or more frequently, and distribute copies of the index and supplements thereto. The public reference facility is located in the Public Search Room, Crystal Plaza Three, 2021 South Clark Place, Room 1A01, Arlington, Virginia.

(b) The FOIA Officer shall also make public inspection facility records created by USPTO on or after November 1, 1996, available electronically through USPTO's World Wide Web site (<http://www.uspto.gov>). Information available at the site shall include:

(1) The FOIA Officer's index of the public inspection facility records, which indicates which records are available electronically; and

(2) The general index referred to in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(c) USPTO maintains and makes available for public inspection and copying:

(1) A current index providing identifying information for the public as to any matter that is issued, adopted, or promulgated after July 4, 1967, and that is retained as a record and is required to be made available or published. Copies of the index are available upon request after payment of the direct cost of duplication;

(2) Copies of records that have been released and that the FOIA Officer determines, because of their subject matter, have become or are likely to become the subject of subsequent requests for substantially the same records;

(3) A general index of the records described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section;

(4) Final opinions and orders, including concurring and dissenting opinions made in the adjudication of cases;

(5) Those statements of policy and interpretations that have been adopted by USPTO and are not published in the *Federal Register*; and

(6) Administrative staff manuals and instructions to staff that affect a member of the public.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.3 Records under FOIA.

(a) Records under FOIA include all Government records, regardless of format, medium or physical characteristics, and include electronic records and information, audiotapes, videotapes, and photographs.

(b) There is no obligation to create, compile, or obtain from outside USPTO a record to satisfy a FOIA request. With regard to electronic data, the issue of whether records are created or merely extracted from an existing database is not always apparent. When responding to FOIA requests for electronic data where creation of a record or programming becomes an issue, USPTO shall undertake reasonable efforts to search for the information in electronic format.

(c) USPTO officials may, upon request, create and provide new information pursuant to user fee statutes, such as the first paragraph of 15 U.S.C. 1525, or in accordance with authority otherwise provided by law. This is outside the scope of FOIA.

(d) The FOIA Officer shall preserve all correspondence pertaining to the requests received under this subpart, as well as copies of all requested records, until disposition or destruction is authorized by Title 44 of the United States Code or a National Archives and Records Administration's General Records Schedule. The FOIA Officer shall not dispose of records while they are the subject of a pending request, appeal, or lawsuit under FOIA.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.4 Requirements for making requests.

(a) A request for USPTO records that are not customarily made available to the public as part of USPTO's regular informational services must be in writing, and shall be processed under FOIA, regardless of whether FOIA is mentioned in the request. Requests should be sent to the USPTO FOIA Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington DC 20231 (records FOIA requires to be made regularly available for public inspection and copying are addressed in § 102.2(c)). For the quickest handling, the request letter and envelope should be marked "Freedom of Information Act Request." For requests for records about oneself, § 102.24 contains additional requirements. For requests for records about another individual, either a written authorization signed by that individual permitting disclosure of those records to the requester or proof that individual is deceased (for example, a copy of a death certificate or an obituary) facilitates processing the request.

(b) The records requested must be described in enough detail to enable USPTO personnel to locate them with a reasonable amount of effort. Whenever possible, a request should include specific information about each record sought, such as the date, title or name, author, recipient, and subject matter of the record, and the name and location of the office where the record is located. Also, if records about a court case are sought, the title of the case, the court in which the case was filed, and the nature of the case should be included. If known, any file designations or descriptions for the requested records should be included. In general, the more specifically the request describes the records sought, the greater the likelihood that USPTO will locate those records. If the FOIA Officer determines that a request does not reasonably describe records, the FOIA Officer will inform the requester what additional information is needed or why the request is otherwise insufficient. The FOIA Officer also may give the requester an opportunity to discuss the request so that it may be modified to meet the requirements of this section.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.5 Responsibility for responding to requests.

(a) *In general.* Except as stated in paragraph (b) of this section, the USPTO will process FOIA requests directed to USPTO. In determining records responsive to a request, the FOIA Officer shall include only those records within USPTO's possession and control as of the date the FOIA Officer receives the request.

(b) *Consultations and referrals.* If the FOIA Officer receives a request for a record in USPTO's possession in which another Federal agency subject to FOIA has the primary interest, the FOIA Officer shall refer the record to that agency for direct response to the requester. The FOIA Officer shall consult with another Federal agency before responding to a requester if the FOIA Officer receives a request for a record in which another Federal agency subject to FOIA has a significant interest, but not the primary interest; or another Federal agency not subject to FOIA has the primary interest or a significant interest. Ordinarily, the agency that originated a record will be presumed to have the primary interest in it.

(c) *Notice of referral.* Whenever a FOIA Officer refers a document to another Federal agency for direct response to the requester, the FOIA Officer will ordinarily notify the requester in writing of the referral and inform the requester of the name of the agency to which the document was referred.

(d) *Timing of responses to consultations and referrals.* All consultations and referrals shall be handled according to the date the FOIA request was received by the first Federal agency.

(e) *Agreements regarding consultations and referrals.* The FOIA Officer may make agreements with other Federal agencies to eliminate the need for consultations or referrals for particular types of records.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.6 Time limits and expedited processing.

(a) *In general.* The FOIA Officer ordinarily shall respond to requests according to their order of receipt.

(b) *Initial response and appeal.* Subject to paragraph (c)(1) of this section, an initial response shall be made within 20 working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) of the

receipt of a request for a record under this part by the proper FOIA Officer identified in accordance with § 102.5(a), and an appeal shall be decided within 20 working days of its receipt by the Office of the General Counsel.

(c) *Unusual circumstances.*

(1) In unusual circumstances as specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the FOIA Officer may extend the time limits in paragraph (b) of this section by notifying the requester in writing as soon as practicable of the unusual circumstances and of the date by which processing of the request is expected to be completed. Extensions of time for the initial determination and extensions on appeal may not exceed a total of ten working days, unless the requester agrees to a longer extension, or the FOIA Officer provides the requester with an opportunity either to limit the scope of the request so that it may be processed within the applicable time limit, or to arrange an alternative time frame for processing the request or a modified request.

(2) As used in this section, *unusual circumstances*, means, but only to the extent reasonably necessary to properly process the particular request:

(i) The need to search for and collect the requested records from field facilities or other establishments separate from the office processing the request;

(ii) The need to search for, collect, and appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records that are the subject of a single request; or

(iii) The need for consultation, which shall be conducted with all practicable speed, with another Federal agency having a substantial interest in the determination of the request.

(3) Unusual circumstances do not include a delay that results from a predictable workload of requests, unless USPTO demonstrates reasonable progress in reducing its backlog of pending requests. Refusal to reasonably modify the scope of a request or arrange an alternate time frame may affect a requester's ability to obtain judicial review.

(4) If the FOIA Officer reasonably believes that multiple requests submitted by a requester, or by a group of requesters acting in concert, constitute a single request that would otherwise involve unusual circumstances, and the requests involve clearly

related matters, the FOIA Officer may aggregate them. Multiple requests involving unrelated matters will not be aggregated.

(d) *Multitrack processing.*

(1) The FOIA Officer may use two or more processing tracks by distinguishing between simple and more complex requests based on the number of pages involved, or some other measure of the amount of work and/or time needed to process the request, and whether the request qualifies for expedited processing as described in paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) The FOIA Officer may provide requesters in a slower track with an opportunity to limit the scope of their requests in order to qualify for faster processing. The FOIA Officer may contact the requester by telephone or by letter, whichever is most efficient in each case.

(e) *Expedited processing.*

(1) Requests and appeals shall be taken out of order and given expedited treatment whenever it is determined they involve:

(i) Circumstances in which the lack of expedited treatment could reasonably be expected to pose an imminent threat to the life or physical safety of an individual;

(ii) The loss of substantial due process rights;

(iii) A matter of widespread and exceptional media interest in which there exist questions about the Government's integrity that affect public confidence; or

(iv) An urgency to inform the public about an actual or alleged Federal Government activity, if made by a person primarily engaged in disseminating information.

(2) A request for expedited processing may be made at the time of the initial request for records or at any later time. For a prompt determination, a request for expedited processing should be sent to the FOIA Officer.

(3) A requester who seeks expedited processing must submit a statement, certified to be true and correct to the best of that person's knowledge and belief, explaining in detail the basis for requesting expedited processing. For example, a requester within the category described in paragraph (e)(1)(iv) of this section, if not a full-time member of the news media, must establish that he or she is a person whose main

professional activity or occupation is information dissemination, though it need not be his or her sole occupation. A requester within the category described in paragraph (e)(1)(iv) of this section must also establish a particular urgency to inform the public about the Government activity involved in the request, beyond the public's right to know about Government activity generally. The formality of certification may be waived as a matter of administrative discretion.

(4) Within ten calendar days of receipt of a request for expedited processing, the FOIA Officer will decide whether to grant it and shall notify the requester of the decision. If a request for expedited treatment is granted, the request shall be given priority and processed as soon as practicable. If a request for expedited processing is denied, any appeal of that decision shall be acted on expeditiously.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.7 Responses to requests.

(a) *Grants of requests.* If the FOIA Officer makes a determination to grant a request in whole or in part, the FOIA Officer will notify the requester in writing. The FOIA Officer will inform the requester in the notice of any fee charged under § 102.11 and disclose records to the requester promptly upon payment of any applicable fee. Records disclosed in part shall be marked or annotated to show each applicable FOIA exemption and the amount of information deleted, unless doing so would harm an interest protected by an applicable exemption. The location of the information deleted shall also be indicated on the record, if feasible.

(b) *Adverse determinations of requests.* If the FOIA Officer makes an adverse determination regarding a request, the FOIA Officer will notify the requester of that determination in writing. An adverse determination is a denial of a request in any respect, namely: A determination to withhold any requested record in whole or in part; a determination that a requested record does not exist or cannot be located; a determination that a record is not readily reproducible in the form or format sought by the requester; a determination that what has been requested is not a record subject to FOIA (except that a determination under § 102.11(j) that records are to be made available

under a fee statute other than FOIA is not an adverse determination); a determination against the requester on any disputed fee matter, including a denial of a request for a fee waiver; or a denial of a request for expedited treatment. Each denial letter shall be signed by the FOIA Officer and shall include:

(1) The name and title or position of the denying official;

(2) A brief statement of the reason(s) for the denial, including applicable FOIA exemption(s);

(3) An estimate of the volume of records or information withheld, in number of pages or some other reasonable form of estimation. This estimate need not be provided if the volume is otherwise indicated through deletions on records disclosed in part, or if providing an estimate would harm an interest protected by an applicable FOIA exemption; and

(4) A statement that the denial may be appealed, and a list of the requirements for filing an appeal under § 102.10(b).

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.9 Business Information.

(a) *In general.* Business information obtained by USPTO from a submitter will be disclosed under FOIA only under this section.

(b) *Definitions.* For the purposes of this section:

(1) *Business information* means commercial or financial information, obtained by USPTO from a submitter, which may be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4 (5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4)).

(2) *Submitter* means any person or entity outside the Federal Government from whom USPTO obtains business information, directly or indirectly. The term includes corporations; state, local and tribal governments; and foreign governments.

(c) *Designation of business information.* A submitter of business information should designate by appropriate markings, either at the time of submission or at a reasonable time thereafter, any portions of its submission that it considers to be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4. These designations will expire ten years after the date of the submission unless the submitter requests, and provides justification for, a longer designation period.

(d) *Notice to submitters.* The FOIA Officer shall provide a submitter with prompt written notice of a FOIA request or administrative appeal that seeks its business information whenever required under paragraph (e) of this section, except as provided in paragraph (h) of this section, in order to give the submitter an opportunity under paragraph (f) of this section to object to disclosure of any specified portion of that information. Such written notice shall be sent via certified mail, return receipt requested, or similar means. The notice shall either describe the business information requested or include copies of the requested records containing the information. When notification of a large number of submitters is required, notification may be made by posting or publishing the notice in a place reasonably likely to accomplish notification.

(e) *When notice is required.* Notice shall be given to the submitter whenever:

(1) The information has been designated in good faith by the submitter as protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4; or

(2) The FOIA Officer has reason to believe that the information may be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4.

(f) *Opportunity to object to disclosure.* The FOIA Officer shall allow a submitter seven working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) from the date of receipt of the written notice described in paragraph (d) of this section to provide the FOIA Officer with a detailed statement of any objection to disclosure. The statement must specify all grounds for withholding any portion of the information under any exemption of FOIA and, in the case of exemption 4, it must show why the information is a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential. If a submitter fails to respond to the notice within the time specified, the submitter will be considered to have no objection to disclosure of the information. Information a submitter provides under this paragraph may itself be subject to disclosure under FOIA.

(g) *Notice of intent to disclose.* The FOIA Officer shall consider a submitter's objections and

specific grounds under FOIA for nondisclosure in deciding whether to disclose business information. If the FOIA Officer decides to disclose business information over the objection of a submitter, the FOIA Officer shall give the submitter written notice via certified mail, return receipt requested, or similar means, which shall include:

(1) A statement of reason(s) why the submitter's objections to disclosure were not sustained;

(2) A description of the business information to be disclosed; and

(3) A statement that the FOIA Officer intends to disclose the information seven working days from the date the submitter receives the notice.

(h) *Exceptions to notice requirements.* The notice requirements of paragraphs (d) and (g) of this section shall not apply if:

(1) The FOIA Officer determines that the information should not be disclosed;

(2) The information has been lawfully published or has been officially made available to the public;

(3) Disclosure of the information is required by statute (other than FOIA) or by a regulation issued in accordance with Executive Order 12600; or

(4) The designation made by the submitter under paragraph (c) of this section appears obviously frivolous, in which case the FOIA Officer shall provide the submitter written notice of any final decision to disclose the information seven working days from the date the submitter receives the notice.

(i) *Notice of FOIA lawsuit.* Whenever a requester files a lawsuit seeking to compel the disclosure of business information, the FOIA Officer shall promptly notify the submitter.

(j) *Corresponding notice to requesters.* Whenever a FOIA Officer provides a submitter with notice and an opportunity to object to disclosure under paragraph (d) of this section, the FOIA Officer shall also notify the requester(s). Whenever a submitter files a lawsuit seeking to prevent the disclosure of business information, the FOIA Officer shall notify the requester(s).

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.10 Appeals from initial determinations or untimely delays.

(a) If a request for records is initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, or if a requester receives an adverse initial determination regarding any other matter under this subpart (as described in § 102.7(b)), the requester may file a written appeal, which must be received by the Office of General Counsel within thirty calendar days of the date of the written denial or, if there has been no determination, may be submitted anytime after the due date, including the last extension under § 102.6(c), of the determination.

(b) Appeals shall be decided by a Deputy General Counsel. Appeals should be addressed to the General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington DC 20231. Both the letter and the appeal envelope should be clearly marked "Freedom of Information Appeal". The appeal must include a copy of the original request and the initial denial, if any, and may include a statement of the reasons why the records requested should be made available and why the initial denial, if any, was in error. No opportunity for personal appearance, oral argument or hearing on appeal is provided.

(c) If an appeal is granted, the person making the appeal shall be immediately notified and copies of the releasable documents shall be made available promptly thereafter upon receipt of appropriate fees determined in accordance with § 102.11.

(d) If no determination of an appeal has been sent to the requester within the twenty-working-day period specified in § 102.6(b) or the last extension thereof, the requester is deemed to have exhausted his administrative remedies with respect to the request, giving rise to a right of judicial review under 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(C). If the person making a request initiates a civil action against USPTO based on the provision in this paragraph, the administrative appeal process may continue.

(e) A determination on appeal shall be in writing and, when it denies records in whole or in part, the letter to the requester shall include:

(1) A brief explanation of the basis for the denial, including a list of applicable FOIA exemptions and a description of how the exemptions apply;

(2) A statement that the decision is final;

(3) Notification that judicial review of the denial is available in the United States district court for the district in which the requester resides or has its principal place of business, the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Virginia, or the District of Columbia; and

(4) The name and title or position of the official responsible for denying the appeal.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.11 Fees.

(a) *In general.* USPTO shall charge for processing requests under FOIA in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, except when fees are limited under paragraph (d) of this section or when a waiver or reduction of fees is granted under paragraph (k) of this section. USPTO shall collect all applicable fees before sending copies of requested records to a requester. Requesters must pay fees by check or money order made payable to the Treasury of the United States.

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section:

(1) *Commercial use request* means a request from or on behalf of a person who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers his or her commercial, trade, or profit interests, which can include furthering those interests through litigation. The FOIA Officer shall determine, whenever reasonably possible, the use to which a requester will put the requested records. When it appears that the requester will put the records to a commercial use, either because of the nature of the request itself or because the FOIA Officer has reasonable cause to doubt a requester's stated use, the FOIA Officer shall provide the requester a reasonable opportunity to submit further clarification.

(2) *Direct costs* means those expenses USPTO incurs in searching for and duplicating (and, in the case of commercial use requests, reviewing) records to respond to a FOIA request. Direct costs

include, for example, the labor costs of the employee performing the work (the basic rate of pay for the employee, plus 16 percent of that rate to cover benefits). Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as the costs of space and heating or lighting of the facility in which the records are kept.

(3) *Duplication* means the making of a copy of a record, or of the information contained in it, necessary to respond to a FOIA request. Copies may take the form of paper, microform, audiovisual materials, or electronic records (for example, magnetic tape or disk), among others. The FOIA Officer shall honor a requester's specified preference of form or format of disclosure if the record is readily reproducible with reasonable efforts in the requested form or format.

(4) *Educational institution* means a pre-school, a public or private elementary or secondary school, an institution of undergraduate higher education, an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of professional education, or an institution of vocational education, that operates a program of scholarly research. To be in this category, a requester must show that the request is authorized by and is made under the auspices of a qualifying institution, and that the records are sought to further scholarly research rather than for a commercial use.

(5) *Noncommercial scientific institution* means an institution that is not operated on a "commercial" basis, as that term is defined in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and that is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research, the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry. To be in this category, a requester must show that the request is authorized by and is made under the auspices of a qualifying institution and that the records are sought to further scientific research rather than for a commercial use.

(6) *Representative of the news media, or news media requester* means any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the public. The term "news" means information that is about current events or that would be of current interest to the

public. Examples of news media entities include television or radio stations broadcasting to the public at large and publishers of periodicals (but only if they can qualify as disseminators of "news") that make their products available for purchase or subscription by the general public. For "freelance" journalists to be regarded as working for a news organization, they must demonstrate a solid basis for expecting publication through that organization. A publication contract would be the clearest proof, but the FOIA Officer shall also look to the past publication record of a requester in making this determination. To be in this category, a requester must not be seeking the requested records for a commercial use. However, a request for records supporting the news-dissemination function of the requester shall not be considered to be for a commercial use.

(7) *Review* means the examination of a record located in response to a request in order to determine whether any portion of it is exempt from disclosure. It also includes processing any record for disclosure—for example, doing all that is necessary to redact it and prepare it for disclosure. Review costs are recoverable even if a record ultimately is not disclosed. Review time does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the application of exemptions.

(8) *Search* means the process of looking for and retrieving records or information responsive to a request. It includes page-by-page or line-by-line identification of information within records and also includes reasonable efforts to locate and retrieve information from records maintained in electronic form or format. The FOIA Officer shall ensure that searches are done in the most efficient and least expensive manner reasonably possible.

(c) *Fees*. In responding to FOIA requests, the FOIA Officer shall charge the fees summarized in chart form in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section and explained in paragraphs (c)(3) through (c)(5) of this section, unless a waiver or reduction of fees has been granted under paragraph (k) of this section.

(1) The four categories and chargeable fees are:

Category	Chargeable fees
(i) Commercial Use Requesters	Search, Review, and Duplication.
(ii) Educational and Non-commercial Scientific Institution Requesters	Duplication (excluding the cost of the first 100 pages).
(iii) Representatives of the News Media	Duplication (excluding the cost of the first 100 pages).
(iv) All Other Requesters	Search and Duplication (excluding the cost of the first 2 hours of search and 100 pages).

(2) *Uniform fee schedule.*

Service	Rate
(i) Manual search	Actual salary rate of employee involved, plus 16 percent of salary rate.
(ii) Computerized search	Actual direct cost, including operator time.
(iii) Duplication of records: (A) Paper copy reproduction (B) Other reproduction (e.g., computer disk or printout, microfilm, microfiche, or microform)	\$.15 per page Actual direct cost, including operator time
(iv) Review of records (includes preparation for release, i.e. excising)	Actual salary rate of employee conducting review, plus 16 percent of salary rate.

(3) *Search.*

(i) Search fees shall be charged for all requests—other than requests made by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media—subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section. The FOIA Officer will charge for time spent searching even if no responsive records are located or if located records are entirely exempt from disclosure. Search fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the search by the involved employees

(ii) For computer searches of records, requesters will be charged the direct costs of conducting the search, although certain requesters (as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section) will be charged no search fee and certain other requesters (as provided in paragraph (d)(3) of this section) are entitled to the cost equivalent of two hours of manual search time without charge. These direct costs include the costs, attributable to the search, of operating a central processing unit and operator/programmer salary.

(4) *Duplication.* Duplication fees will be charged to all requesters, subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section. For a paper photocopy of a record (no more than one copy of which need be supplied), the fee shall be \$.15 cents per page. For copies produced by computer, such as tapes or printouts, the FOIA Officer shall charge the direct costs, including operator time, of producing the copy. For other forms of duplication, the FOIA Officer will charge the direct costs of that duplication.

(5) *Review.* Review fees shall be charged to requesters who make a commercial use request. Review fees shall be charged only for the initial record review—the review done when the FOIA Officer determines whether an exemption applies to a particular record at the initial request level. No charge will be made for review at the administrative appeal level for an exemption already applied. However, records withheld under an exemption that is subsequently determined not to apply may be reviewed again to determine whether any other exemption not previously considered applies, and the costs of that review are chargeable. Review fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the review by the involved employees.

(d) *Limitations on charging fees.*

(1) No search fee will be charged for requests by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media.

(2) No search fee or review fee will be charged for a quarter-hour period unless more than half of that period is required for search or review.

(3) Except for requesters seeking records for a commercial use, the FOIA Officer will provide without charge:

(i) The first 100 pages of duplication (or the cost equivalent); and

(ii) The first two hours of search (or the cost equivalent).

(4) Whenever a total fee calculated under paragraph (c) of this section is \$20.00 or less for any request, no fee will be charged.

(5) The provisions of paragraphs (d) (3) and (4) of this section work together. This means that for requesters other than those seeking records for a commercial use, no fee will be charged unless the cost of the search in excess of two hours plus the cost of duplication in excess of 100 pages totals more than \$20.00.

(e) *Notice of anticipated fees over \$20.00.* When the FOIA Officer determines or estimates that the fees to be charged under this section will be more than \$20.00, the FOIA Officer shall notify the requester of the actual or estimated fees, unless the requester has indicated a willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. If only a portion of the fee can be estimated readily, the FOIA Officer shall advise the requester that the estimated fee may be only a portion of the total fee. If the FOIA Officer has notified a requester that actual or estimated fees are more than \$20.00, the FOIA Officer shall not consider the request received or process it further until the requester agrees to pay the anticipated total fee. Any such agreement should be in writing. A notice under this paragraph shall offer the requester an opportunity to discuss the matter with USPTO personnel in order to reformulate the request to meet the requester's needs at a lower cost.

(f) *Charges for other services.* Apart from the other provisions of this section, the FOIA Officer shall ordinarily charge the direct cost of special services. Such special services could include certifying

that records are true copies or sending records by other than ordinary mail.

(g) *Charging interest.* The FOIA Officer shall charge interest on any unpaid bill starting on the 31st calendar day following the date of billing the requester. Interest charges shall be assessed at the rate provided in 31 U.S.C. 3717 and accrue from the date of the billing until payment is received by the FOIA Officer. The FOIA Officer shall follow the provisions of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996 (Pub. L. 104-134), as amended, and its administrative procedures, including the use of consumer reporting agencies, collection agencies, and offset.

(h) *Aggregating requests.* If a FOIA Officer reasonably believes that a requester or a group of requesters acting together is attempting to divide a request into a series of requests for the purpose of avoiding fees, the FOIA Officer may aggregate those requests and charge accordingly. The FOIA Officer may presume that multiple requests of this type made within a 30-calendar-day period have been made in order to avoid fees. If requests are separated by a longer period, the FOIA Officer shall aggregate them only if a solid basis exists for determining that aggregation is warranted under all the circumstances involved. Multiple requests involving unrelated matters shall not be aggregated.

(i) *Advance payments.*

(1) For requests other than those described in paragraphs (i)(2) and (3) of this section, the FOIA Officer shall not require the requester to make an advance payment: a payment made before work is begun or continued on a request. Payment owed for work already completed (*i.e.*, a payment before copies are sent to a requester) is not an advance payment.

(2) If the FOIA Officer determines or estimates that a total fee to be charged under this section will be more than \$250.00, the requester must pay the entire anticipated fee before beginning to process the request, unless the FOIA Officer receives a satisfactory assurance of full payment from a requester who has a history of prompt payment.

(3) If a requester has previously failed to pay a properly charged FOIA fee to USPTO or another responsible Federal agency within 30 calendar days of the date of billing, the FOIA Officer shall require the requester to pay the full amount due, plus any applicable interest, and to make an advance payment of the

full amount of any anticipated fee, before the FOIA Officer begins to process a new request or continues to process a pending request from that requester.

(4) In cases in which the FOIA Officer requires payment under paragraphs (i)(2) or (3) of this section, the request shall not be considered received and further work will not be done on it until the required payment is received.

(5) Upon the completion of processing of a request, when a specific fee is determined to be payable and appropriate notice has been given to the requester, the FOIA Officer shall make records available to the requester only upon receipt of full payment of the fee.

(j) *Other statutes specifically providing for fees.* The fee schedule of this section does not apply to fees charged under any statute (except for FOIA) that specifically requires USPTO or another responsible Federal agency to set and collect fees for particular types of records. If records responsive to requests are maintained for distribution by agencies operating such statutorily based fee schedule programs, the FOIA Officer shall inform requesters of how to obtain records from those sources.

(k) *Requirements for waiver or reduction of fees.*

(1) Records responsive to a request will be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (c) of this section if the FOIA Officer determines, based on all available information, that the requester has demonstrated that:

(i) Disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the Government; and

(ii) Disclosure of the information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.

(2) To determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met, the FOIA Officer shall consider the following factors:

(i) *The subject of the request:* whether the subject of the requested records concerns the operations or activities of the Government. The subject of the requested records must concern identifiable operations or activities of the Federal Government, with a connection that is direct and clear, not remote or attenuated.

(ii) *The informative value of the information to be disclosed:* whether the disclosure is "likely to contribute" to an understanding of Government operations or activities. The disclosable portions of the requested records must be meaningfully informative about Government operations or activities in order to be "likely to contribute" to an increased public understanding of those operations or activities. The disclosure of information that already is in the public domain, in either a duplicative or a substantially identical form, would not be likely to contribute to such understanding.

(iii) *The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosure:* whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to the understanding of a reasonably broad audience of persons interested in the subject, as opposed to the individual understanding of the requester. A requester's expertise in the subject area and ability and intention to effectively convey information to the public shall be considered. It shall be presumed that a representative of the news media satisfies this consideration. It shall be presumed that a requester who merely provides information to media sources does not satisfy this consideration.

(iv) *The significance of the contribution to public understanding:* whether the disclosure is likely to contribute "significantly" to public understanding of Government operations or activities. The public's understanding of the subject in question prior to the disclosure must be significantly enhanced by the disclosure.

(3) To determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met, the FOIA Officer shall consider the following factors:

(i) *The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest:* whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure. The FOIA Officer shall consider any commercial interest of the requester (with reference to the definition of "commercial use request" in paragraph (b)(1) of this section), or of any person on whose behalf the requester may be acting, that would be furthered by the requested disclosure. Requesters shall be given an opportunity to provide explanatory information regarding this consideration.

(ii) *The primary interest in disclosure:* whether any identified commercial interest of the

requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is "primarily in the commercial interest of the requester." A fee waiver or reduction is justified if the public interest standard (paragraph (k)(1)(i) of this section) is satisfied and the public interest is greater than any identified commercial interest in disclosure. The FOIA Officer ordinarily shall presume that if a news media requester has satisfied the public interest standard, the public interest is the primary interest served by disclosure to that requester. Disclosure to data brokers or others who merely compile and market Government information for direct economic return shall not be presumed to primarily serve the public interest.

(4) If only some of the records to be released satisfy the requirements for a fee waiver, a waiver shall be granted for those records.

(5) Requests for the waiver or reduction of fees should address the factors listed in paragraphs (k)(2) and (3) of this section, insofar as they apply to each request.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

Subpart B — Privacy Act

§ 102.21 Purpose and scope.

(a) The purpose of this subpart is to establish policies and procedures for implementing the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552a) (the Act). The main objectives are to facilitate full exercise of rights conferred on individuals under the Act and to ensure the protection of privacy as to individuals on whom USPTO maintains records in systems of records under the Act. USPTO accepts the responsibility to act promptly and in accordance with the Act upon receipt of any inquiry, request or appeal from a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States, regardless of the age of the individual. Further, USPTO accepts the obligations to maintain only such information on individuals as is relevant and necessary to the performance of its lawful functions, to maintain that information with such accuracy, relevancy, timeliness, and completeness as is reasonably necessary to assure fairness in determinations made by USPTO about the individual, to obtain information from the individual to the extent practicable, and to

take every reasonable step to protect that information from unwarranted disclosure. USPTO will maintain no record describing how an individual exercises rights guaranteed by the First Amendment unless expressly authorized by statute or by the individual about whom the record is maintained or unless pertinent to and within the scope of an authorized law enforcement activity. An individual's name and address will not be sold or rented by USPTO unless such action is specifically authorized by law; however, this provision shall not be construed to require the withholding of names and addresses otherwise permitted to be made public.

(b) This subpart is administered by the Privacy Officer of USPTO.

(c) Matters outside the scope of this subpart include the following:

(1) Requests for records which do not pertain to the individual making the request, or to the individual about whom the request is made if the requester is the parent or guardian of the individual;

(2) Requests involving information pertaining to an individual which is in a record or file but not within the scope of a system of records notice published in the *Federal Register*;

(3) Requests to correct a record where a grievance procedure is available to the individual either by regulation or by provision in a collective bargaining agreement with USPTO, and the individual has initiated, or has expressed in writing the intention of initiating, such grievance procedure. An individual selecting the grievance procedure waives the use of the procedures in this subpart to correct or amend a record; and,

(4) Requests for employee-employer services and counseling which were routinely granted prior to enactment of the Act, including, but not limited to, test calculations of retirement benefits, explanations of health and life insurance programs, and explanations of tax withholding options.

(d) Any request for records which pertains to the individual making the request, or to the individual about whom the request is made if the requester is the parent or guardian of the individual, shall be processed under the Act and this subpart and under the Freedom of Information Act and USPTO's implementing regulations at Subpart A of this part, regard-

less whether the Act or the Freedom of Information Act is mentioned in the request.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.22 Definitions.

(a) All terms used in this subpart which are defined in 5 U.S.C. 552a shall have the same meaning herein.

(b) As used in this subpart:

(1) *Act* means the "Privacy Act of 1974, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552a)".

(2) *Appeal* means a request by an individual to review and reverse an initial denial of a request by that individual for correction or amendment.

(3) *USPTO* means the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

(4) *Inquiry* means either a request for general information regarding the Act and this subpart or a request by an individual (or that individual's parent or guardian) that USPTO determine whether it has any record in a system of records which pertains to that individual.

(5) *Person* means any human being and also shall include but not be limited to, corporations, associations, partnerships, trustees, receivers, personal representatives, and public or private organizations.

(6) *Privacy Officer* means a USPTO employee designated to administer this subpart.

(7) *Request for access* means a request by an individual or an individual's parent or guardian to see a record which is in a particular system of records and which pertains to that individual.

(8) *Request for correction or amendment* means the request by an individual or an individual's parent or guardian that USPTO change (either by correction, amendment, addition or deletion) a particular record in a system of records which pertains to that individual.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.23 Procedures for making inquiries.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States

may submit an inquiry to USPTO. The inquiry should be made either in person at Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Park Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia, or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, WASHINGTON DC 20231 or to the official identified in the notification procedures paragraph of the systems of records notice published in the *Federal Register*. If an individual believes USPTO maintains a record pertaining to that individual but does not know which system of records might contain such a record, the USPTO Privacy Officer will provide assistance in person or by mail.

(b) Inquiries submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT INQUIRY" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. If the inquiry is for general information regarding the Act and this subpart, no particular information is required. USPTO reserves the right to require compliance with the identification procedures appearing at § 102.24(d) where circumstances warrant. If the inquiry is a request that USPTO determine whether it has, in a given system of records, a record which pertains to the individual, the following information should be submitted:

(1) Name of individual whose record is sought;

(2) Individual whose record is sought is either a U.S. citizen or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence;

(3) Identifying data that will help locate the record (for example, maiden name, occupational license number, period or place of employment, etc.);

(4) Record sought, by description and by record system name, if known;

(5) Action requested (that is, sending information on how to exercise rights under the Act; determining whether requested record exists; gaining access to requested record; or obtaining copy of requested record);

(6) Copy of court guardianship order or minor's birth certificate, as provided in § 102.24(f)(3), but only if requester is guardian or parent of individual whose record is sought;

(7) Requester's name (printed), signature, address, and telephone number (optional);

- (8) Date; and,
- (9) Certification of request by notary or other official, but only if
- (i) Request is for notification that requested record exists, for access to requested record or for copy of requested record;
- (ii) Record is not available to any person under 5 U.S.C. 552; and
- (iii) Requester does not appear before an employee of USPTO for verification of identity.

(c) Any inquiry which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in paragraph (b) of this section will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. An inquiry which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time period for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when an inquiry so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her inquiry was improperly addressed and the date the inquiry was received at the proper address.

(d)(1) Each inquiry received shall be acted upon promptly by the Privacy Officer. Every effort will be made to respond within ten working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) of the date of receipt. If a response cannot be made within ten working days, the Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment during that period providing information on the status of the inquiry and asking for such further information as may be necessary to process the inquiry. The first correspondence sent by the Privacy Officer to the requester shall contain USPTO's control number assigned to the request, as well as a note that the requester should use that number in all future contacts in order to facilitate processing. USPTO shall use that control number in all subsequent correspondence.

(2) If the Privacy Officer fails to send an acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided above, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(e) An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her inquiry.

(f) Special note should be taken of the fact that certain agencies are responsible for publishing notices of systems of records having Government-wide application to other agencies, including USPTO. The agencies known to be publishing these general notices and the types of records covered therein appear in an appendix to this part. The provisions of this section, and particularly paragraph (a) of this section, should be followed in making inquiries with respect to such records. Such records in USPTO are subject to the provisions of this part to the extent indicated in the appendix to this part. The exemptions, if any, determined by an agency publishing a general notice shall be invoked and applied by USPTO after consultation, as necessary, with that other agency.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.24 Procedures for making requests for records.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States may submit a request for access to records to USPTO. The request should be made either in person at Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia, or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231.

(b) Requests submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT REQUEST" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. Any request which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in this paragraph will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. A request which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring time periods for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when a request so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her request was improperly addressed and the date when the request was received at the proper address.

(c) If the request follows an inquiry under § 102.23 in connection with which the individual's identity was established by USPTO, the individual need only indicate the record to which access is sought, provide the USPTO control number assigned to the request, and sign and date the request. If the request is not preceded by an inquiry under § 102.23, the procedures of this section should be followed.

(d) The requirements for identification of individuals seeking access to records are as follows:

(1) *In person.* Each individual making a request in person shall be required to present satisfactory proof of identity. The means of proof, in the order of preference and priority, are:

(i) A document bearing the individual's photograph (for example, driver's license, passport or military or civilian identification card);

(ii) A document, preferably issued for participation in a federally sponsored program, bearing the individual's signature (for example, unemployment insurance book, employer's identification card, national credit card, and professional, craft or union membership card); and

(iii) A document bearing neither the photograph nor the signature of the individual, preferably issued for participation in a federally sponsored program (for example, Medicaid card). In the event the individual can provide no suitable documentation of identity, USPTO will require a signed statement asserting the individual's identity and stipulating that the individual understands the penalty provision of 5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3) recited in § 102.32(a). In order to avoid any unwarranted disclosure of an individual's records, USPTO reserves the right to determine the adequacy of proof of identity offered by any individual, particularly when the request involves a sensitive record.

(2) *Not in person.* If the individual making a request does not appear in person before the Privacy Officer or other employee authorized to determine identity, a certification of a notary public or equivalent officer empowered to administer oaths must accompany the request under the circumstances prescribed in § 102.23(b)(9). The certification in or attached to the letter must be substantially in accordance with the following text:

City of _____

County of _____:ss

(Name of individual), who affixed (his) (her) signature below in my presence, came before me, a (title), in and for the aforesaid County and State, this _____ day of _____, 20____, and established (his) (her) identity to my satisfaction.

My commission expires _____.

(Signature)

(3) *Parents of minors and legal guardians.*

An individual acting as the parent of a minor or the legal guardian of the individual to whom a record pertains shall establish his or her personal identity in the same manner prescribed in either paragraph (d)(1) or (d)(2) of this section. In addition, such other individual shall establish his or her identity in the representative capacity of parent or legal guardian. In the case of the parent of a minor, the proof of identity shall be a certified or authenticated copy of the minor's birth certificate. In the case of a legal guardian of an individual who has been declared incompetent due to physical or mental incapacity or age by a court of competent jurisdiction, the proof of identity shall be a certified or authenticated copy of the court's order. For purposes of the Act, a parent or legal guardian may represent only a living individual, not a decedent. A parent or legal guardian may be accompanied during personal access to a record by another individual, provided the provisions of § 102.25(f) are satisfied.

(e) When the provisions of this subpart are alleged to impede an individual in exercising his or her right to access, USPTO will consider, from an individual making a request, alternative suggestions regarding proof of identity and access to records.

(f) An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her request for access to a record.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.25 Disclosure of requested records to individuals.

(a)(1) The Privacy Officer shall act promptly upon each request. Every effort will be made to respond within ten working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) of the date of receipt. If a response cannot be made within ten working days due to unusual circumstances, the

Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment during that period providing information on the status of the request and asking for any further information that may be necessary to process the request. "Unusual circumstances" shall include circumstances in which

(i) A search for and collection of requested records from inactive storage, field facilities or other establishments is required;

(ii) A voluminous amount of data is involved;

(iii) Information on other individuals must be separated or expunged from the particular record; or

(iv) Consultations with other agencies having a substantial interest in the determination of the request are necessary.

(2) If the Privacy Officer fails to send an acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided above in paragraph (a) of this section, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(b) *Grant of access*—

(1) *Notification.* An individual shall be granted access to a record pertaining to him or her, except where the provisions of paragraph (g)(1) of this section apply. The Privacy Officer will notify the individual of a determination to grant access, and provide the following information:

(i) The methods of access, as set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section;

(ii) The place at which the record may be inspected;

(iii) The earliest date on which the record may be inspected and the period of time that the records will remain available for inspection. In no event shall the earliest date be later than thirty calendar days from the date of notification;

(iv) The estimated date by which a copy of the record could be mailed and the estimate of fees pursuant to § 102.31. In no event shall the estimated date be later than thirty calendar days from the date of notification;

(v) The fact that the individual, if he or she wishes, may be accompanied by another individual during personal access, subject to the procedures set forth in paragraph (f) of this section; and,

(vi) Any additional requirements needed to grant access to a specific record.

(2) *Methods of access.* The following methods of access to records by an individual may be available depending on the circumstances of a given situation:

(i) Inspection in person may be had in a location specified by the Privacy Officer during business hours;

(ii) Transfer of records to a Federal facility more convenient to the individual may be arranged, but only if the Privacy Officer determines that a suitable facility is available, that the individual's access can be properly supervised at that facility, and that transmittal of the records to that facility will not unduly interfere with operations of USPTO or involve unreasonable costs, in terms of both money and manpower; and

(iii) Copies may be mailed at the request of the individual, subject to payment of the fees prescribed in § 102.31. USPTO, on its own initiative, may elect to provide a copy by mail, in which case no fee will be charged the individual.

(c) Access to medical records is governed by the provisions of § 102.26.

(d) USPTO will supply such other information and assistance at the time of access as to make the record intelligible to the individual.

(e) USPTO reserves the right to limit access to copies and abstracts of original records, rather than the original records. This election would be appropriate, for example, when the record is in an automated data media such as tape or diskette, when the record contains information on other individuals, and when deletion of information is permissible under exemptions (for example, 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2)). In no event shall original records of USPTO be made available to the individual except under the immediate supervision of the Privacy Officer or the Privacy Officer's designee.

(f) Any individual who requests access to a record pertaining to that individual may be accompanied by another individual of his or her choice. "Accompanied" includes discussion of the record in the presence of the other individual. The individual to whom the record pertains shall authorize the presence of the other individual in writing. The authorization shall include the name of the other individual, a spe-

cific description of the record to which access is sought, the USPTO control number assigned to the request, the date, and the signature of the individual to whom the record pertains. The other individual shall sign the authorization in the presence of the Privacy Officer. An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her decision to be accompanied by another individual during personal access to a record.

(g) *Initial denial of access—*

(1) *Grounds.* Access by an individual to a record which pertains to that individual will be denied only upon a determination by the Privacy Officer that:

(i) The record is exempt under § 102.33 or § 102.34, or exempt by determination of another agency publishing notice of the system of records, as described in § 102.23(f);

(ii) The record is information compiled in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding;

(iii) The provisions of § 102.26 pertaining to medical records temporarily have been invoked; or

(iv) The individual has unreasonably failed to comply with the procedural requirements of this part.

(2) *Notification.* The Privacy Officer shall give notice of denial of access to records to the individual in writing and shall include the following information:

(i) The Privacy Officer's name and title or position;

(ii) The date of the denial;

(iii) The reasons for the denial, including citation to the appropriate section of the Act and this part;

(iv) The individual's opportunities, if any, for further administrative consideration, including the identity and address of the responsible official. If no further administrative consideration within USPTO is available, the notice shall state that the denial is administratively final; and

(v) If stated to be administratively final within USPTO, the individual's right to judicial review provided under 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1), as limited by 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(5).

(3) *Administrative review.* When an initial denial of a request is issued by the Privacy Officer, the individual's opportunities for further consideration shall be as follows:

(i) As to denial under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, two opportunities for further consideration are available in the alternative:

(A) If the individual contests the application of the exemption to the records, review procedures in § 102.25(g)(3)(ii) shall apply; or

(B) If the individual challenges the exemption itself, the procedure is a petition for the issuance, amendment, or repeal of a rule under 5 U.S.C. 553(e). If the exemption was determined by USPTO, such petition shall be filed with the General Counsel. If the exemption was determined by another agency (as described in § 102.23(f)), USPTO will provide the individual with the name and address of the other agency and any relief sought by the individual shall be that provided by the regulations of the other agency. Within USPTO, no such denial is administratively final until such a petition has been filed by the individual and disposed of on the merits by the General Counsel.

(ii) As to denial under paragraphs (g)(1)(ii) of this section, (g)(1)(iv) of this section or (to the limited extent provided in paragraph (g)(3)(i)(A) of this section) paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, the individual may file for review with the General Counsel, as indicated in the Privacy Officer's initial denial notification. The procedures appearing in § 102.28 shall be followed by both the individual and USPTO to the maximum extent practicable.

(iii) As to denial under paragraph (g)(1)(iii) of this section, no further administrative consideration within USPTO is available because the denial is not administratively final until expiration of the time period indicated in § 102.26(a).

(h) If a request is partially granted and partially denied, the Privacy Officer shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.26 Special procedures: Medical records.

(a) No response to any request for access to medical records by an individual will be issued by the Privacy Officer for a period of seven working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) from the date of receipt.

(b) USPTO has published as a routine use, for all systems of records containing medical records, consultations with an individual's physician or psychologist if, in the sole judgment of USPTO, disclosure could have an adverse effect upon the individual. The mandatory waiting period set forth in paragraph (a) of this section will permit exercise of this routine use in appropriate cases. USPTO will pay no cost of any such consultation.

(c) In every case of a request by an individual for access to medical records, the Privacy Officer shall:

(1) Inform the individual of the waiting period prescribed in paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Obtain the name and address of the individual's physician and/or psychologist, if the individual consents to give them;

(3) Obtain specific, written consent for USPTO to consult the individual's physician and/or psychologist in the event that USPTO believes such consultation is advisable, if the individual consents to give such authorization;

(4) Obtain specific, written consent for USPTO to provide the medical records to the individual's physician or psychologist in the event that USPTO believes access to the record by the individual is best effected under the guidance of the individual's physician or psychologist, if the individual consents to give such authorization; and

(5) Forward the individual's medical record to USPTO's medical expert for review and a determination on whether consultation with or transmittal of the medical records to the individual's physician or psychologist is warranted. If the consultation with or transmittal of such records to the individual's physician or psychologist is determined to be warranted, USPTO's medical expert shall so consult or transmit. Whether or not such a consultation or transmittal occurs, USPTO's medical officer shall provide instruction to the Privacy Officer regarding the conditions of access by the individual to his or her medical records.

(d) If an individual refuses in writing to give the names and consents set forth in paragraphs (c)(2) through (c)(4) of this section and USPTO has determined that disclosure could have an adverse effect upon the individual, USPTO shall give the individual access to said records by means of a copy, provided

without cost to the requester, sent registered mail return receipt requested.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.27 Procedures for making requests for correction or amendment.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States may submit a request for correction or amendment to USPTO. The request should be made either in person or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer who processed the individual's request for access to the record, and to whom is delegated authority to make initial determinations on requests for correction or amendment. The office of the Privacy Officer is open to the public between the hours of 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday (excluding legal public holidays).

(b) Requests submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT REQUEST" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. Any request which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in this paragraph will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. A request which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time period for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when a request so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her request was improperly addressed and the date the request was received at the proper address.

(c) Since the request, in all cases, will follow a request for access under § 102.25, the individual's identity will be established by his or her signature on the request and use of the USPTO control number assigned to the request.

(d) A request for correction or amendment should include the following:

(1) Specific identification of the record sought to be corrected or amended (for example, description, title, date, paragraph, sentence, line and words);

(2) The specific wording to be deleted, if any;

(3) The specific wording to be inserted or added, if any, and the exact place at which to be inserted or added; and

(4) A statement of the basis for the requested correction or amendment, with all available supporting documents and materials which substantiate the statement. The statement should identify the criterion of the Act being invoked, that is, whether the information in the record is unnecessary, inaccurate, irrelevant, untimely or incomplete.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.28 Review of requests for correction or amendment.

(a)(1)(i) Not later than ten working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) after receipt of a request to correct or amend a record, the Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment providing an estimate of time within which action will be taken on the request and asking for such further information as may be necessary to process the request. The estimate of time may take into account unusual circumstances as described in § 102.25(a). No acknowledgment will be sent if the request can be reviewed, processed, and the individual notified of the results of review (either compliance or denial) within the ten working days. Requests filed in person will be acknowledged in writing at the time submitted.

(ii) If the Privacy Officer fails to send the acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided in paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(2) Promptly after acknowledging receipt of a request, or after receiving such further information as might have been requested, or after arriving at a decision within the ten working days, the Privacy Officer shall either:

(i) Make the requested correction or amendment and advise the individual in writing of

such action, providing either a copy of the corrected or amended record or a statement as to the means whereby the correction or amendment was effected in cases where a copy cannot be provided (for example, erasure of information from a record maintained only in magnetically recorded computer files); or

(ii) Inform the individual in writing that his or her request is denied and provide the following information:

(A) The Privacy Officer's name and title or position;

(B) The date of the denial;

(C) The reasons for the denial, including citation to the appropriate sections of the Act and this subpart; and

(D) The procedures for appeal of the denial as set forth in § 102.29, including the address of the General Counsel.

(3) The term *promptly* in this section means within thirty working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays). If the Privacy Officer cannot make the determination within thirty working days, the individual will be advised in writing of the reason therefor and of the estimated date by which the determination will be made.

(b) Whenever an individual's record is corrected or amended pursuant to a request by that individual, the Privacy Officer shall be responsible for notifying all persons and agencies to which the corrected or amended portion of the record had been disclosed prior to its correction or amendment, if an accounting of such disclosure required by the Act was made. The notification shall require a recipient agency maintaining the record to acknowledge receipt of the notification, to correct or amend the record, and to apprise any agency or person to which it had disclosed the record of the substance of the correction or amendment.

(c) The following criteria will be considered by the Privacy Officer in reviewing a request for correction or amendment:

(1) The sufficiency of the evidence submitted by the individual;

(2) The factual accuracy of the information;

(3) The relevance and necessity of the information in terms of purpose for which it was collected;

(4) The timeliness and currency of the information in light of the purpose for which it was collected;

(5) The completeness of the information in terms of the purpose for which it was collected;

(6) The degree of risk that denial of the request could unfairly result in determinations adverse to the individual;

(7) The character of the record sought to be corrected or amended; and

(8) The propriety and feasibility of complying with the specific means of correction or amendment requested by the individual.

(d) USPTO will not undertake to gather evidence for the individual, but does reserve the right to verify the evidence which the individual submits.

(e) Correction or amendment of a record requested by an individual will be denied only upon a determination by the Privacy Officer that:

(1) The individual has failed to establish, by a preponderance of the evidence, the propriety of the correction or amendment in light of the criteria set forth in paragraph (c) of this section;

(2) The record sought to be corrected or amended is part of the official record in a terminated judicial, quasi-judicial, or quasi-legislative proceeding to which the individual was a party or participant;

(3) The information in the record sought to be corrected or amended, or the record sought to be corrected or amended, is the subject of a pending judicial, quasi-judicial, or quasi-legislative proceeding to which the individual is a party or participant;

(4) The correction or amendment would violate a duly enacted statute or promulgated regulation; or

(5) The individual has unreasonably failed to comply with the procedural requirements of this part.

(f) If a request is partially granted and partially denied, the Privacy Officer shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.29 Appeal of initial adverse determination on correction or amendment.

(a) When a request for correction or amendment has been denied initially under § 102.28, the individual may submit a written appeal within thirty working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) after the date of the initial denial. When an appeal is submitted by mail, the postmark is conclusive as to timeliness.

(b) An appeal should be addressed to the General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. An appeal should include the words "PRIVACY APPEAL" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. An appeal not addressed and marked as provided herein will be so marked by USPTO personnel when it is so identified and will be forwarded immediately to the General Counsel. An appeal which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time periods in this section until actual receipt by the General Counsel. In each instance when an appeal so forwarded is received, the General Counsel shall notify the individual that his or her appeal was improperly addressed and the date when the appeal was received at the proper address.

(c) The individual's appeal shall include a statement of the reasons why the initial denial is believed to be in error and USPTO's control number assigned to the request. The appeal shall be signed by the individual. The record which the individual requests be corrected or amended and all correspondence between the Privacy Officer and the requester will be furnished by the Privacy Officer who issued the initial denial. Although the foregoing normally will comprise the entire record on appeal, the General Counsel may seek additional information necessary to assure that the final determination is fair and equitable and, in such instances, disclose the additional information to the individual to the greatest extent possible, and provide an opportunity for comment thereon.

(d) No personal appearance or hearing on appeal will be allowed.

(e) The General Counsel shall act upon the appeal and issue a final determination in writing not later than thirty working days (*i.e.*, excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) from the date on which the appeal is received, except that the

General Counsel may extend the thirty days upon deciding that a fair and equitable review cannot be made within that period, but only if the individual is advised in writing of the reason for the extension and the estimated date by which a final determination will issue. The estimated date should not be later than the sixtieth working day after receipt of the appeal unless unusual circumstances, as described in § 102.25(a), are met.

(f) If the appeal is determined in favor of the individual, the final determination shall include the specific corrections or amendments to be made and a copy thereof shall be transmitted promptly both to the individual and to the Privacy Officer who issued the initial denial. Upon receipt of such final determination, the Privacy Officer promptly shall take the actions set forth in § 102.28(a)(2)(i) and (b).

(g) If the appeal is denied, the final determination shall be transmitted promptly to the individual and state the reasons for the denial. The notice of final determination also shall inform the individual of the following:

(1) The right of the individual under the Act to file a concise statement of reasons for disagreeing with the final determination. The statement ordinarily should not exceed one page and USPTO reserves the right to reject a statement of excessive length. Such a statement shall be filed with the General Counsel. It should provide the USPTO control number assigned to the request, indicate the date of the final determination and be signed by the individual. The General Counsel shall acknowledge receipt of such statement and inform the individual of the date on which it was received.

(2) The facts that any such disagreement statement filed by the individual will be noted in the disputed record, that the purposes and uses to which the statement will be put are those applicable to the record in which it is noted, and that a copy of the statement will be provided to persons and agencies to which the record is disclosed subsequent to the date of receipt of such statement;

(3) The fact that USPTO will append to any such disagreement statement filed by the individual, a copy of the final determination or summary thereof which also will be provided to persons and agencies to which the disagreement statement is disclosed; and,

(4) The right of the individual to judicial review of the final determination under 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1)(A), as limited by 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(5).

(h) In making the final determination, the General Counsel shall employ the criteria set forth in § 102.28(c) and shall deny an appeal only on the grounds set forth in § 102.28(e).

(i) If an appeal is partially granted and partially denied, the General Counsel shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

(j) Although a copy of the final determination or a summary thereof will be treated as part of the individual's record for purposes of disclosure in instances where the individual has filed a disagreement statement, it will not be subject to correction or amendment by the individual.

(k) The provisions of paragraphs (g)(1) through (g)(3) of this section satisfy the requirements of 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(3).

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.30 Disclosure of record to person other than the individual to whom it pertains.

(a) USPTO may disclose a record pertaining to an individual to a person other than the individual to whom it pertains only in the following instances:

(1) Upon written request by the individual, including authorization under § 102.25(f);

(2) With the prior written consent of the individual;

(3) To a parent or legal guardian under 5 U.S.C. 552a(h);

(4) When required by the Act and not covered explicitly by the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552a(b); and

(5) When permitted under 5 U.S.C. 552a(b)(1) through (12), which read as follows:¹

¹ 5 U.S.C. 552a(b)(4) has no application within USPTO.

(i) To those officers and employees of the agency which maintains the record who have a need for the record in the performance of their duties;

(ii) Required under 5 U.S.C. 552;

(iii) For a routine use as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552a(a)(7) and described under 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(4)(D);

(iv) To the Bureau of the Census for purposes of planning or carrying out a census or survey or related activity pursuant to the provisions of Title 13;

(v) To a recipient who has provided the agency with advance adequate written assurance that the record will be used solely as a statistical research or reporting record, and the record is to be transferred in a form that is not individually identifiable;

(vi) To the National Archives and Records Administration as a record which has sufficient historical or other value to warrant its continued preservation by the United States Government, or for evaluation by the Archivist of the United States or the designee of the Archivist to determine whether the record has such value;

(vii) To another agency or to an instrumentality of any governmental jurisdiction within or under the control of the United States for a civil or criminal law enforcement activity if the activity is authorized by law, and if the head of the agency or instrumentality has made a written request to the agency which maintains the record specifying the particular portion desired and the law enforcement activity for which the record is sought;

(viii) To a person pursuant to a showing of compelling circumstances affecting the health or safety of an individual if upon such disclosure notification is transmitted to the last known address of such individual;

(ix) To either House of Congress, or, to the extent of matter within its jurisdiction, any committee or subcommittee thereof, any joint committee of Congress or subcommittee of any such joint committee;

(x) To the Comptroller General, or any of his authorized representatives, in the course of the performance of the duties of the General Accounting Office;

(xi) Pursuant to the order of a court of competent jurisdiction; or

(xii) To a consumer reporting agency in accordance with section 3711(e) of Title 31.

(b) The situations referred to in paragraph (a)(4) of this section include the following:

(1) 5 U.S.C. 552a(c)(4) requires dissemination of a corrected or amended record or notation of a disagreement statement by USPTO in certain circumstances;

(2) 5 U.S.C. 552a(d) requires disclosure of records to the individual to whom they pertain, upon request; and

(3) 5 U.S.C. 552a(g) authorizes civil action by an individual and requires disclosure by USPTO to the court.

(c) The Privacy Officer shall make an accounting of each disclosure by him of any record contained in a system of records in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552a(c) (1) and (2). Except for a disclosure made under 5 U.S.C. 552a(b)(7), the Privacy Officer shall make such accounting available to any individual, insofar as it pertains to that individual, on request submitted in accordance with § 102.24. The Privacy Officer shall make reasonable efforts to notify any individual when any record in a system of records is disclosed to any person under compulsory legal process, promptly upon being informed that such process has become a matter of public record.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.31 Fees.

The only fees to be charged to or collected from an individual under the provisions of this part are for duplication of records at the request of the individual. The Privacy Officer shall charge fees for duplication of records under the Act in the same way in which they charge duplication fees under § 102.11, except as provided in this section.

(a) No fees shall be charged or collected for the following: Search for and retrieval of the records; review of the records; copying at the initiative of USPTO without a request from the individual; transportation of records and personnel; and first-class postage.

(b) It is the policy of USPTO to provide an individual with one copy of each record corrected or amended pursuant to his or her request without charge as evidence of the correction or amendment.

(c) As required by the United States Office of Personnel Management in its published regulations implementing the Act, USPTO will charge no fee for a single copy of a personnel record covered by that agency's Government-wide published notice of systems of records.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.32 Penalties.

(a) The Act provides, in pertinent part:

Any person who knowingly and willfully requests or obtains any record concerning an individual from an agency under false pretenses shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and fined not more than \$5,000. (5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3)).

(b) A person who falsely or fraudulently attempts to obtain records under the Act also may be subject to prosecution under such other criminal statutes as 18 U.S.C. 494, 495 and 1001.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.33 General exemptions.

(a) Individuals may not have access to records maintained by USPTO but which were provided by another agency which has determined by regulation that such information is subject to general exemption under 5 U.S.C. 552a(j). If such exempt records are within a request for access, USPTO will advise the individual of their existence and of the name and address of the source agency. For any further information concerning the record and the exemption, the individual must contact that source agency.

(b) The general exemption determined to be necessary and proper with respect to systems of records maintained by USPTO, including the parts of each system to be exempted, the provisions of the Act from which they are exempted, and the justification for the exemption, is as follows: *Investigative*

Records—Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct—COMMERCE/DEPT.—12. Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2), these records are hereby determined to be exempt from all provisions of the Act, except 5 U.S.C. 552a (b), (c) (1) and (2), (e)(4) (A) through (F), (e) (6), (7), (9), (10), and (11), and (i). These exemptions are necessary to ensure the proper functions of the law enforcement activity, to protect confidential sources of information, to fulfill promises of confidentiality, to prevent interference with law enforcement proceedings, to avoid the disclosure of investigative techniques, to avoid the endangering of law enforcement personnel, to avoid premature disclosure of the knowledge of criminal activity and the evidentiary bases of possible enforcement actions, and to maintain the integrity of the law enforcement process.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

§ 102.34 Specific exemptions.

(a)(1) Some systems of records under the Act which are maintained by USPTO contain, from time-to-time, material subject to the exemption appearing at 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(1), relating to national defense and foreign policy materials. The systems of records published in the *Federal Register* by USPTO which are within this exemption are: COMMERCE/PAT-TM-6, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-7, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-8, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-9.

(2) USPTO hereby asserts a claim to exemption of such materials wherever they might appear in such systems of records, or any systems of records, at present or in the future. The materials would be exempt from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f) to protect materials required by Executive order to be kept secret in the interest of the national defense and foreign policy.

(b) The specific exemptions determined to be necessary and proper with respect to systems of records maintained by USPTO, including the parts of each system to be exempted, the provisions of the Act from which they are exempted, and the justification for the exemption, are as follows:

(1)(i) Exempt under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2). The systems of records exempt (some only conditionally), the sections of the Act from which exempted, and the reasons therefor are as follows:

(A) Investigative Records—Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct—COMMERCE/DEPT—12, but only on condition that the general exemption claimed in § 102.33(b)(3) is held to be invalid;

(B) Investigative Records—Persons Within the Investigative Jurisdiction of USPTO—COMMERCE/DEPT-13;

(C) Litigation, Claims and Administrative Proceeding Records—COMMERCE/DEPT-14;

(D) Attorneys and Agents Registered to Practice Before the Office—COMMERCE/PAT-TM-1;

(E) Complaints, Investigations and Disciplinary Proceedings Relating to Registered Patent Attorneys and Agents—COMMERCE/PAT-TM-2; and

(F) Non-Registered Persons Rendering Assistance to Patent Applicants—COMMERCE/PAT-TM-5.

(ii) The foregoing are exempted from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4)(G), (H), and (I), and (f). The reasons for asserting the exemption are to prevent subjects of investigation from frustrating the investigatory process, to insure the proper functioning and integrity of law enforcement activities, to prevent disclosure of investigative techniques, to maintain the ability to obtain necessary information, to fulfill commitments made to sources to protect their identities and the confidentiality of information and to avoid endangering these sources and law enforcement personnel. Special note is taken of the

fact that the proviso clause in this exemption imports due process and procedural protections for the individual. The existence and general character of the information exempted will be made known to the individual to whom it pertains.

(2)(i) Exempt under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5). The systems of records exempt (some only conditionally), the sections of the act from which exempted, and the reasons therefor are as follows:

(A) Investigative Records—Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct—COMMERCE/DEPT-12, but only on condition that the general exemption claimed in § 102.33(b)(3) is held to be invalid;

(B) Investigative Records—Persons Within the Investigative Jurisdiction of USPTO—COMMERCE/DEPT-13; and

(C) Litigation, Claims, and Administrative Proceeding Records—COMMERCE/DEPT-14.

(ii) The foregoing are exempted from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4)(G), (H), and (I), and (f). The reasons for asserting the exemption are to maintain the ability to obtain candid and necessary information, to fulfill commitments made to sources to protect the confidentiality of information, to avoid endangering these sources and, ultimately, to facilitate proper selection or continuance of the best applicants or persons for a given position or contract. Special note is made of the limitation on the extent to which this exemption may be asserted. The existence and general character of the information exempted will be made known to the individual to whom it pertains.

(c) At the present time, USPTO claims no exemption under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(3), (4), (6) and (7).

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

Appendix to Part 102 - Systems of Records Noticed by Other Federal Agencies¹ and Applicable to USPTO Records and Applicability of this Part Thereto

Category of records	Other federal agency
Federal Personnel Records	Office of Personnel Management. ²
Federal Employee Compensation Act Program	Department of Labor. ³
Equal Employment Opportunity Appeal Complaints	Equal Employment Opportunity Commission. ⁴
Formal Complaints/ Appeals of Adverse Personnel Actions	Merit Systems Protection Board. ⁵

¹ Other than systems of records noticed by the Department of Commerce. Where the system of records applies only to USPTO, these regulations apply. Where the system of records applies generally to components of the Department of Commerce, the of that department attach at the point of any denial for access or for correction or amendment.

² The provisions of this part do not apply to these records covered by notices of systems of records published by the Office of Personnel Management for all agencies. The regulations of OPM alone apply.

³ The provisions of this part apply only initially to these records covered by notices of systems of records published by the U.S. Department of Labor for all agencies. The of that department attach at the point of any denial for access or for correction or amendment.

⁴ The provisions of this part do not apply to these records covered by notices of systems of records published by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission for all agencies. The regulations of the Commission alone apply.

⁵ The provisions of this part do not apply to these records covered by notices of systems of records published by the Merit Systems Protection Board for all agencies. The regulations of the Board alone apply.

[Added, 65 FR 52916, Aug. 31, 2000, effective Oct. 2, 2000]

SUBCHAPTER C – PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

PART 150 — REQUESTS FOR PRESIDENTIAL PROCLAMATIONS PURSUANT TO 17 U.S.C. 902(a)(2)

- Sec.
- 150.1 Definitions.
 - 150.2 Initiation of evaluation.
 - 150.3 Submission of requests.
 - 150.4 Evaluation.
 - 150.5 Duration of proclamation.
 - 150.6 Mailing Address.

§ 150.1 Definitions.

(a) *Commissioner* means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) *Foreign government* means the duly-constituted executive of a foreign nation, or an international or regional intergovernmental organization which has been empowered by its member states to request issuance of Presidential proclamations on their behalf under this part.

(c) *Interim order* means an order issued by the Secretary of Commerce under 17 U.S.C. 914.

(d) *Mask work* means a series of related images, however fixed or encoded —

(1) Having or representing the predetermined, three-dimensional pattern of metallic, insulating, or semiconductor material present or removed from the layers of a semiconductor chip product; and

(2) In which series the relation of the images to one another is that each image has the pattern of the surface of one form of the semiconductor chip product.

(e) *Presidential proclamation* means an action by the President extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of applying for registrations for mask works pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902.

(f) *Request* means a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a Presidential proclamation.

(g) *Proceeding* means a proceeding to issue an interim order extending protection to foreign nation-

als, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities under 17 U.S.C. Chapter 9.

(h) *Secretary* means the Secretary of Commerce.

[Added, 53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

§ 150.2 Initiation of evaluation.

(a) The Commissioner independently or as directed by the Secretary, may initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance, revision, suspension or revocation of a section 902 proclamation.

(b) The Commissioner shall initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance of a section 902 proclamation upon receipt of a request from a foreign government.

[Added, 53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

§ 150.3 Submission of requests.

(a) Requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation shall be submitted by foreign governments for review by the Commissioner.

(b) Requests for issuance of a proclamation shall include:

(1) A copy of the foreign law or legal rulings that provide protection for U.S. mask works which provide a basis for the request.

(2) A copy of any regulations or administrative orders implementing the protection.

(3) A copy of any laws, regulations, or administrative orders establishing or regulating the registration (if any) of mask works.

(4) Any other relevant laws, regulations, or administrative orders.

(5) All copies of laws, legal rulings, regulations, or administrative orders submitted must be in unedited, full-text form, and if possible, must be reproduced from the original document.

(6) All material submitted must be in the original language, and if not in English, must be accompanied by a certified English translation.

[Added, 53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

§ 150.4 Evaluation.

(a) Upon submission of a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation, if an interim order under section 914 has not been issued, the Commissioner may initiate a section 914 proceeding if additional information is required.

(b) If an interim order under section 914 has been issued, the information obtained during the section 914 proceeding will be used in evaluating the request for a section 902 proclamation.

(c) After the Commissioner receives the request of a foreign government for a section 902 proclamation, or after a determination is made by the Commissioner to initiate independently an evaluation pursuant to § 150.2(a) of this part, a notice will be published in the *Federal Register* to request relevant and material comments on the adequacy and effectiveness of the protection afforded U.S. mask works under the system of law described in the notice. Comments should include detailed explanations of any alleged deficiencies in the foreign law or any alleged deficiencies in its implementation. If the alleged deficiencies include problems in administration such as registration, the respondent should include as specifically as possible full detailed explanations, including dates for and the nature of any alleged problems. Comments shall be submitted to the Commissioner within sixty (60) days of the publication of the *Federal Register* notice.

(d) The Commissioner shall notify the Register of Copyrights and the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives of the initiation of an evaluation under these regulations.

(e) If the written comments submitted by any party present relevant and material reasons why a proclamation should not issue, the Commissioner will:

(1) Contact the party raising the issue for verification and any needed additional information;

(2) Contact the requesting foreign government to determine if the issues raised by the party can be resolved; and,

(i) If the issues are resolved, continue with the evaluation; or,

(ii) If the issues cannot be resolved on this basis, hold a public hearing to gather additional information.

(f) The comments, the section 902 request, information obtained from a section 914 proceeding,

if any, and information obtained in a hearing held pursuant to paragraph (e)(ii) of this section, if any, will be evaluated by the Commissioner.

(g) The Commissioner will forward the information to the Secretary, together with an evaluation and a draft recommendation.

(h) The Secretary will forward a recommendation regarding the issuance of a section 902 proclamation to the President.

[Added, 53 FR 24448, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

§ 150.5 Duration of proclamation.

(a) The recommendation for the issuance of a proclamation may include terms and conditions regarding the duration of the proclamation.

(b) Requests for the revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation may be submitted by any interested party. Requests for revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation will be considered in substantially the same manner as requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation.

[Added 53 FR 24448, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

§ 150.6 Mailing address.

Requests and all correspondence pursuant to these guidelines shall be addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 4, Washington, D.C. 20231.

[Added 53 FR 24448, June 29, 1988, effective August 1, 1988]

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

The Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP) is a guide for patent examiners and applicants. It provides detailed information on the patent process, including the requirements for patentability, the examination process, and the rights of patent holders. The MPEP is published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) and is updated regularly to reflect changes in patent law and practice.

The MPEP is organized into several sections, each covering a different aspect of the patent process. The sections include: 1. Introduction to the Patent Process, 2. Requirements for Patentability, 3. The Examination Process, 4. Rights of Patent Holders, and 5. Other Important Information. Each section contains detailed information and examples to help examiners and applicants understand the process.

Appendix T Patent Cooperation Treaty

Patent Cooperation Treaty

Done at Washington on June 19, 1970,
amended on October 2, 1979,
and modified on February 3, 1984
(as in force on January 1, 1998)

TABLE OF CONTENTS¹

Preamble

Introductory Provisions

Article 1	Establishment of a Union
Article 2	Definitions

Chapter I: International Application and International Search

Article 3	The International Application
Article 4	The Request
Article 5	The Description
Article 6	The Claims
Article 7	The Drawings
Article 8	Claiming Priority
Article 9	The Applicant
Article 10	The Receiving Office
Article 11	Filing Date and Effects of the International Application
Article 12	Transmittal of the International Application to the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority
Article 13	Availability of Copy of the International Application to the Designated Offices
Article 14	Certain Defects in the International Application
Article 15	The International Search
Article 16	The International Searching Authority
Article 17	Procedure Before the International Searching Authority
Article 18	The International Search Report
Article 19	Amendment of the Claims Before the International Bureau
Article 20	Communication to Designated Offices
Article 21	International Publication
Article 22	Copy, Translation, and Fee, to Designated Offices

Article 23	Delaying of National Procedure
Article 24	Possible Loss of Effect in Designated States
Article 25	Review by Designated Offices
Article 26	Opportunity to Correct Before Designated Offices
Article 27	National Requirements
Article 28	Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Designated Offices
Article 29	Effects of the International Publication
Article 30	Confidential Nature of the International Application

Chapter II: International Preliminary Examination

Article 31	Demand for International Preliminary Examination
Article 32	The International Preliminary Examining Authority
Article 33	The International Preliminary Examination
Article 34	Procedure Before the International Preliminary Examining Authority
Article 35	The International Preliminary Examination Report
Article 36	Transmittal, Translation, and Communication of the International Preliminary Examination Report
Article 37	Withdrawal of Demand or Election
Article 38	Confidential Nature of the International Preliminary Examination
Article 39	Copy, Translation, and Fee, to Elected Offices
Article 40	Delaying of National Examination and Other Processing
Article 41	Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, before Elected Offices
Article 42	Results of National Examination in Elected Offices

Chapter III: Common Provisions

Article 43	Seeking Certain Kinds of Protection
Article 44	Seeking Two Kinds of Protection
Article 45	Regional Patent Treaties
Article 46	Incorrect Translation of the International Application
Article 47	Time Limits

¹ This Table of Contents is added for the convenience of the reader. It does not appear in the signed text of the Treaty.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- Article 48 Delay in Meeting Certain Time Limits
Article 49 Right to Practice Before International Authorities

Chapter IV: Technical Services

- Article 50 Patent Information Service
Article 51 Technical Assistance
Article 52 Relations with Other Provisions of the Treaty

Chapter V: Administrative Positions

- Article 53 Assembly
Article 54 Executive Committee
Article 55 International Bureau
Article 56 Committee for Technical Cooperation
Article 57 Finances
Article 58 Regulations

Chapter VI: Disputes

- Article 59 Disputes

Chapter VII: Revision and Amendment

- Article 60 Revision of the Treaty
Article 61 Amendment of Certain Provisions of the Treaty

Chapter VIII: Final Provisions

- Article 62 Becoming Party to the Treaty
Article 63 Entry into Force of the Treaty
Article 64 Reservations
Article 65 Gradual Application
Article 66 Denunciation
Article 67 Signature and Languages
Article 68 Depositary Functions
Article 69 Notifications

The Contracting States,

Desiring to make a contribution to the progress of science and technology,

Desiring to perfect the legal protection of inventions,

Desiring to simplify and render more economical the obtaining of protection for inventions where protection is sought in several countries,

Desiring to facilitate and accelerate access by the public to the technical information contained in documents describing new inventions,

Desiring to foster and accelerate the economic development of developing countries through the adoption of measures designed to increase the effi-

ciency of their legal systems, whether national or regional, instituted for the protection of inventions by providing easily accessible information on the availability of technological solutions applicable to their special needs and by facilitating access to the ever expanding volume of modern technology,

Convinced that cooperation among nations will greatly facilitate the attainment of these aims,

Have concluded the present Treaty.

Introductory Provisions

Article 1

Establishment of a Union

(1) The States party to this Treaty (hereinafter called "the Contracting States") constitute a Union for cooperation in the filing, searching, and examination, of applications for the protection of inventions, and for rendering special technical services. The Union shall be known as the International Patent Cooperation Union.

(2) No provision of this Treaty shall be interpreted as diminishing the rights under the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property of any national or resident of any country party to that Convention.

Article 2

Definitions

For the purposes of this Treaty and the Regulations and unless expressly stated otherwise:

(i) "application" means an application for the protection of an invention; references to an "application" shall be construed as references to applications for patents for inventions, inventors' certificates, utility certificates, utility models, patents or certificates of addition, inventors' certificates of addition, and utility certificates of addition;

(ii) references to a "patent" shall be construed as references to patents for inventions, inventors' certificates, utility certificates, utility models, patents or certificates of addition, inventors' certificates of addition, and utility certificates of addition;

(iii) "national patent" means a patent granted by a national authority;

(iv) "regional patent" means a patent granted by a national or an intergovernmental authority having

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

the power to grant patents effective in more than one State;

(v) “regional application” means an application for a regional patent;

(vi) references to a “national application” shall be construed as references to applications for national patents and regional patents, other than applications filed under this Treaty;

(vii) “international application” means an application filed under this Treaty;

(viii) references to an “application” shall be construed as references to international applications and national applications;

(ix) references to a “patent” shall be construed as references to national patents and regional patents;

(x) references to “national law” shall be construed as references to the national law of a Contracting State or, where a regional application or a regional patent is involved, to the treaty providing for the filing of regional applications or the granting of regional patents;

(xi) “priority date,” for the purpose of computing time limits, means:

(a) where the international application contains a priority claim under Article 8, the filing date of the application whose priority is so claimed;

(b) where the international application contains several priority claims under Article 8, the filing date of the earliest application whose priority is so claimed;

(c) where the international application does not contain any priority claim under Article 8, the international filing date of such application;

(xii) “national Office” means the government authority of a Contracting State entrusted with the granting of patents; references to a “national Office” shall be construed as referring also to any intergovernmental authority which several States have entrusted with the task of granting regional patents, provided that at least one of those States is a Contracting State, and provided that the said States have authorized that authority to assume the obligations and exercise the powers which this Treaty and the Regulations provide for in respect of national Offices;

(xiii) “designated Office” means the national Office of or acting for the State designated by the applicant under Chapter I of this Treaty;

(xiv) “elected Office” means the national Office of or acting for the State elected by the applicant under Chapter II of this Treaty;

(xv) “receiving Office” means the national Office or the intergovernmental organization with which the international application has been filed;

(xvi) “Union” means the International Patent Cooperation Union;

(xvii) “Assembly” means the Assembly of the Union;

(xviii) “Organization” means the World Intellectual Property Organization;

(xix) “International Bureau” means the International Bureau of the Organization and, as long as it subsists, the United International Bureaux for the Protection of Intellectual Property (BIRPI);

(xx) “Director General” means the Director General of the Organization and, as long as BIRPI subsists, the Director of BIRPI.

Chapter I

International Application and International Search

Article 3

The International Application

(1) Applications for the protection of inventions in any of the Contracting States may be filed as international applications under this Treaty.

(2) An international application shall contain, as specified in this Treaty and the Regulations, a request, a description, one or more claims, one or more drawings (where required), and an abstract.

(3) The abstract merely serves the purpose of technical information and cannot be taken into account for any other purpose, particularly not for the purpose of interpreting the scope of the protection sought.

(4) The international application shall:

(i) be in a prescribed language;

(ii) comply with the prescribed physical requirements;

(iii) comply with the prescribed requirement of unity of invention;

(iv) be subject to the payment of the prescribed fees.

Article 4

The Request

(1) The request shall contain:

(i) a petition to the effect that the international application be processed according to this Treaty;

(ii) the designation of the Contracting State or States in which protection for the invention is desired on the basis of the international application ("designated States"); if for any designated State a regional patent is available and the applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent rather than a national patent, the request shall so indicate; if, under a treaty concerning a regional patent, the applicant cannot limit his application to certain of the States party to that treaty, designation of one of those States and the indication of the wish to obtain the regional patent shall be treated as designation of all the States party to that treaty; if, under the national law of the designated State, the designation of that State has the effect of an application for a regional patent, the designation of the said State shall be treated as an indication of the wish to obtain the regional patent;

(iii) the name of and other prescribed data concerning the applicant and the agent (if any);

(iv) the title of the invention;

(v) the name of and other prescribed data concerning the inventor where the national law of at least one of the designated States requires that these indications be furnished at the time of filing a national application. Otherwise, the said indications may be furnished either in the request or in separate notices addressed to each designated Office whose national law requires the furnishing of the said indications but allows that they be furnished at a time later than that of the filing of a national application.

(2) Every designation shall be subject to the payment of the prescribed fee within the prescribed time limit.

(3) Unless the applicant asks for any of the other kinds of protection referred to in Article 43, designation shall mean that the desired protection consists of the grant of a patent by or for the designated State. For the purposes of this paragraph, Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

(4) Failure to indicate in the request the name and other prescribed data concerning the inventor

shall have no consequence in any designated State whose national law requires the furnishing of the said indications but allows that they be furnished at a time later than that of the filing of a national application. Failure to furnish the said indications in a separate notice shall have no consequence in any designated State whose national law does not require the furnishing of the said indications.

Article 5

The Description

The description shall disclose the invention in a manner sufficiently clear and complete for the invention to be carried out by a person skilled in the art.

Article 6

The Claims

The claim or claims shall define the matter for which protection is sought. Claims shall be clear and concise. They shall be fully supported by the description.

Article 7

The Drawings

(1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (2)(ii), drawings shall be required when they are necessary for the understanding of the invention.

(2) Where, without being necessary for the understanding of the invention, the nature of the invention admits of illustration by drawings:

(i) the applicant may include such drawings in the international application when filed,

(ii) any designated Office may require that the applicant file such drawings with it within the prescribed time limit.

Article 8

Claiming Priority

(1) The international application may contain a declaration, as prescribed in the Regulations, claiming the priority of one or more earlier applications filed in or for any country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

(2)(a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (b), the conditions for, and the effect of, any priority

claim declared under paragraph (1) shall be as provided in Article 4 of the Stockholm Act of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

(b) The international application for which the priority of one or more earlier applications filed in or for a Contracting State is claimed may contain the designation of that State. Where, in the international application, the priority of one or more national applications filed in or for a designated State is claimed, or where the priority of an international application having designated only one State is claimed, the conditions for, and the effect of, the priority claim in that State shall be governed by the national law of that State.

Article 9

The Applicant

(1) Any resident or national of a Contracting State may file an international application.

(2) The Assembly may decide to allow the residents and the nationals of any country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property which is not party to this Treaty to file international applications.

(3) The concepts of residence and nationality, and the application of those concepts in cases where there are several applicants or where the applicants are not the same for all the designated States, are defined in the Regulations.

[NOTE: The PCT Assembly has not as yet allowed residents or nationals of non-PCT member countries to file PCT international applications.]

Article 10

The Receiving Office

The international application shall be filed with the prescribed receiving Office, which will check and process it as provided in this Treaty and the Regulations.

Article 11

Filing Date and Effects of the International Application

(1) The receiving Office shall accord as the international filing date the date of receipt of the inter-

national application, provided that Office has found that, at the time of receipt:

(i) the applicant does not obviously lack, for reasons of residence or nationality, the right to file an international application with the receiving Office,

(ii) the international application is in the prescribed language,

(iii) the international application contains at least the following elements:

(a) an indication that it is intended as an international application,

(b) the designation of at least one Contracting State,

(c) the name of the applicant, as prescribed,

(d) a part which on the face of it appears to be a description,

(e) a part which on the face of it appears to be a claim or claims.

(2)(a) If the receiving Office finds that the international application did not, at the time of receipt, fulfill the requirements listed in paragraph (1), it shall, as provided in the Regulations, invite the applicant to file the required correction.

(b) If the applicant complies with the invitation, as provided in the Regulations, the receiving Office shall accord as the international filing date the date of receipt of the required correction.

(3) Subject to Article 64(4), any international application fulfilling the requirement listed in items (i) to (iii) of paragraph (1) and accorded an international filing date shall have the effect of a regular national application in each designated State as of the international filing date, which date shall be considered to be the actual filing date in each designated State.

(4) Any international application fulfilling the requirements listed in items (i) to (iii) of paragraph (1) shall be equivalent to a regular national filing within the meaning of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

Article 12

Transmittal of the International Application to the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority

(1) One copy of the international application shall be kept by the receiving Office ("home copy"),

one copy ("record copy") shall be transmitted to the International Bureau, and another copy ("search copy") shall be transmitted to the competent International Searching Authority referred to in Article 16, as provided in the Regulations.

(2) The record copy shall be considered the true copy of the international application.

(3) The international application shall be considered withdrawn if the record copy has not been received by the International Bureau within the prescribed time limit.

Article 13

Availability of Copy of the International Application to the Designated Offices

(1) Any designated Office may ask the International Bureau to transmit to it a copy of the international application prior to the communication provided for in Article 20, and the International Bureau shall transmit such copy to the designated Office as soon as possible after the expiration of one year from the priority date.

(2)(a) The applicant may, at any time, transmit a copy of his international application to any designated Office.

(b) The applicant may, at any time, ask the International Bureau to transmit a copy of his international application to any designated Office, and the International Bureau shall transmit such copy to the designated Office as soon as possible.

(c) Any national Office may notify the International Bureau that it does not wish to receive copies as provided for in subparagraph (b), in which case that subparagraph shall not be applicable in respect of that Office.

Article 14

Certain Defects in the International Application

(1)(a) The receiving Office shall check whether the international application contains any of the following defects, that is to say:

- (i) it is not signed as provided in the Regulations;
- (ii) it does not contain the prescribed indications concerning the applicant;
- (iii) it does not contain a title;
- (iv) it does not contain an abstract;

(v) it does not comply to the extent provided in the Regulations with the prescribed physical requirements.

(b) If the receiving Office finds any of the said defects, it shall invite the applicant to correct the international application within the prescribed time limit, failing which that application shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare.

(2) If the international application refers to drawings which, in fact, are not included in that application, the receiving Office shall notify the applicant accordingly and he may furnish them within the prescribed time limit and, if he does, the international filing date shall be the date on which the drawings are received by the receiving Office. Otherwise, any reference to the said drawings shall be considered non-existent

(3)(a) If the receiving Office finds that, within the prescribed time limits, the fees prescribed under Article 3(4)(iv) have not been paid, or no fee prescribed under Article 4(2) has been paid in respect of any of the designated States, the international application shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare.

(b) If the receiving Office finds that the fee prescribed under Article 4(2) has been paid in respect of one or more (but less than all) designated States within the prescribed time limit, the designation of those States in respect of which it has not been paid within the prescribed time limit shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare.

(4) If, after having accorded an international filing date to the international application, the receiving Office finds, within the prescribed time limit, that any of the requirements listed in items (i) to (iii) of Article 11(1) was not complied with at that date, the said application shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare.

Article 15

The International Search

(1) Each international application shall be the subject of international search.

(2) The objective of the international search is to discover relevant prior art.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(3) International search shall be made on the basis of the claims, with due regard to the description and the drawings (if any).

(4) The International Searching Authority referred to in Article 16 shall endeavor to discover as much of the relevant prior art as its facilities permit, and shall, in any case, consult the documentation specified in the Regulations.

(5)(a) If the national law of the Contracting State so permits, the applicant who files a national application with the national Office of or acting for such State may, subject to the conditions provided for in such law, request that a search similar to an international search (international-type search) be carried out on such application.

(b) If the national law of the Contracting State so permits, the national Office of or acting for such State may subject any national application filed with it to an international-type search.

(c) The international-type search shall be carried out by the International Searching Authority referred to in Article 16 which would be competent for an international search if the national application were an international application and were filed with the Office referred to in subparagraphs (a) and (b). If the national application is in a language which the International Searching Authority considers it is not equipped to handle, the international-type search shall be carried out on a translation prepared by the applicant in a language prescribed for international applications and which the International Searching Authority has undertaken to accept for international applications. The national application and the translation, when required, shall be presented in the form prescribed for international applications.

Article 16

The International Searching Authority

(1) International search shall be carried out by an International Searching Authority, which may be either a national Office or an intergovernmental organization, such as the International Patent Institute, whose tasks include the establishing of documentary search reports on prior art with respect to inventions which are the subject of applications.

(2) If, pending the establishment of a single International Searching Authority, there are several International Searching Authorities, each receiving

Office shall, in accordance with the provisions of the applicable agreement referred to in paragraph(3)(b), specify the International Searching Authority or Authorities competent for the searching of international applications filed with such Office.

(3)(a) International Searching Authorities shall be appointed by the Assembly. Any national Office and any intergovernmental organization satisfying the requirements referred to in subparagraph (c) may be appointed as International Searching Authority.

(b) Appointment shall be conditional on the consent of the national Office or intergovernmental organization to be appointed and the conclusion of an agreement, subject to approval by the Assembly, between such Office or organization and the International Bureau. The agreement shall specify the rights and obligations of the parties, in particular, the formal undertaking by the said Office or organization to apply and observe all the common rules of international search.

(c) The Regulations prescribe the minimum requirements, particularly as to manpower and documentation, which any Office or organization must satisfy before it can be appointed and must continue to satisfy while it remains appointed.

(d) Appointment shall be for a fixed period of time and may be extended for further periods.

(e) Before the Assembly makes a decision on the appointment of any national Office or intergovernmental organization, or on the extension of its appointment, or before it allows any such appointment to lapse, the Assembly shall hear the interested Office or organization and seek the advice of the Committee for Technical Cooperation referred to in Article 56 once that Committee has been established.

Article 17

Procedure Before the International Searching Authority

(1) Procedure before the International Searching Authority shall be governed by the provisions of this Treaty, the Regulations, and the agreement which the International Bureau shall conclude, subject to this Treaty and the Regulations, with the said Authority.

(2)(a) If the International Searching Authority considers:

(i) that the international application relates to a subject matter which the International

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Searching Authority is not required, under the Regulations, to search, and in the particular case decides not to search, or

(ii) that the description, the claims, or the drawings, fail to comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that a meaningful search could not be carried out, the said Authority shall so declare and shall notify the applicant and the International Bureau that no international search report will be established.

(b) If any of the situations referred to in subparagraph (a) is found to exist in connection with certain claims only, the international search report shall so indicate in respect of such claims, whereas, for the other claims, the said report shall be established as provided in Article 18.

(3)(a) If the International Searching Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in the Regulations, it shall invite the applicant to pay additional fees. The International Searching Authority shall establish the international search report on those parts of the international application which relate to the invention first mentioned in the claims ("main invention") and, provided the required additional fees have been paid within the prescribed time limit, on those parts of the international application which relate to inventions in respect of which the said fees were paid.

(b) The national law of any designated State may provide that, where the national Office of the State finds the invitation, referred to in subparagraph (a), of the International Searching Authority justified and where the applicant has not paid all additional fees, those parts of the international application which consequently have not been searched shall, as far as effects in the State are concerned, be considered withdrawn unless a special fee is paid by the applicant to the national Office of that State.

Article 18

The International Search Report

(1) The international search report shall be established within the prescribed time limit and in the prescribed form.

(2) The international search report shall, as soon as it has been established, be transmitted by the

International Searching Authority to the applicant and the International Bureau.

(3) The international search report or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a) shall be translated as provided in the Regulations. The translations shall be prepared by or under the responsibility of the International Bureau.

Article 19

Amendment of the Claims Before the International Bureau

(1) The applicant shall, after having received the international search report, be entitled to one opportunity to amend the claims of the international application by filing amendments with the International Bureau within the prescribed time limit. He may, at the same time, file a brief statement, as provided in the Regulations, explaining the amendments and indicating any impact that such amendments might have on the description and the drawings.

(2) The amendments shall not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed.

(3) If the national law of any designated State permits amendments to go beyond the said disclosure, failure to comply with paragraph (2) shall have no consequence in that State.

Article 20

Communication to Designated Offices

(1)(a) The international application, together with the international search report (including any indication referred to in Article 17(2)(b)) or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a), shall be communicated to each designated Office, as provided in the Regulations, unless the designated Office waives such requirement in its entirety or in part.

(b) The communication shall include the translation (as prescribed) of the said report or declaration.

(2) If the claims have been amended by virtue of Article 19(1), the communication shall either contain the full text of the claims both as filed and as amended or shall contain the full text of the claims as filed and specify the amendments, and shall include the statement, if any, referred to in Article 19(1).

(3) At the request of the designated Office or the applicant, the International Searching Authority

shall send to the said Office or the applicant, respectively, copies of the documents cited in the international search report, as provided in the Regulations.

Article 21

International Publication

(1) The International Bureau shall publish international applications.

(2)(a) Subject to the exceptions provided for in subparagraph (b) and in Article 64(3), the international publication of the international application shall be effected promptly after the expiration of 18 months from the priority date of that application.

(b) The applicant may ask the International Bureau to publish his international application any time before the expiration of the time limit referred to in subparagraph (a). The International Bureau shall proceed accordingly, as provided in the Regulations.

(3) The international search report or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a) shall be published as prescribed in the Regulations.

(4) The language and form of the international publication and other details are governed by the Regulations.

(5) There shall be no international publication if the international application is withdrawn or is considered withdrawn before the technical preparations for publication have been completed.

(6) If the international application contains expressions or drawings which, in the opinion of the International Bureau, are contrary to morality or public order, or if, in its opinion, the international application contains disparaging statements as defined in the Regulations, it may omit such expressions, drawings, and statements, from its publications, indicating the place and number of words or drawings omitted, and furnishing, upon request, individual copies of the passages omitted.

Article 22

Copy, Translation, and Fee to Designated Offices

(1) The applicant shall furnish a copy of the international application (unless the communication provided for in Article 20 has already taken place) and a translation thereof (as prescribed), and pay the national fee (if any), to each designated Office not later than at the expiration of 20 months from the pri-

ority date. Where the national law of the designated State requires the indication of the name of and other prescribed data concerning the inventor but allows that these indications be furnished at a time later than that of the filing of a national application, the applicant shall, unless they were contained in the request, furnish the said indications to the national Office of or acting for that State not later than at the expiration of 20 months from the priority date.

(2) Where the International Searching Authority makes a declaration, under Article 17(2)(a), that no international search report will be established, the time limit for performing the acts referred to in paragraph (1) of this Article shall be the same as that provided for in paragraph (i).

(3) Any national law may, for performing the acts referred to in paragraphs (1) or (2), fix time limits which expire later than the time limit provided for in those paragraphs.

Article 23

Delaying of National Procedure

(1) No designated Office shall process or examine the international application prior to the expiration of the applicable time limit under Article 22.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1), any designated Office may, on the express request of the applicant, process or examine the international application at any time.

Article 24

Possible Loss of Effect in Designated States

(1) Subject, in case (ii) below, to the provisions of Article 25, the effect of the international application provided for in Article 11(3) shall cease in any designated State with the same consequences as the withdrawal of any national application in that State:

(i) if the applicant withdraws his international application or the designation of that State;

(ii) if the international application is considered withdrawn by virtue of Articles 12(3), 14(1)(b), 14(3)(a), or 14(4), or if the designation of that State is considered withdrawn by virtue of Article 14(3)(b);

(iii) if the applicant fails to perform the acts referred to in Article 22 within the applicable time limit.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1), any designated Office may maintain the effect provided for in Article 11(3) even where such effect is not required to be maintained by virtue of Article 25(2).

Article 25

Review by Designated Offices

(1)(a) Where the receiving Office has refused to accord an international filing date or has declared that the international application is considered withdrawn, or where the International Bureau has made a finding under Article 12(3), the International Bureau shall promptly send, at the request of the applicant, copies of any document in the file to any of the designated Offices named by the applicant.

(b) Where the receiving Office has declared that the designation of any given State is considered withdrawn, the International Bureau shall promptly send, at the request of the applicant, copies of any document in the file to the national Office of such State.

(c) The request under subparagraphs (a) or (b) shall be presented within the prescribed time limit.

(2)(a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (b), each designated Office shall, provided that the national fee (if any) has been paid and the appropriate translation (as prescribed) has been furnished within the prescribed time limit, decide whether the refusal, declaration, or finding, referred to in paragraph (1) was justified under the provisions of this Treaty and the Regulations, and, if it finds that the refusal or declaration was the result of an error or omission on the part of the receiving Office or that the finding was the result of an error or omission on the part of the International Bureau, it shall, as far as effects in the State of the designated Office are concerned, treat the international application as if such error or omission had not occurred.

(b) Where the record copy has reached the International Bureau after the expiration of the time limit prescribed under Article 12(3) on account of any error or omission on the part of the applicant, the provisions of subparagraph (a) shall apply only under the circumstances referred to in Article 48(2).

Article 26

Opportunity to Correct Before Designated Offices

No designated Office shall reject an international application on the grounds of noncompliance with the requirements of this Treaty and the Regulations without first giving the applicant the opportunity to correct the said application to the extent and according to the procedure provided by the national law for the same or comparable situations in respect of national applications.

Article 27

National Requirements

(1) No national law shall require compliance with requirements relating to the form or contents of the international application different from or additional to those which are provided for in this Treaty and the Regulations.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (1) neither affect the application of the provisions of Article 7(2) nor preclude any national law from requiring, once the processing of the international application has started in the designated Office, the furnishing:

(i) when the applicant is a legal entity, of the name of an officer entitled to represent such legal entity.

(ii) of documents not part of the international application but which constitute proof of allegations or statements made in that application, including the confirmation of the international application by the signature of the applicant when that application, as filed, was signed by his representative or agent.

(3) Where the applicant, for the purposes of any designated State, is not qualified according to the national law of that State to file a national application because he is not the inventor, the international application may be rejected by the designated Office.

(4) Where the national law provides, in respect of the form or contents of national applications, requirements which, from the viewpoint of applicants, are more favorable than the requirements provided for by this Treaty and the Regulations in respect of international applications, the national Office, the courts and any other competent organs of or acting for the designated State may apply the former requirements, instead of the latter requirements, to international applications, except where the applicant insists that

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

the requirements provided for by this Treaty and the Regulations be applied to his international application.

(5) Nothing in this Treaty and the Regulations is intended to be construed as prescribing anything that would limit the freedom of each Contracting State to prescribe such substantive conditions of patentability as it desires. In particular, any provision in this Treaty and the Regulations concerning the definition of prior art is exclusively for the purposes of the international procedure and, consequently, any Contracting State is free to apply, when determining the patentability of an invention claimed in an international application, the criteria of its national law in respect of prior art and other conditions of patentability not constituting requirements as to the form and contents of applications.

(6) The national law may require that the applicant furnish evidence in respect of any substantive condition of patentability prescribed by such law.

(7) Any receiving Office or, once the processing of the international application has started in the designated Office, that Office may apply the national law as far as it relates to any requirement that the applicant be represented by an agent having the right to represent applicants before the said Office and/or that the applicant have an address in the designated State for the purpose of receiving notifications.

(8) Nothing in this Treaty and the Regulations is intended to be construed as limiting the freedom of any Contracting State to apply measures deemed necessary for the preservation of its national security or to limit, for the protection of the general economic interests of that State, the right of its own residents or nationals to file international applications.

Article 28

Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Designated Offices

(1) The applicant shall be given the opportunity to amend the claims, the description, and the drawings, before each designated Office within the prescribed time limit. No designated Office shall grant a patent, or refuse the grant of a patent, before such time limit has expired except with the express consent of the applicant.

(2) The amendments shall not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed

unless the national law of the designated State permits them to go beyond the said disclosure.

(3) The amendments shall be in accordance with the national law of the designated State in all respects not provided for in this Treaty and the Regulations.

(4) Where the designated Office requires a translation of the international application, the amendments shall be in the language of the translation.

Article 29

Effects of the International Publication

(1) As far as the protection of any rights of the applicant in a designated State is concerned, the effects, in that State, of the international publication of an international application shall, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (2) to (4), be the same as those which the national law of the designated State provides for the compulsory national publication of unexamined national applications as such.

(2) If the language in which the international publication has been effected is different from the language in which publications under the national law are effected in the designated State, the said national law may provide that the effects provided for in paragraph (1) shall be applicable only from such time as:

(i) a translation into the latter language has been published as provided by the national law, or

(ii) a translation into the latter language has been made available to the public, by laying open for public inspection as provided by the national law, or

(iii) a translation into the latter language has been transmitted by the applicant to the actual or prospective unauthorized user of the invention claimed in the international application, or

(iv) both the acts described in (i) and (iii), or both the acts described in (ii) and (iii), have taken place.

(3) The national law of any designated State may provide that, where the international publication has been effected, on the request of the applicant, before the expiration of 18 months from the priority date, the effects provided for in paragraph (1) shall be applicable only from the expiration of 18 months from the priority date.

(4) The national law of any designated State may provide that the effects provided for in paragraph (1) shall be applicable only from the date on which a

copy of the international application as published under Article 21 has been received in the national Office of or acting for such State. The said Office shall publish the date of receipt in its gazette as soon as possible.

Article 30

Confidential Nature of the International Application

(1)(a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (b), the International Bureau and the International Searching Authorities shall not allow access by any person or authority to the international application before the international publication of that application, unless requested or authorized by the applicant.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (a) shall not apply to any transmittal to the competent International Searching Authority, to transmittals provided for under Article 13, and to communications provided for under Article 20.

(2)(a) No national Office shall allow access to the international application by third parties unless requested or authorized by the applicant, before the earliest of the following dates:

(i) date of the international publication of the international application,

(ii) date of receipt of the communication of the international application under Article 20,

(iii) date of receipt of a copy of the international application under Article 22.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (a) shall not prevent any national Office from informing third parties that it has been designated, or from publishing that fact. Such information or publication may, however, contain only the following data: identification of the receiving Office, name of the applicant, international filing date, international application number, and title of the invention.

(c) The provisions of subparagraph (a) shall not prevent any designated Office from allowing access to the international application for the purposes of the judicial authorities.

(3) The provisions of paragraph (2)(a) shall apply to any receiving Office except as so far as transmittals provided for under Article 12(1) are concerned.

(4) For the purposes of this Article, the term "access" covers any means by which third parties may

acquire cognizance, including individual communication and general publication, provided, however, that no national Office shall generally publish an international application or its translation before the international publication or, if international publication has not taken place by the expiration of 20 months from the priority date, before the expiration of 20 months from the said priority date.

Chapter II

International Preliminary Examination

Article 31

Demand for International Preliminary Examination

(1) On the demand of the applicant, his international application shall be the subject of an international preliminary examination as provided in the following provisions and the Regulations.

(2)(a) Any applicant who is a resident or national, as defined in the Regulations, of a Contracting State bound by Chapter II, and whose international application has been filed with the receiving Office of or acting for such State, may make a demand for international preliminary examination.

(b) The Assembly may decide to allow persons entitled to file international applications to make a demand for international preliminary examination even if they are residents or nationals of a State not party to this Treaty or not bound by Chapter II.

(3) The demand for international preliminary examination shall be made separately from the international application. The demand shall contain the prescribed particulars and shall be in the prescribed language and form.

(4)(a) The demand shall indicate the Contracting State or States in which the applicant intends to use the results of the international preliminary examination ("elected States"). Additional Contracting States may be elected later. Election may relate only to Contracting States already designated under Article 4.

(b) Applicants referred to in paragraph (2)(a) may elect any Contracting State bound by Chapter II. Applicants referred to in paragraph (2)(b) may elect only such Contracting States bound by Chapter II as

have declared that they are prepared to be elected by such applicants.

(5) The demand shall be subject to the payment of the prescribed fees within the prescribed time limit.

(6)(a) The demand shall be submitted to the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority referred to in Article 32.

(b) Any later election shall be submitted to the International Bureau.

(7) Each elected Office shall be notified of its election.

Article 32

The International Preliminary Examining Authority

(1) International preliminary examination shall be carried out by the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(2) In the case of demands referred to in Article 31(2)(a), the receiving Office, and, in the case of demands referred to in Article 31(2)(b), the Assembly, shall, in accordance with the applicable agreement between the interested International Preliminary Examining Authority or Authorities and the International Bureau, specify the International Preliminary Examining Authority or Authorities competent for the preliminary examination.

(3) The provisions of Article 16(3) shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, in respect of the International Preliminary Examining Authorities.

Article 33

The International Preliminary Examination

(1) The objective of the international preliminary examination is to formulate a preliminary and non-binding opinion on the questions whether the claimed inventions appears to be novel, to involve inventive step (to be non-obvious), and to be industrially applicable.

(2) For the purposes of the international preliminary examination, a claimed invention shall be considered novel if it is not anticipated by the prior art as defined in the Regulations.

(3) For purposes of the international preliminary examination, a claimed invention shall be considered to involve an inventive step if, having regard to the prior art as defined in the Regulations, it is not,

at the prescribed relevant date, obvious to a person skilled in the art.

(4) For the purposes of the international preliminary examination, a claimed invention shall be considered industrially applicable if, according to its nature, it can be made or used (in the technological sense) in any kind of industry. "Industry" shall be understood in its broadest sense, as in the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

(5) The criteria described above merely serve the purposes of international preliminary examination. Any Contracting State may apply additional or different criteria for the purpose of deciding whether, in that State, the claimed invention is patentable or not.

(6) The international preliminary examination shall take into consideration all the documents cited in the international search report. It may take into consideration any additional documents considered to be relevant in the particular case.

Article 34

Procedure Before the International Preliminary Examining Authority

(1) Procedure before the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall be governed by the provisions of this Treaty, the Regulations, and the agreement which the International Bureau shall conclude, subject to this Treaty and the Regulations, with the said Authority.

(2)(a) The applicant shall have a right to communicate orally and in writing with the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(b) The applicant shall have a right to amend the claims, the description, and the drawings, in the prescribed manner and within the prescribed time limit, before the international preliminary examination report is established. The amendment shall not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed.

(c) The applicant shall receive at least one written opinion from the International Preliminary Examining Authority unless such Authority considers that all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

(i) the invention satisfies the criteria set forth in Article 33(1),

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(ii) the international application complies with the requirements of this Treaty and the Regulations in so far as checked by that Authority,

(iii) no observations are intended to be made under Article 35(2), last sentence.

(d) The applicant may respond to the written opinion.

(3)(a) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in the Regulations, it may invite the applicant, at his option, to restrict the claims so as to comply with the requirement or to pay additional fees.

(b) The national law of any elected State may provide that, where the applicant chooses to restrict the claims under subparagraph (a), those parts of the international application which, as a consequence of the restriction, are not to be the subject of international preliminary examination shall, as far as effects in that State are concerned, be considered withdrawn unless a special fee is paid by the applicant to the national Office of that State.

(c) If the applicant does not comply with the invitation referred to in subparagraph (a) within the prescribed time limit, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall establish an international preliminary examination report on those parts of the international application which relate to what appears to be the main invention and shall indicate the relevant facts in the said report. The national law of any elected State may provide that, where its national Office finds the invitation of the International Preliminary Examining Authority justified, those parts of the international application which do not relate to the main invention shall, as far as effects in that State are concerned, be considered withdrawn unless a special fee is paid by the applicant to that Office.

(4)(a) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers

(i) that the international application relates to a subject matter on which the International Preliminary Examining Authority is not required, under the Regulations, to carry out an international preliminary examination, and an international preliminary examination, and in the particular case decides not to carry out such examination, or

(ii) that the description, the claims, or the drawings, are so unclear, or the claims are so inadequately supported by the description, that no meaningful opinion can be formed on the novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), or industrial applicability, of the claimed invention, the said authority shall not go into the questions referred to in Article 33(1) and shall inform the applicant of this opinion and the reasons therefor.

(b) If any of the situations referred to in subparagraph (a) is found to exist in, or in connection with, certain claims only, the provisions of that subparagraph shall apply only to the said claims.

Article 35

The International Preliminary Examination Report

(1) The international preliminary examination report shall be established within the prescribed time limit and in the prescribed form.

(2) The international preliminary examination report shall not contain any statement on the question whether the claimed invention is or seems to be patentable or unpatentable according to any national law. It shall state, subject to the provisions of paragraph (3), in relation to each claim, whether the claim appears to satisfy the criteria of novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), and industrial applicability, as defined for the purposes of the international preliminary examination in Article 33(1) to (4). The statement shall be accompanied by the citation of the documents believed to support the stated conclusion with such explanations as the circumstances of the case may require. The statement shall also be accompanied by such other observation as the Regulations provide for.

(3)(a) If, at the time of establishing the international preliminary examination report, the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that any of the situations referred to in Article 34(4)(a) exists, that report shall state this opinion and the reasons therefor. It shall not contain any statement as provided in paragraph (2).

(b) If a situation under Article 34(4)(b) is found to exist, the international preliminary examination report shall, in relation to the claims in question, contain the statement as provided in subparagraph (a),

whereas, in relation to the other claims, it shall contain the statement as provided in paragraph (2).

Article 36

Transmittal, Translation, and Communication of the International Preliminary Examination Report

(1) The international preliminary examination report, together with the prescribed annexes, shall be transmitted to the applicant and to the International Bureau.

(2)(a) The international preliminary examination report and its annexes shall be translated into the prescribed languages.

(b) Any translation of the said report shall be prepared by or under the responsibility of the International Bureau, whereas any translation of the said annexes shall be prepared by the applicant.

(3)(a) The international preliminary examination report, together with its translation (as prescribed) and its annexes (in the original language), shall be communicated by the International Bureau to each elected Office.

(b) The prescribed translation of the annexes shall be transmitted within the prescribed time limit by applicant to the elected Office.

(4) The provisions of Article 20(3) shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, to copies of any document which is cited in the international preliminary examination report and which was not cited in the international search report.

Article 37

Withdrawal of Demand or Election

(1) The applicant may withdraw any or all elections.

(2) If the election of all elected States is withdrawn, the demand shall be considered withdrawn.

(3)(a) Any withdrawal shall be notified to the International Bureau.

(b) The elected Office concerned and the International Preliminary Examining Authority concerned shall be notified accordingly by the International Bureau.

(4)(a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (b), withdrawal of the demand or of the election of a Contracting State shall, unless the national law of that State provides otherwise, be considered to be with-

drawal of the international application as far as that State is concerned.

(b) Withdrawal of the demand or of the election shall not be considered to be withdrawal of the international application if such withdrawal is effected prior to the expiration of the applicable time limit under Article 22; however, any Contracting State may provide in its national law that the aforesaid shall apply only if its national Office has received, within the said time limit, a copy of the international application, together with a translation (as prescribed), and the national fee.

Article 38

Confidential Nature of the International Preliminary Examination

(1) Neither the International Bureau nor the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, unless requested or authorized by the applicant, allow access within the meaning, and with the proviso, of Article 30(4) to the file of the international preliminary examination by any person or authority at any time, except by the elected Offices once the international preliminary examination report has been established.

(2) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (1) and Articles 36(1) and (3) and 37(3)(b), neither the International Bureau nor the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, unless requested or authorized by the applicant, give information on the issuance or non-issuance of an international preliminary examination report and on the withdrawal or non-withdrawal of the demand or of any election.

Article 39

Copy, Translation, and Fee, to Elected Offices

(1)(a) If the election of any Contracting State has been effected prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date, the provisions of Article 22 shall not apply to such State and the applicant shall furnish a copy of the international application (unless the communication under Article 20 has already taken place) and a translation thereof (as prescribed), and pay the national fee (if any), to each elected Office not later than at the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(b) Any national law may, for performing the acts referred to in subparagraph (a), fix time limits which expire later than the time limit provided for in that subparagraph.

(2) The effect provided for in Article 11(3) shall cease in the elected State with the same consequences as the withdrawal of any national application in that State if the applicant fails to perform the acts referred to in paragraph (1)(a) within the time limit applicable under paragraph (1)(a) or (b).

(3) Any elected Office may maintain the effect provided for in Article 11(3) even where the applicant does not comply with the requirements provided for in paragraph (1)(a) or (b).

Article 40

Delaying of National Examination and Other Processing

(1) If the election of any Contracting State has been effected prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date, the provisions of Article 23 shall not apply to such State and the national Office of or acting for that State shall not proceed, subject to the provisions of paragraph (2), to the examination and other processing of the international application prior to the expiration of the applicable time limit under Article 39.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1), any elected Office may, on the express request of the applicant, proceed to the examination and other processing of the international application at any time.

Article 41

Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, before Elected Offices

(1) The applicant shall be given the opportunity to amend the claims, the description, and the drawings, before each elected Office within the prescribed time limit. No elected Office shall grant a patent, or refuse the grant of a patent, before such time limit has expired, except with the express consent of the applicant.

(2) The amendments shall not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed, unless the national law of the elected State permits them to go beyond the said disclosure.

(3) The amendments shall be in accordance with the national law of the elected State in all respects not provided for in this Treaty and the Regulations.

(4) Where an elected Office requires a translation of the international application, the amendments shall be in the language of the translation.

Article 42

Results of National Examination in Elected Offices

No elected Office receiving the international preliminary examination report may require that the applicant furnish copies, or information on the contents, of any papers connected with the examination relating to the same international application in any other elected Office.

Chapter III

Common Provisions

Article 43

Seeking Certain Kinds of Protection

In respect of any designated or elected State whose law provides for the grant of inventors' certificates, utility certificates, utility models, patents or certificates of addition, inventors' certificates of addition, or utility certificates of addition, the applicant may indicate, as prescribed in the Regulations, that his international application is for the grant, as far as that State is concerned, of an inventor's certificate, a utility certificate, or a utility model, rather than a patent, or that it is for the grant of a patent or certificate of addition, an inventor's certificate of addition, or a utility certificate of addition, and the ensuing effect shall be governed by the applicant's choice. For the purposes of this Article and any Rule thereunder, Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

Article 44

Seeking Two Kinds of Protection

In respect of any designated or elected State whose law permits an application, while being for the grant of a patent or one of the other kinds of protection referred to in Article 43, to be also for the grant of another of the said kinds of protection, the applicant

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

may indicate, as prescribed in the Regulations, the two kinds of protection he is seeking, and the ensuing effect shall be governed by the applicant's indications. For the purposes of this Article, Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

Article 45

Regional Patent Treaties

(1) Any treaty providing for the grant of regional patents ("regional patent treaty"), and giving to all persons who, according to Article 9, are entitled to file international applications the right to file applications for such patents, may provide that international applications designating or electing a State party to both the regional patent treaty and the present Treaty may be filed as applications for such patents.

(2) The national law of the said designated or elected State may provide that any designation or election of such State in the international application shall have the effect of an indication of the wish to obtain a regional patent under the regional patent treaty.

Article 46

Incorrect Translation of the International Application

If, because of an incorrect translation of the international application, the scope of any patent granted on that application exceeds the scope of the international application in its original language, the competent authorities of the Contracting State concerned may accordingly and retroactively limit the scope of the patent, and declare it null and void to the extent that its scope has exceeded the scope of the international application in its original language.

Article 47

Time Limits

(1) The details for computing time limits referred to in this Treaty are governed by the Regulations.

(2)(a) All time limits fixed in Chapters I and II of this Treaty may, outside any revision under Article 60, be modified by a decision of the Contracting States.

(b) Such decisions shall be made in the Assembly or through voting by correspondence and must be unanimous.

(c) The details of the procedure are governed by the Regulations.

Article 48

Delay in Meeting Certain Time Limits

(1) Where any time limit fixed in this Treaty or the Regulations is not met because of interruption in the mail service or unavoidable loss or delay in the mail, the time limit shall be deemed to be met in the cases and subject to the proof and other conditions prescribed in the Regulations.

(2)(a) Any Contracting State shall, as far as that State is concerned, excuse, for reasons admitted under its national law, any delay in meeting any time limit.

(b) Any Contracting State may, as far as that State is concerned, excuse, for reasons other than those referred to in subparagraph (a), any delay in meeting any time limit.

Article 49

Right to Practice Before International Authorities

Any attorney, patent agent, or other person, having the right to practice before the national Office with which the international application was filed, shall be entitled to practice before the International Bureau and the competent International Searching Authority and competent International Preliminary Examining Authority in respect of that application.

Chapter IV

Technical Services

Article 50

Patent Information Service

(1) The International Bureau may furnish services by providing technical and any other pertinent information available to it on the basis of published documents, primarily patents and published applications (referred to in this Article as "the information services").

(2) The International Bureau may provide these information services either directly or through one or

more International Searching Authorities or other national or international specialized institutions, with which the International Bureau may reach agreement.

(3) The information services shall be operated in a way particularly facilitating the acquisition by Contracting States which are developing countries of technical knowledge and technology, including available published know-how.

(4) The information services shall be available to Governments of Contracting States and their nationals and residents. The Assembly may decide to make these services available also to others.

(5)(a) Any service to Governments of Contracting States shall be furnished at cost, provided that, when the Government is that of a Contracting State which is a developing country, the service shall be furnished below cost if the difference can be covered from profit made on services furnished to others than Governments of Contracting States or from the sources referred to in Article 51(4).

(b) The cost referred to in subparagraph (a) is to be understood as cost over and above costs normally incident to the performance of the services of a national Office or the obligations of an International Searching Authority.

(6) The details concerning the implementation of the provisions of this Article shall be governed by decisions of the Assembly and, within the limits to be fixed by the Assembly, such working groups as the Assembly may set up for that purpose.

(7) The Assembly shall, when it considers it necessary, recommend methods of providing financing supplementary to those referred to in paragraph (5).

Article 51

Technical Assistance

(1) The Assembly shall establish a Committee for Technical Assistance (referred to in this Article as "the Committee").

(2)(a) The members of the Committee shall be elected among the Contracting States, with due regard to the representation of developing countries.

(b) The Director General shall, on his own initiative or at the request of the Committee, invite representatives of intergovernmental organizations

concerned with technical assistance to developing countries to participate in the work of the Committee.

(3)(a) The task of the Committee shall be to organize and supervise technical assistance for Contracting States which are developing countries in developing their patent systems individually or on a regional basis.

(b) The technical assistance shall comprise, among other things, the training of specialists, the loaning of experts, and the supply of equipment both for demonstration and for operational purposes.

(4) The International Bureau shall seek to enter into agreements, on the one hand, with international financing organizations and intergovernmental organizations, particularly the United Nations, the agencies of the United Nations, and the Specialized Agencies connected with the United Nations concerned with technical assistance, and, on the other hand, with the Governments of the States receiving the technical assistance, for the financing of projects pursuant to this Article.

(5) The details concerning the implementation of the provisions of this Article shall be governed by decisions of the Assembly and, within the limits to be fixed by the Assembly, such working groups as the Assembly may set up for that purpose.

Article 52

Relations with Other Provisions of the Treaty

Nothing in this Chapter shall affect the financial provisions contained in any other Chapter of this Treaty. Such provisions are not applicable to the present Chapter or to its implementation.

Chapter V

Administrative Provisions

Article 53

Assembly

(1)(a) The Assembly shall, subject to Article 57(8), consist of the Contracting States.

(b) The Government of each Contracting State shall be represented by one delegate, who may be assisted by alternate delegates, advisors, and experts.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(2)(a) The Assembly shall:

(i) deal with matters concerning the maintenance and development of the Union and the implementation of this Treaty;

(ii) perform such tasks as are specifically assigned to it under other provisions of this Treaty;

(iii) give directions to the International Bureau concerning the preparation for revision conferences;

(iv) review and approve the reports and activities of the Director General concerning the Union, and give him all necessary instructions concerning matters within the competence of the Union;

(v) review and approve the reports and activities of the Executive Committee established under paragraph (9), and give instructions to such Committee;

(vi) determine the program and adopt the triennial² budget of the Union, and approve its final accounts;

(vii) adopt the financial regulations of the Union;

(viii) establish such committees and working groups as it deems appropriate to achieve the objectives of the Union;

(ix) determine which States other than the Contracting States and, subject to the provisions of paragraph (8), which intergovernmental and international nongovernmental organizations shall be admitted to its meetings as observers;

(x) take any other appropriate action designed to further the objectives of the Union and perform such other functions as are appropriate under the Treaty.

(b) With respect to matters which are of interest also to other Unions administered by the Organization, the Assembly shall make its decisions after having heard the advise of the Coordination Committee of the Organization.

(3) A delegate may represent, and vote in the name of, one State only.

(4) Each Contracting State shall have one vote.

(5)(a) One-half of the Contracting States shall constitute a quorum.

(b) In the absence of a quorum, the Assembly may make decisions but, with the exception of decisions concerning its own procedure, all such decisions shall take effect only if the quorum and the required majority are attained through voting by correspondence as provided in the Regulations.

(6)(a) Subject to the provisions of Articles 47(2)(b), 58(2)(b), 58(3) and 61(2)(b), the decisions of the Assembly shall require two-thirds of the votes cast.

(b) Abstentions shall not be considered as votes.

(7) In connection with matters of exclusive interest to States bound by Chapter II, any reference to Contracting States in paragraphs (4), (5), and (6), shall be considered as applying only to States bound by Chapter II.

(8) Any intergovernmental organization appointed as International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority shall be admitted as observer to the Assembly.

(9) When the number of Contracting States exceeds forty, the Assembly shall establish an Executive Committee. Any reference to the Executive Committee in this Treaty and the Regulations shall be considered as references to such Committee once it has been established.

(10) Until the Executive Committee has been established, the Assembly shall approve, within the limits of the program and triennial³ budget, the annual programs and budgets prepared by the Director General.

(11)(a) The Assembly shall meet in every second calendar year in ordinary session upon convocation by the Director General and, in the absence of exceptional circumstances, during the same period and at the same place as the General Assembly of the Organization.

(b) The Assembly shall meet in extraordinary session upon convocation by the Director General, at the request of the Executive Committee, or at the request of one-fourth of the Contracting States.

³ *Editor's Note:* Since 1980, the budget of the Union has been biennial.

² *Editor's Note:* Since 1980, the budget of the Union has been biennial.

(12) The Assembly shall adopt its own rules of procedure.

Article 54

Executive Committee

(1) When the Assembly has established an Executive Committee, that Committee shall be subject to the provisions set forth hereinafter.

(2)(a) The Executive Committee shall, subject to Article 57(8), consist of States elected by the Assembly from among States members of the Assembly.

(b) The Government of each State member of the Executive Committee shall be represented by one delegate, who may be assisted by alternate delegates, advisors, and experts.

(3) The number of States members of the Executive Committee shall correspond to one-fourth of the number of States members of the Assembly. In establishing the number of seats to be filled, remainders after division by four shall be disregarded.

(4) In electing the members of the Executive Committee, the Assembly shall have due regard to an equitable geographical distribution.

(5)(a) Each member of the Executive Committee shall serve from the close of the session of the Assembly which elected it to the close of the next ordinary session of the Assembly.

(b) Members of the Executive Committee may be re-elected but only up to a maximum of two-thirds of such members.

(c) The Assembly shall establish the details of the rules governing the election and possible re-election of the members of the Executive Committee.

(6)(a) The Executive Committee shall:

(i) prepare the draft agenda of the Assembly;

(ii) submit proposals to the Assembly in respect of the draft program and biennial budget of the Union prepared by the Director General;

(iii) *[deleted]*

(iv) submit, with appropriate comments, to the Assembly the periodical reports of the Director General and the yearly audit reports on the accounts;

(v) take all necessary measures to ensure the execution of the program of the Union by the Director General, in accordance with the decisions of the Assembly and having regard to circumstances

arising between two ordinary sessions of the Assembly:

(vi) perform such other functions as are allocated to it under this Treaty.

(b) With respect to matters which are of interest also to other Unions administered by the Organization, the Executive Committee shall make its decisions after having heard the advice of the Coordinating Committee of the Organization.

(7)(a) The Executive Committee shall meet once a year in ordinary session upon convocation by the Director General, preferably during the same period and at the same place as the Coordination Committee of the Organization.

(b) The Executive Committee shall meet in extraordinary session upon convocation by the Director General, either on his own initiative or at the request of its Chairman or one-fourth of its members.

(8)(a) Each State member of the Executive Committee shall have one vote.

(b) One-half of the members of the Executive Committee shall constitute a quorum.

(c) Decisions shall be made by a simple majority of the votes cast.

(d) Abstentions shall not be considered as votes.

(e) A delegate may represent, and vote in the name of, one State only.

(9) Contracting States not members of the Executive Committee shall be admitted to its meetings as observers, as well as any intergovernmental organization appointed as International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority.

(10) The Executive Committee shall adopt its own rules of procedure.

Article 55

International Bureau

(1) Administrative tasks concerning the Union shall be performed by the International Bureau.

(2) The International Bureau shall provide the secretariat of the various organs of the Union.

(3) The Director General shall be the chief executive of the Union and shall represent the Union.

(4) The International Bureau shall publish a Gazette and other publications provided for by the Regulations or required by the Assembly.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(5) The Regulations shall specify the various services that national Offices shall perform in order to assist the International Bureau and the International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities in carrying out their tasks under the Treaty.

(6) The Director General and any staff member designated by him shall participate, without the right to vote, in all meetings of the Assembly, the Executive Committee and any other committee or working group established under this Treaty or the Regulations. The Director General, or a staff member designated by him, shall be *ex officio* secretary of these bodies.

(7)(a) The International Bureau shall, in accordance with the directions of the Assembly and in cooperation with the Executive Committee, make the preparations for the revision conferences.

(b) The International Bureau may consult with intergovernmental and international non-governmental organizations concerning preparations for revision conferences.

(c) The Director General and persons designated by him shall take part, without the right to vote, in the discussions at revision conferences.

(8) The International Bureau shall carry out any other tasks assigned to it.

Article 56

Committee for Technical Cooperation

(1) The Assembly shall establish a Committee for Technical Cooperation (referred to in this Article as "the Committee").

(2)(a) The Assembly shall determine the composition of the Committee and appoint its members, with due regard to an equitable representation of developing countries.

(b) The International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities shall be *ex officio* members of the Committee. In the case where such an Authority is the national Office of a Contracting State, that State shall not be additionally represented on the Committee.

(c) If the number of Contracting States so allows, the total number of members of the Committee shall be more than double the number of *ex officio* members.

(d) The Director General shall, on his own initiative or at the request of the Committee, invite representatives of interested organizations to participate in discussions of interest to them.

(3) The aim of the Committee shall be to contribute, by advice and recommendations:

(i) to the constant improvement of the services provided for under the Treaty,

(ii) to the securing, so long as there are several International Searching Authorities and several International Preliminary Examining Authorities, of the maximum degree of uniformity in their documentation and working methods and the maximum degree of uniformly high quality in their reports, and

(iii) on the initiative of the Assembly or the Executive Committee, to the solution of the technical problems specifically involved in the establishment of a single International Searching Authority.

(4) Any Contracting State and any interested international organization may approach the Committee in writing on questions which fall within the competence of the Committee.

(5) The Committee may address its advice and recommendations to the Director General or, through him, to the Assembly, the Executive Committee, all or some of the International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities, and all or some of the receiving Offices.

(6)(a) In any case, the Director General shall transmit to the Executive Committee the texts of all the advice and recommendations of the Committee. He may comment on such texts.

(b) The Executive Committee may express its views on any advice, recommendation, or other activity of the Committee, and may invite the Committee to study and report on questions falling within its competence. The Executive Committee may submit to the Assembly, with appropriate comments, the advice, recommendations and report of the Committee.

(7) Until the Executive Committee has been established, references in paragraph (6) to the Executive Committee shall be construed as references to the Assembly.

(8) The details of the procedure of the Committee shall be governed by the decisions of the Assembly.

Article 57

Finances

(1)(a) The Union shall have a budget.

(b) The budget of the Union shall include the income and expenses proper to the Union and its contribution to the budget of expenses common to the Unions administered by the Organization.

(c) Expenses not attributable exclusively to the Union but also to one or more other Unions administered by the Organization shall be considered as expenses common to the Unions. The share of the Union in such common expenses shall be in proportion to the interest the Union has in them.

(2) The budget of the Union shall be established with due regard to the requirements of coordination with the budgets of the other Unions administered by the Organization.

(3) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (5), the budget of the Union shall be financed from the following sources:

(i) fees and charges due for services rendered by the International Bureau in relation to the Union;

(ii) sale of, or royalties on, the publications of the International Bureau concerning the Union;

(iii) gifts, bequests, and subventions;

(iv) rents, interests, and other miscellaneous income.

(4) The amounts of fees and charges due to the International Bureau and the prices of its publications shall be fixed that they should, under normal circumstances, be sufficient to cover all the expenses of the International Bureau connected with the administration of this Treaty.

(5)(a) Should any financial year close with a deficit, the Contracting States shall, subject to the provisions of subparagraphs (b) and (c), pay contributions to cover such deficit.

(b) The amount of the contribution of each Contracting State shall be decided by the Assembly with due regard to the number of international applications which has emanated from each of them in the relevant year.

(c) If other means of provisionally covering any deficit or any part thereof are secured, the Assembly may decide that such deficit be carried forward

and that the Contracting States should not be asked to pay contributions.

(d) If the financial situation of the Union so permits, the Assembly may decide that any contributions paid under subparagraph (a) be reimbursed to the Contracting States which have paid them.

(e) A Contracting State which has not paid, within two years of the due date as established by the Assembly, its contribution under subparagraph (b) may not exercise its right to vote in any of the organs of the Union. However, any organ of the Union may allow such a State to continue to exercise its right to vote in that organ as long as it is satisfied that the delay in payment is due to exceptional and unavoidable circumstances.

(6) If the budget is not adopted before the beginning of a new financial period, it shall be at the same level as the budget of the previous year, as provided in the financial regulations.

(7)(a) The Union shall have a working capital fund which shall be constituted by a single payment made by each Contracting State. If the fund becomes insufficient, the Assembly shall arrange to increase it. If part of the fund is no longer needed, it shall be reimbursed.

(b) The amount of the initial payment of each Contracting State to said fund or its participation in the increase thereof shall be decided by the Assembly on the basis of principles similar to those provided for under paragraph (5)(b).

(c) The terms of payment shall be fixed by the Assembly on the proposal of the Director General and after it has heard the advice of the Coordinating Committee of the Organization.

(d) Any reimbursement shall be proportionate to the amounts paid by each Contracting State, taking into account the dates at which they were paid.

(8)(a) In the headquarters agreement concluded with the State on the territory of which the Organization has its headquarters, it shall be provided that, whenever the working capital fund is insufficient, such State shall grant advances. The amount of these advances and the conditions on which they are granted shall be the subject of separate agreements, in each case, between such State and the Organization. As long as it remains under the obligation to grant advances, such State shall have an *ex officio* seat in the Assembly and on the Executive Committee.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(b) The State referred to in subparagraph (a) and the Organization shall each have the right to denounce the obligation to grant advances, by written notification. Denunciation shall take effect three years after the end of the year in which it has been notified.

(9) The auditing of the accounts shall be effected by one or more of the Contracting States or by external auditors, as provided in the financial regulations. They shall be designated, with their agreement, by the Assembly.

Article 58

Regulations

(1) The Regulations annexed to this Treaty provide Rules:

(i) concerning matters in respect of which this Treaty expressly refers to the Regulations or expressly provides that they are or shall be prescribed.

(ii) concerning any administrative requirements, matters, or procedures,

(iii) concerning any details useful in the implementation of the provisions of this Treaty.

(2)(a) The Assembly may amend the Regulations.

(b) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (3), amendments shall require three-fourths of the votes cast.

(3)(a) The Regulations specify the Rules which may be amended

(i) only by unanimous consent, or

(ii) only if none of the Contracting States whose national Office acts as an International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority dissents, and, where such Authority is an intergovernmental organization, if the Contracting State member of the organization authorized for that purpose by the other member States within the competent body of such organization does not dissent.

(b) Exclusion, for the future, of any such Rules from the applicable requirement shall require the fulfillment of the conditions referred to in subparagraph (a)(i) or (a)(ii), respectively.

(c) Inclusion, for the future, of any Rule in one or the other of the requirements referred to in subparagraph (a) shall require unanimous consent.

(4) The Regulations provide for the establishment, under the control of the Assembly, of Administrative Instructions by the Director General.

(5) In the case of conflict between the provisions of the Treaty and those of the Regulations, the provisions of the Treaty shall prevail.

Chapter VI

Disputes

Article 59

Disputes

Subject to Article 64(5), any dispute between two or more Contracting States concerning the interpretation or application of this Treaty or the Regulations, not settled by negotiation, may, by any one of the States concerned, be brought before the International Court of Justice by application in conformity with the Statute of the Court, unless the States concerned agree on some other method of settlement. The Contracting State bringing the dispute before the Court shall inform the International Bureau; the International Bureau shall bring the matter to the attention of the other Contracting States.

Chapter VII

Revision and Amendments

Article 60

Revision of the Treaty

(1) This Treaty may be revised from time to time by a special conference of the Contracting States.

(2) The convocation of any revision conference shall be decided by the Assembly.

(3) Any intergovernmental organization appointed as International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority shall be admitted as observer to any revision conference.

(4) Articles 53(5), (9) and (11), 54, 55(4) to (8), 56, and 57, may be amended either by a revision conference or according to the provisions of Article 61.

Article 61

Amendment of Certain Provisions of the Treaty

(1)(a) Proposals for the amendment of Articles 53(5), (9) and (11), 54, 55(4) to (8), 56, and 57, may be initiated by any State member of the Assembly, by the Executive Committee, or by the Director General.

(b) Such proposals shall be communicated by the Director General to the Contracting States at least six months in advance of their consideration by the Assembly.

(2)(a) Amendments to the Articles referred to in paragraph (1) shall be adopted by the Assembly.

(b) Adoption shall require three-fourths of the votes cast.

(3)(a) Any amendment to the Articles referred to in paragraph (1) shall enter into force one month after written notifications of acceptance, effected in accordance with their respective constitutional processes, have been received by the Director General from three-fourths of the States of the Assembly at the time it adopted the amendment.

(b) Any amendment to the said Articles thus accepted shall bind all the States which are members of the Assembly at the time the amendment enters into force, provided that any amendment increasing the financial obligations of the Contracting States shall bind only those States which have notified their acceptance of such amendment.

(c) Any amendment accepted in accordance with the provisions of subparagraph (a) shall bind all States which become members of the Assembly after the date on which the amendment entered into force in accordance with the provisions of subparagraph (a).

Chapter VIII

Final Provisions

Article 62

Becoming Party to the Treaty

(1) Any State member of the International Union for the Protection of Industrial Property may become party to this Treaty by:

- (i) signature followed by the deposit of an instrument of ratification, or
- (ii) deposit of an instrument of accession.

(2) Instruments of ratification or accession shall be deposited with the Director General.

(3) The provisions of Article 24 of the Stockholm Act of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property shall apply to this Treaty.

(4) Paragraph (3) shall in no way be understood as implying the recognition or tacit acceptance by a

Contracting State of the factual situation concerning a territory to which this Treaty is made applicable by another Contracting State by virtue of the said paragraph.

Article 63

Entry into Force of the Treaty

(1)(a) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (3), this Treaty shall enter into force three months after eight States have deposited their instruments of ratification or accession, provided that at least four of those States each fulfill any of the following conditions:

(i) the number of applications filed in the State has exceeded 40,000 according to the most recent annual statistics published by the International Bureau.

(ii) the nationals or residents of the State have filed at least 1,000 applications in one foreign country according to the most recent annual statistics published by the International Bureau.

(iii) the national Office of the State has received at least 10,000 applications from nationals or residents of foreign countries according to the most recent annual statistics published by the International Bureau.

(b) For the purposes of this paragraph, the term "applications" does not include applications for utility models.

(2) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (3), any State which does not become party to this Treaty upon entry into force under paragraph (1) shall be bound by this Treaty three months after the date on which such State has deposited its instrument of ratification or accession.

(3) The provisions of Chapter II and the corresponding provisions of the Regulations annexed to this Treaty shall become applicable, however, only on the date on which three States each of which fulfill at least one of the three requirements specified in paragraph (1) have become party to this Treaty without declaring, as provided in Article 64(1), that they do not intend to be bound by the provisions of Chapter II. That date shall not, however, be prior to that of the initial entry into force under paragraph (1).

Article 64

Reservations

(1)(a) Any State may declare that it shall not be bound by the provisions of Chapter II.

(b) States making a declaration under subparagraph (a) shall not be bound by the provisions of Chapter II and the corresponding provisions of the Regulations.

(2)(a) Any State not having made a declaration under paragraph(1)(a) may declare that:

(i) it shall not be bound by the provisions of Article 39(1) with respect to the furnishing of a copy of the international application and a translation thereof (as prescribed),

(ii) the obligation to delay national processing, as provided for under Article 40, shall not prevent publication, by or through its national Office, of the international application or a translation thereof, it being understood, however, that it is not exempted from the limitations provided for in Articles 30 and 38.

(b) States making such a declaration shall be bound accordingly.

(3)(a) Any State may declare that, as far as it is concerned, international publication of international applications is not required.

(b) Where, at the expiration of 18 months from the priority date, the international application contains the designation only of such States as have made declarations under subparagraph (a), the international application shall not be published by virtue of Article 21(2).

(c) Where the provisions of subparagraph (b) apply, the international application shall nevertheless be published by the International Bureau:

(i) at the request of the applicant, as provided in the Regulations,

(ii) when a national application or a patent based on the international application is published by or on behalf of the national Office of any designated State having made a declaration under subparagraph (a), promptly after such publication but not before the expiration of 18 months from the priority date.

(4)(a) Any State whose national law provides for prior art effect of its patents as from a date before publication, but does not equate for prior art purposes the priority date claimed under the Paris Convention

for the Protection of Industrial Property to the actual filing date in that State, may declare that the filing outside that State of an international application designating that State is not equated to an actual filing in that State for prior art purposes.

(b) Any State making a declaration under subparagraph (a) shall to that extent not be bound by the provisions of Article 11(3).

(c) Any State making a declaration under subparagraph (a) shall, at the same time, state in writing the date from which, and the conditions under which, the prior art effect of any international application designating that State becomes effective in that State. This statement may be modified at any time by notification addressed to the Director General.

(5) Each State may declare that it does not consider itself bound by Article 59. With regard to any dispute between any Contracting State having made such a declaration and any other Contracting State, the provisions of Article 59 shall not apply.

(6)(a) Any declaration made under this Article shall be made in writing. It may be made at the time of signing this Treaty, at the time of depositing the instrument of ratification or accession, or, except in the case referred to in paragraph (5), at any later time by notification addressed to the Director General. In the case of the said notification, the declaration shall take effect six months after the day on which the Director General has received the notification, and shall not affect international applications filed prior to the expiration of the said six-month period.

(b) Any declaration made under this Article may be withdrawn at any time by notification addressed to the Director General. Such withdrawal shall take effect three months after the day on which the Director General has received the notification and, in the case of the withdrawal of a declaration made under paragraph (3), shall not affect international applications filed prior to the expiration of the said three-month period.

(7) No reservations to this Treaty other than the reservations under paragraphs (1) to (5) are permitted.

Article 65

Gradual Application

(1) If the agreement with any International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority provides, transitionally, for limits on the number or kinds

of international applications that such Authority undertakes to process, the Assembly shall adopt the measures necessary for the gradual application of this Treaty and the Regulations in respect of given categories of international applications. This provision shall also apply to requests for an international-type search under Article 15(5).

(2) The Assembly shall fix the dates from which, subject to the provision of paragraph (1), international applications may be filed and demands for international preliminary examination may be submitted. Such dates shall not be later than six months after this Treaty has entered into force according to the provisions of Article 63(1), or after Chapter II has become applicable under Article 63(3), respectively.

Article 66

Denunciation

(1) Any Contracting State may denounce this Treaty by notification addressed to the Director General.

(2) Denunciation shall take effect six months after receipt of said notification by the Director General. It shall not affect the effects of the international application in the denouncing State if the international application was filed, and, where the denouncing State has been elected, the election was made, prior to the expiration of the said six-month period.

Article 67

Signature and Languages

(1)(a) This Treaty shall be signed in a single original in the English and French languages, both texts being equally authentic.

(b) Official texts shall be established by the Director General after consultation with the interested Governments, in the German, Japanese, Portuguese, Russian and Spanish languages, and such other languages as the Assembly may designate.

(2) This Treaty shall remain open for signature at Washington until December 31, 1970.

Article 68

Depositary Functions

(1) The original of this Treaty, when no longer open for signature, shall be deposited with the Director General.

(2) The Director General shall transmit two copies, certified by him, of this Treaty and the Regulations annexed hereto to the Government of all States party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property and, on request, to the Government of any other State.

(3) The Director General shall register this Treaty with the Secretariat of the United Nations.

(4) The Director General shall transmit two copies, certified by him, of any amendment to this Treaty and the Regulations to the Government of all Contracting States and, on request, to the Government of any other State.

Article 69

Notifications

The Director General shall notify the government of all States party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property of:

- (i) signatures under Article 62,
- (ii) deposits of instruments of ratification or accession under Article 62,
- (iii) the date of entry into force of this Treaty and the date from which Chapter II is applicable in accordance with Article 63(3),
- (iv) any declarations made under Article 64(1) to (5),
- (v) withdrawals of any declarations made under Article 64(6)(b),
- (vi) denunciations received under Article 66, and
- (vii) any declarations made under Article 31(4).



PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

**Regulations Under the Patent
Cooperation Treaty**

(as in force from March 1, 2001)⁴

Adopted on June 19, 1970, and amended on April 14, 1978, October 3, 1978, May 1, 1979, June 16, 1980, September 26, 1980, July 3, 1981, September 10, 1982, October 4, 1983, February 3, 1984, September 28, 1984, October 1, 1985, July 12, 1991, October 2, 1991, September 29, 1992, September 29, 1993, October 3, 1995, October 1, 1997, September 15, 1998, September 29, 1999 and March 17, 2000.

TABLE OF CONTENTS⁵

Part A: Introductory Rules

Rule 1	Abbreviated Expressions
1.1	Meaning of Abbreviated Expressions
Rule 2	Interpretation of Certain Words
2.1	"Applicant"
2.2	"Agent"
2.2 ^{bis}	"Common Representative"
2.3	"Signature"

Part B: Rules Concerning Chapter I of the Treaty

Rule 3	The Request (Form)
3.1	Form of Request
3.2	Availability of Forms
3.3	Check List
3.4	Particulars

Rule 4	The Request (Contents)
4.1	Mandatory and Optional Contents; Signature
4.2	The Petition
4.3	Title of the Invention
4.4	Names and Addresses
4.5	The Applicant
4.6	The Inventor
4.7	The Agent
4.8	Common Representative
4.9	Designation of States
4.10	Priority Claim
4.11	Reference to Earlier Search
4.12	Choice of Certain Kinds of Protection
4.13	Identification of Parent Application or Parent Grant
4.14	Continuation or Continuation-in-Part
4.14 ^{bis}	Choice of International Searching Authority
4.15	Signature
4.16	Transliteration or Translation of Certain Words
4.17	Declarations Relating to National Requirements Referred to in Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(i) to (v)
4.18	Additional Matter

Rule 5	The Description
5.1	Manner of the Description
5.2	Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Disclosure

Rule 6	The Claims
6.1	Number and Numbering of Claims

⁴ Additional amendments to the regulations were adopted by the PCT Union Assembly on October 1, 1997, which will enter in force no later than January 1, 1998. See *Report of the PCT Union Assembly*, 24th Session (11th Ordinary), Geneva, September 16 to October 1, 1997 (Oct. 1, 1997). The following rules will be amended and will enter into force on July 1, 1998: Rules 3-5, 11, 12, 13^{bis}, 13^{ter}, 14-17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 26^{bis}, 29, 34, 37, 38, 43, 44, 46-49, 54, 55, 57-62, 66, 69, 70, 76, 80, 82^{ter}, 91, 92, 93, 94. New Rule 58^{bis} will be added and will enter in force July 1, 1998. New Rules 89^{bis} and 89^{ter} will be added and will enter in force at the same time as the modifications of the Administrative Instructions implementing those new Rules, the effective date to be included in the nomination of those modifications by the Director General.

⁵ Table of Contents is added for the convenience of the reader; it does not appear in the original.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

<p>6.2 References to Other Parts of the International Application</p> <p>6.3 Manner of Claiming</p> <p>6.4 Dependent Claims</p> <p>6.5 Utility Models</p>	<p>Rule 12 Language of the International Application and Translation for the Purpose of International Search</p> <p>12.1 Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications</p> <p>12.2 Language of Changes in the International Application</p> <p>12.3 Translation for the Purposes of International Search</p>
<p>Rule 7 The Drawings</p> <p>7.1 Flow Sheets and Diagrams</p> <p>7.2 Time Limit</p>	<p>Rule 13 Unity of Invention</p> <p>13.1 Requirement</p> <p>13.2 Circumstances in Which the Requirement of Unity of Invention Is to Be Considered Fulfilled</p> <p>13.3 Determination of Unity of Invention Not Affected Manner of Claiming</p> <p>13.4 Dependent Claims</p> <p>13.5 Utility Models</p>
<p>Rule 8 The Abstract</p> <p>8.1 Contents and Form of the Abstract</p> <p>8.2 Figure</p> <p>8.3 Guiding Principles in Drafting</p>	<p>Rule 13^{bis} Inventions Relating to Biological Material</p> <p>13^{bis}.1 Definition</p> <p>13^{bis}.2 References (General)</p> <p>13^{bis}.3 References: Contents; Failure to Include Reference or Indication</p> <p>13^{bis}.4 References: Time Limit for Furnishing Indications</p> <p>13^{bis}.5 References and Indications for the Purposes of One or More Designated States; Different Deposits for Different Designated States; Deposits with Depositary Institutions Other Than Those Notified</p> <p>13^{bis}.6 Furnishing of Samples</p> <p>13^{bis}.7 National Requirements: Notification and Publication</p>
<p>Rule 9 Expressions, Etc., Not To Be Used</p> <p>9.1 Definition</p> <p>9.2 Noting of Lack of Compliance</p> <p>9.3 Reference to Article 21(6) 5</p>	<p>Rule 13^{ter} Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Listings</p> <p>13^{ter}.1 Sequence Listing for International Authorities</p> <p>13^{ter}.2 Sequence Listing for Designated Office</p>
<p>Rule 10 Terminology and Signs</p> <p>10.1 Terminology and Signs</p> <p>10.2 Consistency</p>	
<p>Rule 11 Physical Requirements of the International Application</p> <p>11.1 Number of Copies</p> <p>11.2 Fitness for Reproduction</p> <p>11.3 Material to Be Used</p> <p>11.4 Separate Sheets, Etc.</p> <p>11.5 Size of Sheets</p> <p>11.6 Margins</p> <p>11.7 Numbering of Sheets</p> <p>11.8 Numbering of Lines</p> <p>11.9 Writing of Text Matter</p> <p>11.10 Drawings, Formulae, and Tables, in Text Matter</p> <p>11.11 Words in Drawings</p> <p>11.12 Alterations, Etc.</p> <p>11.13 Special Requirements for Drawings</p> <p>11.14 Later Documents</p>	

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Rule 14	The Transmittal Fee	Rule 20	Receipt of the International Application
	14.1 The Transmittal Fee	20.1	Date and Number
Rule 15	The International Fee	20.2	Receipt on Different Days
	15.1 Basic Fee and Designation Fee	20.3	Corrected International Application
	15.2 Amounts	20.3 ^{bis}	[Deleted]
	15.3 [Deleted]	20.4	Determination Under Article 11(1)
	15.4 Time Limit for Payment; Amount Payable	20.5	Positive Determination
	15.5 Fees Under Rule 4.9(c)	20.6	Invitation to Correct
	15.6 Refund	20.7	Negative Determination
Rule 16	The Search Fee	20.8	Error by the Receiving Office
	16.1 Right to Ask for a Fee	20.9	Certified Copy for the Applicant
	16.2 Refund	Rule 21	Preparation of Copies
	16.3 Partial Refund	21.1	Responsibility of the Receiving Office
Rule 16 ^{bis}	Extension of Time Limits for Payment of Fees	Rule 22	Transmittal of the Record Copy
	16 ^{bis} .1 Invitation by the Receiving Office	22.1	Procedure
	16 ^{bis} .2 Late Payment Fee	22.2	[Deleted]
Rule 17	The Priority Document	22.3	Time Limit Under Article 12(3)
	17.1 Obligation to Submit Copy of Earlier National or International Application	Rule 23	Transmittal of the Search Copy, Translation and Sequence Listing
	17.2 Availability of Copies	23.1	Procedure
Rule 18	The Applicant	Rule 24	Receipt of the Record Copy by the International Bureau
	18.1 Residence and Nationality	24.1	[Deleted]
	18.2 [Deleted]	24.2	Notification of Receipt of the Record Copy
	18.3 Two or More Applicants	Rule 25	Receipt of the Search Copy by the International Searching Authority
	18.4 Information on Requirements Under National Law as to Applicants	25.1	Notification of Receipt of the Search Copy
Rule 19	The Competent Receiving Office	Rule 26	Checking by, and Correcting Before, the Receiving Office of Certain Elements of the International Application
	19.1 Where to File	26.1	Time Limit for Check
	19.2 Two or More Applicants	26.2	Time Limit for Correction
	19.3 Publication of Fact of Delegation of Duties of Receiving Office		
	19.4 Transmittal to the International Bureau as Receiving Office		

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

26.3	Checking of Physical Requirements Under Article 14(1)(a)(v)	31.1	Request for Copies
26.3 ^{bis}	Invitation Under Article 14(1)(b) to Correct Defects Under Rule 11	31.2	Preparation of Copies
26.3 ^{ter}	Invitation to Correct Defects Under Article 3(4)(i)	Rule 32	<i>[Deleted]</i>
26.4	Procedure	Rule 32 ^{bis}	<i>[Deleted]</i>
26.5	Decision of the Receiving Office	Rule 33	Relevant Prior Art for the International Search
26.6	Missing Drawings	33.1	Relevant Prior Art for the International Search
Rule 26 ^{bis}	Correction or Addition of Priority Claim	33.2	Fields to Be Covered by the International Search
26 ^{bis} .1	Correction or Addition of Priority Claim	33.3	Orientation of the International Search
26 ^{bis} .2	Invitation to Correct Defects in Priority Claims	Rule 34	Minimum Documentation
Rule 26 ^{ter}	Correction or Addition of Declarations Under Rule 4.17	34.1	Definition
26 ^{ter} .1	Correction or Addition of Declarations	Rule 35	The Competent International Searching Authority
26 ^{ter} .2	Processing of Declarations	35.1	When Only One International Searching Authority Is Competent
Rule 27	Lack of Payment of Fees	35.2	When Several International Searching Authorities Are Competent
27.1	Fees	35.3	When the International Bureau Is Receiving Office Under Rule 19.1(a)(iii)
Rule 28	Defects Noted by the International Bureau	Rule 36	Minimum Requirements for International Searching Authorities
28.1	Note on Certain Defects	36.1	Definition of Minimum Requirements
Rule 29	International Applications or Designations Considered Withdrawn	Rule 37	Missing or Defective Title
29.1	Finding by Receiving Office	37.1	Lack of Title
29.2	<i>[Deleted]</i>	37.2	Establishment of Title
29.3	Calling Certain Facts to the Attention of the Receiving Office	Rule 38	Missing or Defective Abstract
29.4	Notification of Intent to Make Declaration Under Article 14(4)	38.1	Lack of Abstract
Rule 30	Time Limit Under Article 14(4)	38.2	Establishment of Abstract
30.1	Time Limit	Rule 39	Subject Matter Under Article 17(2)(a)(i)
Rule 31	Copies Required Under Article 13	39.1	Definition

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Rule 40	Lack of Unity of Invention (International Search)	46.4	Statement
		46.5	Form of Amendments
	40.1 Invitation to Pay	Rule 47	Communication to Designated Offices
	40.2 Additional Fees	47.1	Procedure
	40.3 Time Limit	47.2	Copies
Rule 41	Earlier Search Other Than International Search	47.3	Languages
	41.1 Obligation to Use Results; Refund of Fee	47.4	Express Request Under Article 23(2)
Rule 42	Time Limit for International Search	Rule 48	International Publication
	42.1 Time Limit for International Search	48.1	Form
Rule 43	The International Search Report	48.2	Contents
	43.1 Identifications	48.3	Languages of Publication
	43.2 Dates	48.4	Earlier Publication on the Applicant's Request
	43.3 Classification	48.5	Notification of National Publication
	43.4 Language	48.6	Announcing of Certain Facts
	43.5 Citations	Rule 49	Copy, Translation and Fee Under Article 22
	43.6 Fields Searched	49.1	Notification
	43.7 Remarks Concerning Unity of Invention	49.2	Languages
	43.8 Authorized Officer	49.3	Statements Under Article 19; Indications Under Rule 13 ^{bis.4} Use of National Form
	43.9 Additional Matter	49.4	Use of National Form
	43.10 Form	49.5	Contents of and Physical Requirements for the Translation
Rule 44	Transmittal of the International Search Report, Etc.	Rule 50	Faculty Under Article 22(3)
	44.1 Copies of Report or Declaration	50.1	Exercise of Faculty
	44.2 Title or Abstract	Rule 51	Review by Designated Offices
	44.3 Copies of Cited Documents	51.1	Time Limit for Presenting the Request to Send Copies
Rule 45	Translation of the International Search Report	51.2	Copy of the Notice
	45.1 Languages	51.3	Time Limit for Paying National Fee and Furnishing Translation
Rule 46	Amendment of Claims Before the International Bureau	Rule 51 ^{bis}	Certain National Requirements Allowed Under Article 27(1), (2), (6) and (7)
	46.1 Time Limit	51 ^{bis.1}	Certain National Requirements Allowed 66
	46.2 Where to File		
	46.3 Language of Amendments		

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

51 ^{bis} .2	Certain Circumstances in Which Documents or Evidence May Not Be Required	56.3	International Application Identification of the Demand
51 ^{bis} .3	Opportunity to Comply with National Requirements	56.4	Form of Later Elections 1
		56.5	Language of Later Elections
Rule 52	Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Designated Offices	Rule 57	The Handling Fee
52.1	Time Limit	57.1	Requirement to Pay
		57.2	Amount
		57.3	Time Limit for Payment; Amount Payable
		57.4	[Deleted]
		57.5	[Deleted]
		57.6	Refund
Part C: Rules Concerning Chapter II of the Treaty			
Rule 53	The Demand	Rule 58	The Preliminary Examination Fee
53.1	Form	58.1	Right to Ask for a Fee
53.2	Contents	58.2	[Deleted]
53.3	The Petition	58.3	Refund
53.4	The Applicant	Rule 58 ^{bis}	Extension of Time Limits for Payment of Fees
53.5	Agent or Common Representative	58 ^{bis} .1	Invitation by the International Preliminary Examining Authority
53.6	Identification of the International Application	58 ^{bis} .2	Late Payment Fee
53.7	Election of States	Rule 59	The Competent International Preliminary Examining Authority
53.8	Signature	59.1	Demands Under Article 31(2)(a)
53.9	Statement Concerning Amendments	59.2	Demands Under Article 31(2)(b)
Rule 54	The Applicant Entitled to Make a Demand	59.3	Transmittal of Demand to the Competent International Preliminary Examining Authority
54.1	Residence and Nationality	Rule 60	Certain Defects in the Demand or Elections
54.2	Right to Make a Demand	60.1	Defects in the Demand
54.3	International Applications Filed with the International Bureau as Receiving Office	60.2	Defects in Later Elections
54.4	Applicant Not Entitled To Make a Demand	Rule 61	Notification of the Demand and Elections
Rule 55	Languages (International Preliminary Examination)	61.1	Notification to the International Bureau and the Applicant
55.1	Language of Demand		
55.2	Translation of International Application		
55.3	Translation of Amendments		
Rule 56	Later Elections		
56.1	Elections Submitted Later Than the Demand		
56.2	Identification of the		

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

	61.2	Notification to the Elected Offices		66.6	Informal Communications with the Applicant
	61.3	Information for the Applicant		66.7	Priority Document
	61.4	Publication in the Gazette		66.8	Form of Amendments
				66.9	Language of Amendments
Rule 62		Copy of Amendments Under Article 19 for the International Preliminary Examining Authority	Rule 67		Subject Matter Under Article 34(4)(a)(i)
	62.1	Amendments Made Before the Demand Is Filed		67.1	Definition
	62.2	Amendments Made After the Demand Is Filed	Rule 68		Lack of Unity of Invention (International Preliminary Examination)
Rule 63		Minimum Requirements for International Preliminary Examining Authorities		68.1	No Invitation to Restrict or Pay
	63.1	Definition of Minimum Requirements		68.2	Invitation to Restrict or Pay
				68.3	Additional Fees
				68.4	Procedure in the Case of Insufficient Restriction of the Claims
				68.5	Main Invention
Rule 64		Prior Art for International Preliminary Examination	Rule 69		Start of and Time Limit for International Preliminary Examination
	64.1	Prior Art		69.1	Start of International Preliminary Examination
	64.2	Non-Written Disclosures		69.2	Time Limit for International Preliminary Examination
	64.3	Certain Published Documents			
Rule 65		Inventive Step or Non-Obviousness	Rule 70		The International Preliminary Examination Report
	65.1	Approach to Prior Art		70.1	Definition
	65.2	Relevant Date		70.2	Basis of the Report
Rule 66		Procedure Before the International Preliminary Examining Authority		70.3	Identifications
	66.1	Basis of the International Preliminary Examination		70.4	Dates
	66.2	First Written Opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority		70.5	Classification
	66.3	Formal Response to the International Preliminary Examining Authority		70.6	Statement Under Article 35(2)
	66.4	Additional Opportunity for Submitting Amendments or Arguments		70.7	Citations Under Article 35(2)
	66.4 ^{bis}	Consideration of Amendments and Arguments		70.8	Explanations Under Article 35(2)
	66.5	Amendment		70.9	Non-Written Disclosures
				70.10	Certain Published Documents
				70.11	Mention of Amendments
				70.12	Mention of Certain Defects and Other Matters
				70.13	Remarks Concerning Unity of Invention
				70.14	Authorized Officer
				70.15	Form
				70.16	Annexes to the Report
				70.17	Languages of the Report and the Annexes

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

<p>Rule 71 Transmittal of the International Preliminary Examination Report</p> <p>71.1 Recipients</p> <p>71.2 Copies of Cited Documents</p>	<p>Rule 78 Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Elected Offices</p> <p>78.1 Time Limit Where Election Is Effected Prior To Expiration of 19 Months from Priority Date</p> <p>78.2 Time Limit Where Election Is Effected after Expiration of 19 Months from Priority Date</p> <p>78.3 Utility Models</p>
<p>Rule 72 Translation of the International Preliminary Examination Report</p> <p>72.1 Languages</p> <p>72.2 Copy of Translation for the Applicant</p> <p>72.3 Observations on the Translation</p>	<p>Part D: Rules Concerning Chapter III of the Treaty</p> <p>Rule 79 Calendar</p> <p>79.1 Expressing Dates</p>
<p>Rule 73 Communication of the International Preliminary Examination Report</p> <p>73.1 Preparation of Copies</p> <p>73.2 Time Limit for Communication</p>	<p>Rule 80 Computation of Time Limits</p> <p>80.1 Periods Expressed in Years</p> <p>80.2 Periods Expressed in Months</p> <p>80.3 Periods Expressed in Days</p> <p>80.4 Local Dates</p> <p>80.5 Expiration on a Non-Working Day</p> <p>80.6 Date of Documents</p> <p>80.7 End of Working Day</p>
<p>Rule 74 Translations of Annexes of the International Preliminary Examination Report and Transmittal Thereof</p> <p>74.1 Contents of Translation and Time Limit for Transmittal Thereof</p>	<p>Rule 81 Modification of Time Limits Fixed in the Treaty</p> <p>81.1 Proposal</p> <p>81.2 Decision by the Assembly</p> <p>81.3 Voting by Correspondence</p>
<p>Rule 75 <i>[Deleted]</i></p>	<p>Rule 82 Irregularities in the Mail Service</p> <p>82.1 Delay or Loss in Mail</p> <p>82.2 Interruption in the Mail Service</p>
<p>Rule 76 Copy, Translation and Fee Under Article 39(1); Translation of Priority Document 84</p> <p>76.1, 76.2 and 76.3 <i>[Deleted]</i></p> <p>76.4 Time Limit for Translation of Priority Document</p> <p>76.5 Application of Rules 22.1(g), 49 and 51^{bis}</p> <p>76.6 Transitional Provision 4</p>	<p>Rule 82^{bis} Excuse by the Designated or Elected State of Delays in Meeting Certain Time Limits</p> <p>82^{bis}.1 Meaning of "Time Limit" in Article 48(2)</p> <p>82^{bis}.2 Reinstatement of Rights and Other Provisions to Which Article 48(2) Applies</p>
<p>Rule 77 Faculty Under Article 39(1)(b)</p> <p>77.1 Exercise of Faculty</p>	

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

- Rule 82^{ter} Rectification of Errors Made by the Receiving Office or by the International Bureau
- 82^{ter}.1 Errors Concerning the International Filing Date and the Priority Claim

- Rule 83 Right to Practice Before International Authorities
- 83.1 Proof of Right
- 83.1^{bis} Where the International Bureau Is the Receiving Office
- 83.2 Information

Part E: Rules Concerning Chapter V of the Treaty

- Rule 84 Expenses of Delegations
- 84.1 Expenses Borne by Governments

- Rule 85 Absence of Quorum in the Assembly
- 85.1 Voting by Correspondence

- Rule 86 The Gazette
- 86.1 Contents and Form
- 86.2 Languages; Access to the Gazette
- 86.3 Frequency
- 86.4 Sale
- 86.5 Title
- 86.6 Further Details

- Rule 87 Copies of Publications
- 87.1 International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities
- 87.2 National Offices

- Rule 88 Amendment of the Regulations
- 88.1 Requirement of Unanimity
- 88.2 [Deleted]
- 88.3 Requirement of Absence of Opposition by Certain States
- 88.4 Procedure

- Rule 89 Administrative Instructions
- 89.1 Scope
- 89.2 Source
- 89.3 Publication and Entry into Force

Part F: Rules Concerning Several Chapters of the Treaty

- Rule 89^{bis} Filing, Processing and Transmission of International Applications and Other Documents in Electronic Form or by Electronic Means
- 89^{bis}.1 International Applications
- 89^{bis}.2 Other Documents
- 89^{bis}.3 Transmittal Between Offices

- Rule 89^{ter} Copies in Electronic Form of Documents Filed on Paper
- 89^{ter}.1 Copies in Electronic form of Documents Filed on Paper

- Rule 90 Agents and Common Representatives
- 90.1 Appointment as Agent
- 90.2 Common Representative
- 90.3 Effects of Acts by or in Relation to Agents and Common Representatives
- 90.4 Manner of Appointment of Agent or Common Representative
- 90.5 General Power of Attorney
- 90.6 Revocation and Renunciation

- Rule 90^{bis} Withdrawals
- 90^{bis}.1 Withdrawal of the International Application
- 90^{bis}.2 Withdrawal of Designations
- 90^{bis}.3 Withdrawal of Priority Claims
- 90^{bis}.4 Withdrawal of the Demand, or of Elections
- 90^{bis}.5 Signature
- 90^{bis}.6 Effect of Withdrawal
- 90^{bis}.7 Faculty Under Article 37(4)(b)

- Rule 91 Obvious Errors in Documents
- 91.1 Rectification

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Rule 92	Correspondence	93.3	The International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities	
	92.1	Need for Letter and for Signature	93.4	Reproductions
	92.2	Languages	Rule 94	Access to Files
	92.3	Mailings by National Offices and Intergovernmental Organizations	94.1	Access to the File Held by the International Bureau
	92.4	Reproductions	94.2	Access to the File Held by the International Preliminary Examining Authority
Rule 92 ^{bis}	Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand	94.3	Access to the File Held by the Elected Office	
	92 ^{bis} .1	Recording of Changes by the International Bureau	Rule 95	Availability of Translations
Rule 93	Keeping of Records and Files	95.1	Furnishing of Copies of Translations	
	93.1	The Receiving Office	Rule 96	The Schedule of Fees
	93.2	The International Bureau	<i>Schedule of Fees</i>	

PART A

Introductory Rules

Rule 1

Abbreviated Expressions

1.1 *Meaning of Abbreviated Expressions*

(a) In these Regulations, the word "Treaty" means the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(b) In these Regulations, the words "Chapter" and "Article" refer to the specified Chapter or Article of the Treaty.

Rule 2

Interpretation of Certain Words

2.1 *"Applicant"*

Whenever the word "applicant" is used, it shall be construed as meaning also the agent or other representative of the applicant, except where the contrary clearly follows from the wording or the nature of the provision, or the context in which the word is used, such as, in particular, where the provision refers to the residence or nationality of the applicant.

2.2 *"Agent"*

Whenever the word "agent" is used, it shall be construed as meaning an agent appointed under Rule 90.1, unless the contrary clearly follows from the wording or the nature of the provision, or the context in which the word is used.

2.2^{bis} *"Common Representative"*

Whenever the expression "common representative" is used, it shall be construed as meaning an applicant appointed as, or considered to be, the common representative under Rule 90.2.

2.3 *"Signature"*

Whenever the word "signature" is used, it shall be understood that, if the national law applied by the receiving Office or the competent International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority requires the use of a seal instead of a signature, the word, for the purposes of that Office or Authority, shall mean seal.

PART B

Rules Concerning Chapter I of the Treaty

Rule 3

The Request (Form)

3.1 *Form of Request*

The request shall be made on a printed form or be presented as a computer print-out.

3.2 *Availability of Forms*

Copies of the printed form shall be furnished free of charge to the applicants by the receiving Office, or, if the receiving Office so desires, by the International Bureau.

3.3 *Check List*

(a) The request shall contain a list indicating:

(i) the total number of sheets constituting the international application and the number of the sheets of each element of the international application: request, description (separately indicating the number of sheets of any sequence listing part of the description), claims, drawings, abstract;

(ii) where applicable, that the international application as filed is accompanied by a power of attorney (i.e., a document appointing an agent or a common representative), a copy of a general power of attorney, a priority document, a sequence listing in computer readable form, a document relating to the payment of fees, or any other document (to be specified in the check list);

(iii) the number of that figure of the drawings which the applicant suggests should accompany the abstract when the abstract is published; in exceptional cases, the applicant may suggest more than one figure.

(b) The list shall be completed by the applicant, failing which the receiving Office shall make the necessary indications, except that the number referred to in paragraph (a)(iii) shall not be indicated by the receiving Office.

3.4 *Particulars*

Subject to Rule 3.3, particulars of the printed request form and of a request presented as a computer printout shall be prescribed by the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 4

The Request (Contents)

4.1 Mandatory and Optional Contents; Signature

- (a) The request shall contain:
 - (i) a petition,
 - (ii) the title of the invention,
 - (iii) indications concerning the applicant and the agent, if there is an agent,
 - (iv) the designation of States,
 - (v) indications concerning the inventor where the national law of at least one of the designated States requires that the name of the inventor be furnished at the time of filing a national application.

- (b) The request shall, where applicable, contain:
 - (i) a priority claim,
 - (ii) a reference to any earlier international, international-type or other search,
 - (iii) choices of certain kinds of protection,
 - (iv) an indication that the applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent,
 - (v) a reference to a parent application or parent patent.
 - (vi) an indication of the applicant's choice of competent International Searching Authority.

- (c) The request may contain:
 - (i) indications concerning the inventor where the national law of none of the designated States requires that the name of the inventor be furnished at the time of filing a national application,
 - (ii) a request to the receiving Office to transmit the priority document to the International Bureau where the application whose priority is claimed was filed with the national Office or intergovernmental authority which is the receiving Office,
 - (iii) declarations as provided in Rule 4.17.

- (d) The request shall be signed.

4.2 The Petition

The petition shall be to the following effect and shall preferably be worded as follows: "The undersigned requests that the present international application be processed according to the Patent Cooperation Treaty."

4.3 Title of the Invention

The title of the invention shall be short (preferably from two to seven words when in English or translated into English) and precise.

4.4 Names and Addresses

(a) Names of natural persons shall be indicated by the person's family name and given name(s), the family name being indicated before the given name(s).

(b) Names of legal entities shall be indicated by their full, official designations.

(c) Addresses shall be indicated in such a way as to satisfy the customary requirements for prompt postal delivery at the indicated address and, in any case, shall consist of all the relevant administrative units up to, and including, the house number, if any. Where the national law of the designated State does not require the indication of the house number, failure to indicate such number shall have no effect in that State. In order to allow rapid communication with the applicant, it is recommended to indicate any teleprinter address, telephone and facsimile machine numbers, or corresponding data for other like means of communication, of the applicant or, where applicable, the agent or the common representative.

(d) For each applicant, inventor, or agent, only one address may be indicated, except that, if no agent has been appointed to represent the applicant, or all of them if more than one, the applicant or, if there is more than one applicant, the common representative, may indicate, in addition to any other address given in the request, an address to which notifications shall be sent.

4.5 The Applicant

(a) The request shall indicate the name, address, nationality and residence of the applicant or, if there are several applicants, of each of them.

(b) The applicant's nationality shall be indicated by the name of the State of which he is a national.

(c) The applicant's residence shall be indicated by the name of the State of which he is a resident.

(d) The request may, for different designated States, indicate different applicants. In such a case, the request shall indicate the applicant or applicants for each designated State or group of designated States.

(e) Where the applicant is registered with the national Office that is acting as receiving Office, the request may indicate the number or other indication under which the applicant is so registered.

4.6 *The Inventor*

(a) Where Rule 4.1(a)(v) or (c)(i) applies, the request shall indicate the name and address of the inventor or, if there are several inventors, of each of them.

(b) If the applicant is the inventor, the request, in lieu of the indication under paragraph (a), shall contain a statement to that effect.

(c) The request may, for different designated States, indicate different persons as inventors where, in this respect, the requirements of the national laws of the designated States are not the same. In such a case, the request shall contain a separate statement for each designated State or group of States in which a particular person, or the same person, is to be considered the inventor, or in which particular persons, or the same persons, are to be considered the inventors.

4.7 *The Agent*

(a) If an agent is appointed, the request shall so indicate, and shall state the agent's name and address.

(b) Where the agent is registered with national Office that is acting as receiving Office, the request may indicate the number or other indication under which the agent is so registered.

4.8 *Common Representative*

If a common representative is appointed, the request shall so indicate.

4.9 *Designation of States*

(a) Contracting States shall be designated in the request:

(i) in the case of designations for the purpose of obtaining national patents, by an indication of each State concerned;

(ii) in the case of designations for the purpose of obtaining a regional patent, by an indication that a regional patent is desired either for all Contracting States which are party to the regional patent treaty concerned or only for such Contracting States as are specified.

(b) The request may contain an indication that all designations which would be permitted under the

Treaty, other than those made under paragraph (a), are also made, provided that:

(i) at least one Contracting State is designated under paragraph (a), and

(ii) the request also contains a statement that any designation made under this paragraph is subject to confirmation as provided in paragraph (c) and that any designation which is not so confirmed before the expiration of 15 months from the priority date is to be regarded as withdrawn by the applicant at the expiration of that time limit.

(c) The confirmation of any designation made under paragraph (b) shall be effected by

(i) filing with the receiving Office a written notice containing an indication as referred to in paragraph (a)(i) or (ii), and

(ii) paying to the receiving Office the designation fee and the confirmation fee referred to in Rule 15.5 within the time limit under paragraph (b)(ii).

4.10 *Priority Claim*

(a) Any declaration referred to in Article 8(1) ("priority claim") may claim the priority of one or more earlier applications filed either in or for any country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property or in or for any Member of the World Trade Organization that is not party to that Convention. Any priority claim shall, subject to Rule 26^{bis}.1, be made in the request; it shall consist of a statement to the effect that the priority of an earlier application is claimed and shall indicate:

(i) the date on which the earlier application was filed, being a date falling within the period of 12 months preceding the international filing date;

(ii) the number of the earlier application;

(iii) where the earlier application is a national application, the country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property or the Member of the World Trade Organization that is not party to that Convention in which it was filed;

(iv) where the earlier application is a regional application, the authority entrusted with the granting of regional patents under the applicable regional patent treaty;

(v) where the earlier application is an international application, the receiving Office with which it was filed.

(b) In addition to any indication required under paragraph (a)(iv) or (v):

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(i) where the earlier application is a regional application or an international application, the priority claim may indicate one or more countries party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property for which that earlier application was filed;

(ii) where the earlier application is a regional application and at least one of the countries party to the regional patent treaty is neither party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property nor a Member of the World Trade Organization, the priority claim shall indicate at least one country party to that Convention or one Member of the Organization for which that earlier application was filed.

(c) For the purposes of paragraphs (a) and (b), Article 2(vi) shall not apply.

(d) If, on September 29, 1999, paragraphs (a) and (b) as amended with effect from January 1, 2000, are not compatible with the national law applied by a designated Office, those paragraphs as in force until December 31, 1999, shall continue to apply after that date in respect of that designated Office for as long as the said paragraphs as amended continue not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by October 31, 1999. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

4.11 *Reference to Earlier Search*

If an international or international-type search has been requested on an application under Article 15(5) or if the applicant wishes the International Searching Authority to base the international search report wholly or in part on the results of a search, other than an international or international-type search, made by the national Office or intergovernmental organization which is the International Searching Authority competent for the international application, the request shall contain a reference to that fact. Such reference shall either identify the application (or its translation, as the case may be) in respect of which the earlier search was made by indicating country, date and number, or the said search by indicating, where applicable, date and number of the request for such search.

4.12 *Choice of Certain Kinds of Protection*

(a) If the applicant wishes his international application to be treated, in any designated State, as an application not for a patent but for the grant of any

of the other kinds of protection specified in Article 43, he shall so indicate in the request. For the purposes of this paragraph, Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

(b) In the case provided for in Article 44, the applicant shall indicate the two kinds of protection sought, or, if one of two kinds of protection is primarily sought, he shall indicate which kind is sought primarily and which kind is sought subsidiarily.

4.13 *Identification of Parent Application or Parent Grant*

If the applicant wishes his international application to be treated, in any designated State, as an application for a patent or certificate of addition, inventor's certificate of addition, or utility certificate of addition, he shall identify the parent application or the parent patent, parent inventor's certificate, or parent utility certificate to which the patent or certificate of addition, inventor's certificate of addition, or utility certificate of addition, if granted, relates. For the purposes of this paragraph Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

4.14 *Continuation or Continuation-in-Part*

If the applicant wishes his international application to be treated, in any designated State, as an application for a continuation or a continuation-in-part of an earlier application, he shall so indicate in the request and shall identify the parent application involved.

4.14^{bis} *Choice of International Searching Authority*

If two or more International Searching Authorities are competent for the searching of the international application, the applicant shall indicate his choice of International Searching Authority in the request.

4.15 *Signature*

(a) Subject to paragraph (b), the request shall be signed by the applicant or, if there is more than one applicant, by all of them.

(b) Where two or more applicants file an international application which designates a State whose national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor and where an applicant for that designated State who is an inventor refused to sign the request or could not be found or reached after diligent effort, the request need not be signed by that applicant if it is signed by at least one applicant and a statement is furnished explaining, to the satisfaction of the receiving Office, the lack of the signature concerned.

4.16 *Transliteration or Translation of Certain Words*

(a) Where any name or address is written in characters other than those of the Latin alphabet, the same shall also be indicated in characters of the Latin alphabet either as a mere transliteration or through translation into English. The applicant shall decide which words will be merely transliterated and which words will be so translated.

(b) The name of any country written in characters other than those of the Latin alphabet shall also be indicated in English.

4.17 *Declarations Relating to National Requirements Referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(i) to (v)*

The request may, for the purposes of the national law applicable in one or more designated States, contain one or more of the following declarations, worded as prescribed by the Administrative Instructions:

(i) a declaration as to the identity of the inventor, as referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(i);

(ii) a declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to apply for and be granted a patent, as referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(ii);

(iii) a declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to claim priority of the earlier application, as referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iii);

(iv) a declaration of inventorship, as referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iv), which shall be signed as prescribed by the Administrative Instructions;

(v) a declaration as to non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty, as referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(v).

4.18 *Additional Matter*

(a) The request shall contain no matter other than that specified in Rules 4.1 to 4.17, provided that the Administrative Instructions may permit, but cannot make mandatory, the inclusion in the request of any additional matter specified in the Administrative Instructions.

(b) If the request contains matter other than that specified in Rules 4.1 to 4.17 or permitted under paragraph (a) by the Administrative Instructions, the receiving Office shall *ex officio* delete the additional matter.

Rule 5

The Description

5.1 *Manner of the Description*

(a) The description shall first state the title of the invention as appearing in the request and shall:

(i) specify the technical field to which the invention relates;

(ii) indicate the background art which, as far as known to the applicant, can be regarded as useful for the understanding, searching and examination of the invention, and, preferably, cite the documents reflecting such art;

(iii) disclose the invention, as claimed, in such terms that the technical problem (even if not expressly stated as such) and its solution can be understood, and state the advantageous effects, if any, of the invention with reference to the background art;

(iv) briefly describe the figures in the drawings, if any;

(v) set forth at least the best mode contemplated by the applicant for carrying out the invention claimed; this shall be done in terms of examples, where appropriate, and with reference to the drawings, if any; where the national law of the designated State does not require the description of the best mode but is satisfied with the description of any mode (whether it is the best contemplated or not), failure to describe the best mode contemplated shall have no effect in that State;

(vi) indicate explicitly, when it is not obvious from the description or nature of the invention, the way in which the invention is capable of exploitation in industry and the way in which it can be made and used, or, if it can only be used, the way in which it can be used; the term "industry" is to be understood in its broadest sense as in the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

(b) The manner and order specified in paragraph (a) shall be followed except when, because of the nature of the invention, a different manner or a different order would result in a better understanding and a more economic presentation.

(c) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b), each of the parts referred to in paragraph (a) shall preferably be preceded by an appropriate heading as suggested in the Administrative Instructions.

5.2 *Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Disclosure*

(a) Where the international application contains disclosure of one or more nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, the description shall contain a sequence listing complying with the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions and presented as a separate part of the description in accordance with that standard.

(b) Where the sequence listing part of the description contains any free text as defined in the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions, that free text shall also appear in the main part of the description in the language thereof.

Rule 6

The Claims

6.1 *Number and Numbering of Claims*

(a) The number of the claims shall be reasonable in consideration of the nature of the invention claimed.

(b) If there are several claims, they shall be numbered consecutively in Arabic numerals.

(c) The method of numbering in the case of the amendment of claims shall be governed by the Administrative Instructions.

6.2 *References to Other Parts of the International Application*

(a) Claims shall not, except where absolutely necessary, rely, in respect of the technical features of the invention, on references to the description or drawings. In particular, they shall not rely on such references as: "as described in part ... of the description," or "as illustrated in figure ... of the drawings."

(b) Where the international application contains drawings, the technical features mentioned in the claims shall preferably be followed by the reference signs relating to such features. When used, the reference signs shall preferably be placed between parentheses. If inclusion of reference signs does not particularly facilitate quicker understanding of a claim, it should not be made. Reference signs may be removed by a designated Office for the purposes of publication by such Office.

6.3 *Manner of Claiming*

(a) The definition of the matter for which protection is sought shall be in terms of the technical features of the invention.

(b) Whenever appropriate, claims shall contain:

(i) a statement indicating those technical features of the invention which are necessary for the definition of the claimed subject matter but which, in combination, are part of the prior art,

(ii) a characterizing portion — preceded by the words "characterized in that," "characterized by," "wherein the improvement comprises," or any other words to the same effect — stating concisely the technical features which, in combination with the features stated under (i), it is desired to protect.

(c) Where the national law of the designated State does not require the manner of claiming provided for in paragraph (b), failure to use that manner of claiming shall have no effect in that State provided the manner of claiming actually used satisfies the national law of that State.

6.4 *Dependent Claims*

(a) Any claim which includes all the features of one or more other claims (claim in dependent form, hereinafter referred to as "dependent claim") shall do so by a reference, if possible at the beginning, to the other claim or claims and shall then state the additional features claimed. Any dependent claim which refers to more than one other claim ("multiple dependent claim") shall refer to such claims in the alternative only. Multiple dependent claims shall not serve as a basis for any other multiple dependent claim. Where the national law of the national Office acting as International Searching Authority does not allow multiple dependent claims to be drafted in a manner different from that provided for in the preceding two sentences, failure to use that manner of claiming may result in an indication under Article 17(2)(b) in the international search report. Failure to use the said manner of claiming shall have no effect in a designated State if the manner of claiming actually used satisfies the national law of that State.

(b) Any dependent claim shall be construed as including all the limitations contained in the claim to which it refers or, if the dependent claim is a multiple dependent claim, all the limitations contained in the particular claim in relation to which it is considered.

(c) All dependent claims referring back to a single previous claim, and all dependent claims referring back to several previous claims, shall be grouped together to the extent and in the most practical way possible.

6.5 *Utility Models*

Any designated State in which the grant of a utility model is sought on the basis of an international application may, instead of Rules 6.1 to 6.4, apply in respect of the matters regulated in those Rules the provisions of its national law concerning utility models once the processing of the international application has started in that State, provided that the applicant shall be allowed at least two months from the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22 to adapt his application to the requirements of the said provisions of the national law.

Rule 7

The Drawings

7.1 *Flow Sheets and Diagrams*

Flowsheets and diagrams are considered drawings.

7.2 *Time Limit*

The time limit referred to in Article 7(2)(ii) shall be reasonable under the circumstances of the case and shall, in no case, be shorter than two months from the date of the written invitation requiring the filing of drawings or additional drawings under the said provision.

Rule 8

The Abstract

8.1 *Contents and Form of the Abstract*

(a) The abstract shall consist of the following:

(i) a summary of the disclosure as contained in the description, the claims, and any drawings; the summary shall indicate the technical field to which the invention pertains and shall be drafted in a way which allows the clear understanding of the technical problem, the gist of the solution of that problem through the invention, and the principal use or uses of the invention;

(ii) where applicable, the chemical formula which, among all the formulae contained in the international application, best characterizes the invention.

(b) The abstract shall be as concise as the disclosure permits (preferably 50 to 150 words if it is in English or when translated into English).

(c) The abstract shall not contain statements on the alleged merits or value of the claimed invention or on its speculative application.

(d) Each main technical feature mentioned in the abstract and illustrated by a drawing in the international application shall be followed by a reference sign, placed between parentheses.

8.2 *Figure*

(a) If the applicant fails to make the indication referred to in Rule 3.3(a)(iii), or if the International Searching Authority finds that a figure or figures other than that figure or those figures suggested by the applicant would, among all the figures of all the drawings, better characterize the invention, it shall, subject to paragraph (b), indicate the figure or figures which should accompany the abstract when the latter is published by the International Bureau. In such case, the abstract shall be accompanied by the figure or figures so indicated by the International Searching Authority. Otherwise, the abstract shall, subject to paragraph (b), be accompanied by the figure or figures suggested by the applicant.

(b) If the International Searching Authority finds that none of the figures of the drawings is useful for the understanding of the abstract, it shall notify the International Bureau accordingly. In such case, the abstract, when published by the International Bureau, shall not be accompanied by any figure of the drawings even where the applicant has made a suggestion under Rule 3.3(a)(iii).

8.3 *Guiding Principles in Drafting*

The abstract shall be so drafted that it can efficiently serve as a scanning tool for purposes of searching in the particular art, especially by assisting the scientist, engineer or researcher in formulating an opinion on whether there is a need for consulting the international application itself.

Rule 9

Expressions, Etc., Not To Be Used

9.1 *Definition*

The international application shall not contain:

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- (i) expressions or drawings contrary to morality;
- (ii) expressions or drawings contrary to public order;
- (iii) statements disparaging the products or processes of any particular person other than the applicant, or the merits or validity of applications or patents of any such person (mere comparisons with the prior art shall not be considered disparaging, *per se*);
- (iv) any statement or other matter obviously irrelevant or unnecessary under the circumstances.

9.2 Noting of Lack of Compliance

The receiving Office and the International Searching Authority may note lack of compliance with the prescriptions of Rule 9.1 and may suggest to the applicant that he voluntarily correct his international application accordingly. If the lack of compliance was noted by the receiving Office, that Office shall inform the competent International Searching Authority and the International Bureau; if the lack of compliance was noted by the International Searching Authority, that Authority shall inform the receiving Office and the International Bureau.

9.3 Reference to Article 21(6)

"Disparaging statements," referred to in Article 21(6), shall have the meaning as defined in Rule 9.1(iii).

Rule 10

Terminology and Signs

10.1 Terminology and Signs

(a) Units of weights and measures shall be expressed in terms of the metric system, or also expressed in such terms if first expressed in terms of a different system.

(b) Temperatures shall be expressed in degrees Celsius, or also expressed in degrees Celsius, if first expressed in a different manner.

(c) *[Deleted]*

(d) For indications of heat, energy, light, sound, and magnetism, as well as for mathematical formulae and electrical units, the rules of international practice shall be observed; for chemical formulae, the symbols, atomic weights, and molecular formulae, in general use, shall be employed.

(e) In general, only such technical terms, signs, and symbols should be used as are generally accepted in the art.

(f) When the international application or its translation is in Chinese, English, or Japanese, the beginning of any decimal shall be marked by a period, whereas, when the international application or its translation is in a language other than Chinese, English, or Japanese, it shall be marked by a comma.

10.2 Consistency

The terminology and the signs shall be consistent throughout the international application.

Rule 11

Physical Requirements of the International Application

11.1 Number of Copies

(a) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b), the international application and each of the documents referred to in the check list (Rule 3.3(a)(ii)) shall be filed in one copy.

(b) Any receiving Office may require that the international application and any of the documents referred to in the check list (Rule 3.3(a)(ii)), except the receipt for the fees paid or the check for the payment of the fees, be filed in two or three copies. In that case, the receiving Office shall be responsible for verifying the identity of the second and the third copies with the record copy.

11.2 Fitness for Reproduction

(a) All elements of the international application (i.e., the request, the description, the claims, the drawings, and the abstract) shall be so presented as to admit of direct reproduction by photography, electrostatic processes, photo offset, and microfilming, in any number of copies.

(b) All sheets shall be free from creases and cracks; they shall not be folded.

(c) Only one side of each sheet shall be used.

(d) Subject to Rule 11.10(d) and Rule 11.13(j), each sheet shall be used in an upright position (i.e., the short sides at the top and bottom).

11.3 Material to Be Used

All elements of the international application shall be on paper which shall be flexible, strong, white, smooth, non-shiny, and durable.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

11.4 *Separate Sheets, Etc.*

(a) Each element (request, description, claims, drawings, abstract) of the international application shall commence on a new sheet.

(b) All sheets of the international application shall be so connected that they can be easily turned when consulted, and easily separated and joined again if they have been separated for reproduction purposes.

11.5 *Size of Sheets*

The size of the sheets shall be A4 (29.7 cm x 21 cm). However, any receiving Office may accept international applications on sheets of other sizes provided that the record copy, as transmitted to the International Bureau, and, if the competent International Searching Authority so desires, the search copy, shall be of A4 size.

11.6 *Margins*

(a) The minimum margins of the sheets containing the description, the claims, and the abstract, shall be as follows:

- top: 2 cm
- left side: 2.5 cm
- right side: 2 cm
- bottom: 2 cm

(b) The recommended maximum, for the margins provided for in paragraph (a), is as follows:

- top: 4 cm
- left side: 4 cm
- right side: 3 cm
- bottom: 3 cm

(c) On sheets containing drawings, the surface usable shall not exceed 26.2 cm x 17.0 cm. The sheets shall not contain frames around the usable or used surface. The minimum margins shall be as follows:

- top: 2.5 cm
- left side: 2.5 cm
- right side: 1.5 cm
- bottom: 1.0 cm

(d) The margins referred to in paragraphs (a) to (c) apply to A4-size sheets, so that, even if the receiving Office accepts other sizes, the A4-size record copy and, when so required, the A4-size search copy shall leave the aforesaid margins.

(e) Subject to paragraph (f) and to Rule 11.8(b), the margins of the international application, when submitted, must be completely blank.

(f) The top margin may contain in the left-hand corner an indication of the applicant's file reference, provided that the reference appears within 1.5 cm from the top of the sheet.

The number of characters in the applicant's file reference shall not exceed the maximum fixed by the Administrative Instructions.

11.7 *Numbering of Sheets*

(a) All the sheets contained in the international application shall be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals.

(b) The numbers shall be centered at the top or bottom of the sheet, but shall not be placed in the margin.

11.8 *Numbering of Lines*

(a) It is strongly recommended to number every fifth line of each sheet of the description, and of each sheet of claims.

(b) The numbers should appear in the right half of the left margin.

11.9 *Writing of Text Matter*

(a) The request, the description, the claims and the abstract shall be typed or printed.

(b) Only graphic symbols and characters, chemical or mathematical formulae, and certain characters in the Chinese or Japanese languages may, when necessary, be written by hand or drawn.

(c) The typing shall be 1 1/2-spaced.

(d) All text matter shall be in characters the capital letters of which are not less than 0.21 cm high, and shall be in a dark, indelible color, satisfying the requirements specified in Rule 11.2.

(e) As far as the spacing of the typing and the size of the characters are concerned, paragraphs (c) and (d) shall not apply to texts in the Chinese or Japanese languages.

11.10 *Drawings, Formulae, and Tables, in Text Matter*

(a) The request, the description, the claims and the abstract shall not contain drawings.

(b) The description, the claims and the abstract may contain chemical or mathematical formulae.

(c) The description and the abstract may contain tables; any claim may contain tables only if the subject matter of the claim makes the use of tables desirable.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(d) Tables and chemical or mathematical formulae may be placed sideways on the sheet if they cannot be presented satisfactorily in an upright position thereon; sheets on which tables or chemical or mathematical formulae are presented sideways shall be so presented that the tops of the tables or formulae are at the left side of the sheet.

11.11 *Words in Drawings*

(a) The drawings shall not contain text matter, except a single word or words, when absolutely indispensable, such as "water," "steam," "open," "closed," "section on AB," and, in the case of electric circuits and block schematic or flow sheet diagrams, a few short catchwords indispensable for understanding.

(b) Any words used shall be so placed that, if translated, they may be pasted over without interfering with any lines of the drawings.

11.12 *Alterations, Etc.*

Each sheet shall be reasonably free from erasures and shall be free from alterations, overwritings, and interlineations. Non-compliance with this Rule may be authorized if the authenticity of the content is not in question and the requirements for good reproduction are not in jeopardy.

11.13 *Special Requirements for Drawings*

(a) Drawings shall be executed in durable, black, sufficiently dense and dark, uniformly thick and well-defined, lines and strokes without colorings.

(b) Cross-sections shall be indicated by oblique hatching which should not impede the clear reading of the reference signs and leading lines.

(c) The scale of the drawings and the distinctness of their graphical execution shall be such that a photographic reproduction with a linear reduction in size to two-thirds would enable all details to be distinguished without difficulty.

(d) When, in exceptional cases, the scale is given on a drawing, it shall be represented graphically.

(e) All numbers, letters and reference lines, appearing on the drawings, shall be simple and clear. Brackets, circles or inverted commas shall not be used in association with numbers and letters.

(f) All lines in the drawings shall, ordinarily, be drawn with the aid of drafting instruments.

(g) Each element of each figure shall be in proper proportion to each of the other elements in the

figure, except where the use of a different proportion is indispensable for the clarity of the figure.

(h) The height of the numbers and letters shall not be less than 0.32 cm. For the lettering of drawings, the Latin and, where customary, the Greek alphabets shall be used.

(i) The same sheet of drawings may contain several figures. Where figures on two or more sheets form in effect a single complete figure, the figures on the several sheets shall be so arranged that the complete figure can be assembled without concealing any part of any of the figures appearing on the various sheets.

(j) The different figures shall be arranged on a sheet or sheets without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated from one another. Where the figures are not arranged in an upright position, they shall be presented sideways with the top of the figures at the left side of the sheet.

(k) The different figures shall be numbered in Arabic numerals consecutively and independently of the numbering of the sheets.

(l) Reference signs not mentioned in the description shall not appear in the drawings, and vice versa.

(m) The same features, when denoted by reference signs, shall, throughout the international application, be denoted by the same signs.

(n) If the drawings contain a large number of reference signs, it is strongly recommended to attach a separate sheet listing all reference signs and the features denoted by them.

11.14 *Later Documents*

Rules 10, and 11.1 to 11.13, also apply to any document - for example, corrected pages, amended claims, translations - submitted after the filing of the international application.

Rule 12

Language of the International Application and Translation for the Purpose of International Search

12.1 *Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications*

(a) An international application shall be filed in any language which the receiving Office accepts for that purpose.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(b) Each receiving Office shall, for the filing of international applications, accept at least one language which is both:

(i) a language accepted by the International Searching Authority, or, if applicable, by at least one of the International Searching Authorities, competent for the international searching of international applications filed with that receiving Office, and

(ii) a language of publication.

(iii) *[Deleted]*

(c) Notwithstanding paragraph (a), the request shall be filed in a language which is both a language accepted by the receiving Office under that paragraph and a language of publication.

(d) Notwithstanding paragraph (a), any text matter contained in the sequence listing part of the description referred to in Rule 5.2(a) shall be presented in accordance with the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions.

12.2 *Language of Changes in the International Application*

(a) Any amendment of the international application shall, subject to Rules 46.3, 55.3 and 66.9, be in the language in which the application is filed.

(b) Any rectification under Rule 91.1 of an obvious error in the international application shall be in the language in which the application is filed, provided that:

(i) where a translation of the international application is required under Rule 12.3(a), 48.3(b) or 55.2(a), rectifications referred to in Rule 91.1(e)(ii) and (iii) shall be filed in both the language of the application and the language of that translation;

(ii) where a translation of the request is required under Rule 26.3^{ter}(c), rectifications referred to in Rule 91.1(e)(i) need only be filed in the language of that translation.

(c) Any correction under Rule 26 of a defect in the international application shall be in the language in which the international application is filed. Any correction under Rule 26 of a defect in a translation of the international application furnished under Rule 12.3 or 55.2(a), or in a translation of the request furnished under Rule 26.3^{ter}(c), shall be in the language of the translation.

12.3 *Translation for the Purposes of International Search*

(a) Where the language in which the international application is filed is not accepted by the International Searching Authority that is to carry out the international search, the applicant shall, within one month from the date of receipt of the international application by the receiving Office, furnish to that Office a translation of the international application into a language which is all of the following:

(i) a language accepted by that Authority, and

(ii) a language of publication, and

(iii) a language accepted by the receiving Office under Rule 12.1(a), unless the international application is filed in a language of publication.

(b) Paragraph (a) shall not apply to the request nor to any sequence listing part of the description.

(c) Where, by the time the receiving Office sends to the applicant the notification under Rule 20.5(c), the applicant has not furnished a translation required under paragraph (a), the receiving Office shall, preferably together with that notification, invite the applicant:

(i) to furnish the required translation within the time limit under paragraph (a);

(ii) in the event that the required translation is not furnished within the time limit under paragraph (a), to furnish it and to pay, where applicable, the late furnishing fee referred to in paragraph (e), within one month from the date of the invitation or two months from the date of receipt of the international application by the receiving Office, whichever expires later.

(d) Where the receiving Office has sent to the applicant an invitation under paragraph (c) and the applicant has not, within the applicable time limit under paragraph (c)(ii), furnished the required translation and paid any required late furnishing fee, the international application shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare. Any translation and any payment received by the receiving Office before that Office makes the declaration under the previous sentence and before the expiration of 15 months from the priority date shall be considered to have been received before the expiration of that time limit.

(e) The furnishing of a translation after the expiration of the time limit under paragraph (a) may

be subjected by the receiving Office to the payment to it, for its own benefit, of a late furnishing fee equal to 50% of the basic fee.

Rule 13

Unity of Invention

13.1 Requirement

The international application shall relate to one invention only or to a group of inventions so linked as to form a single general inventive concept ("requirement of unity of invention").

13.2 Circumstances in Which the Requirement of Unity of Invention Is to Be Considered Fulfilled

Where a group of inventions is claimed in one and the same international application, the requirement of unity of invention referred to in Rule 13.1 shall be fulfilled only when there is a technical relationship among those inventions involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features. The expression "special technical features" shall mean those technical features that define a contribution which each of the claimed inventions, considered as a whole, makes over the prior art.

13.3 Determination of Unity of Invention Not Affected Manner of Claiming

The determination whether a group of inventions is so linked as to form a single general inventive concept shall be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

13.4 Dependent Claims

Subject to Rule 13.1, it shall be permitted to include in the same international application a reasonable number of dependent claims, claiming specific forms of the invention claimed in an independent claim, even where the features of any dependent claim could be considered as constituting in themselves an invention.

13.5 Utility Models

Any designated State in which the grant of a utility model is sought on the basis of an international application may, instead of Rules 13.1 to 13.4, apply in respect of the matters regulated in those Rules the provisions of its national law concerning utility mod-

els once the processing of the international application has started in that State, provided that the applicant shall be allowed at least two months from the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22 to adapt his application to the requirements of the said provisions of the national law.

Rule 13^{bis}

Inventions Relating to Biological Material

13^{bis}.1 Definition

For the purposes of this Rule, "reference to a deposited biological material" means particulars given in an international application with respect to the deposit of biological material with a depositary institution or to the biological material so deposited.

13^{bis}.2 References (General)

Any reference to deposited biological material shall be made in accordance with this Rule and, if so made, shall be considered as satisfying the requirements of the national law of each designated State.

13^{bis}.3 References: Contents; Failure to Include Reference or Indication

(a) A reference to deposited biological material shall indicate:

- (i) the name and address of the depositary institution with which the deposit was made;
- (ii) the date of deposit of the biological material with that institution;
- (iii) the accession number given to the deposit by that institution; and

(iv) any additional matter of which the International Bureau has been notified pursuant to Rule 13^{bis}.7(a)(i), provided that the requirement to indicate that matter was published in the Gazette in accordance with Rule 13^{bis}.7(c) at least two months before the filing of the international application.

(b) Failure to include a reference to deposited biological material or failure to include, in a reference to deposited biological material, an indication in accordance with paragraph (a), shall have no consequence in any designated State whose national law does not require such reference or such indication in a national application.

13^{bis}.4 References: Time Limit for Furnishing Indications

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) and (c), if any of the indications referred to in Rule 13^{bis}.3(a) is not included in a reference to deposited biological material in the international application as filed but is furnished to the International Bureau:

(i) within 16 months from the priority date, the indication shall be considered by any designated Office to have been furnished in time;

(ii) after the expiration of 16 months from the priority date, the indication shall be considered by any designated Office to have been furnished on the last day of that time limit if it reaches the International Bureau before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

(b) If the national law applicable by a designated Office so requires in respect of national applications, that Office may require that any of the indications referred to in Rule 13^{bis}.3(a) be furnished earlier than 16 months from the priority date, provided that the International Bureau has been notified of such requirement pursuant to Rule 13^{bis}.7(a)(ii) and has published such requirement in the Gazette in accordance with Rule 13^{bis}.7(c) at least two months before the filing of the international application.

(c) Where the applicant makes a request for early publication under Article 21(2)(b), any designated Office may consider any indication not furnished before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed as not having been furnished in time.

(d) The International Bureau shall notify the applicant of the date on which it received any indication furnished under paragraph (a), and

(i) if the indication was received before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed, indicate that date, and include the relevant data from the indication, in the pamphlet published under Rule 48;

(ii) if the indication was received after the technical preparations for international publication have been completed, notify that date and the relevant data from the indication to the designated Offices.

13^{bis}.5 References and Indications for the Purposes of One or More Designated States; Different Deposits for Different Designated States; Deposits with Depositary Institutions Other Than Those Notified

(a) A reference to deposited biological material shall be considered to be made for the purposes of all designated States, unless it is expressly made for the purposes of certain of the designated States only; the same applies to the indications included in the reference.

(b) References to different deposits of the biological material may be made for different designated States.

(c) Any designated Office may disregard a deposit made with a depositary institution other than one notified by it under Rule 13^{bis}.7(b).

13^{bis}.6 Furnishing of Samples

Pursuant to Articles 23 and 40, no furnishing of samples of the deposited biological material to which a reference is made in an international application shall, except with the authorization of the applicant, take place before the expiration of the applicable time limits after which national processing may start under the said Articles. However, where the applicant performs the acts referred to in Articles 22 or 39 after international publication but before the expiration of the said time limits, the furnishing of samples of the deposited biological material may take place, once the said acts have been performed. Notwithstanding the previous provision, the furnishing of samples of the deposited biological material may take place under the national law applicable by any designated Office as soon as, under that law, the international publication has the effects of the compulsory national publication of an unexamined national application.

13^{bis}.7 National Requirements: Notification and Publication

(a) Any national Office may notify the International Bureau of any requirement of the national law:

(i) that any matter specified in the notification, in addition to those referred to in Rule 13^{bis}.3(a)(i), (ii) and (iii), is required to be included in a reference to deposited biological material in a national application;

(ii) that one or more of the indications referred to in Rule 13^{bis}.3(a) are required to be included in a national application as filed or are required to be furnished at a time specified in the notification which is earlier than 16 months after the priority date.

(b) Each national Office shall notify the International Bureau of the depositary institutions with which the national law permits deposits of biological materials to be made for the purposes of patent procedure before that Office or, if the national law does not provide for or permit such deposits, of that fact.

(c) The International Bureau shall promptly publish in the Gazette requirements notified to it under paragraph (a) and information notified to it under paragraph (b).

Rule 13^{ter}

Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Listings

13^{ter}.1 *Sequence Listing for International Authorities*

(a) Where the International Searching Authority finds that the international application contains disclosure of one or more nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences but:

(i) the international application does not contain a sequence listing complying with the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions, that Authority may invite the applicant to furnish to it, within a time limit fixed in the invitation, a sequence listing complying with that standard;

(ii) the applicant has not already furnished a sequence listing in computer readable form complying with the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions, that Authority may invite the applicant to furnish to it, within a time limit fixed in the invitation, a sequence listing in such a form complying with that standard.

(b) *[Deleted]*

(c) If the applicant does not comply with an invitation under paragraph (a) within the time limit fixed in the invitation, the International Searching Authority shall not be required to search the international application to the extent that such noncompliance has the result that a meaningful search cannot be carried out.

(d) Where the International Searching Authority finds that the description does not comply with

Rule 5.2(b), it shall invite the applicant to file the required correction. Rule 26.4 shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to any correction offered by the applicant. The International Searching Authority shall transmit the correction to the receiving Office and to the International Bureau.

(e) Paragraphs (a) and (c) shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to the procedure before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(f) Any sequence listing not contained in the international application as filed shall not, subject to Article 34, form part of the international application.

13^{ter}.2 *Sequence Listing for Designated Office*

Once the processing of the international application has started before a designated Office, Rule 13^{ter}.1(a) shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to the procedure before that Office. No designated Office shall require the applicant to furnish to it a sequence listing other than a sequence listing complying with the standard provided for in the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 14

The Transmittal Fee

14.1 *The Transmittal Fee*

(a) Any receiving Office may require that the applicant pay a fee to it, for its own benefit, for receiving the international application, transmitting copies to the International Bureau and the competent International Searching Authority, and performing all the other tasks which it must perform in connection with the international application in its capacity of receiving Office ("transmittal fee").

(b) The amount of the transmittal fee, if any, shall be fixed by the receiving Office.

(c) The transmittal fee shall be paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application. The amount payable shall be the amount applicable on that date of receipt.

Rule 15

The International Fee

15.1 *Basic Fee and Designation Fee*

Each international application shall be subject to the payment of a fee for the benefit of the International Bureau ("international fee") to be collected by the receiving Office and consisting of,

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(i) a "basic fee," and

(ii) as many "designation fees" as there are national patents and regional patents sought under Rule 4.9(a), except that, where Article 44 applies in respect of a designation, only one designation fee shall be due for that designation, and that the Schedule of Fees may indicate a maximum number of designation fees payable.

15.2 Amounts

(a) The amounts of the basic fee and of the designation fee are as set out in the Schedule of Fees.

(b) The basic fee and the designation fee shall be payable in the currency or one of the currencies prescribed by the receiving Office ("prescribed currency"), it being understood that, when transferred by the receiving Office to the International Bureau, they shall be freely convertible into Swiss currency. The amounts of the basic fee and of the designation fee shall be established, for each receiving Office which prescribes the payment of those fees in any currency other than Swiss currency, by the Director General after consultation with the receiving Office of, or acting under Rule 19.1(b) for, the State whose official currency is the same as the prescribed currency. The amounts so established shall be the equivalents, in round figures, of the amounts in Swiss currency set out in the Schedule of Fees. They shall be notified by the International Bureau to each receiving Office prescribing payment in that prescribed currency and shall be published in the Gazette.

(c) Where the amounts of the fees set out in the Schedule of Fees are changed, the corresponding amounts in the prescribed currencies shall be applied from the same date as the amounts set out in the amended Schedule of Fees.

(d) Where the exchange rate between Swiss currency and any prescribed currency becomes different from the exchange rate last applied, the Director General shall establish new amounts in the prescribed currency according to directives given by the Assembly. The newly established amounts shall become applicable two months after the date of their publication in the Gazette, provided that the receiving Office referred to in the second sentence of paragraph (b) and the Director General may agree on a date falling during the said two-month period, in which case the said amounts shall become applicable from that date.

15.3 [Deleted]

15.4 Time Limit for Payment; Amount Payable

(a) The basic fee shall be paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application. The amount payable shall be the amount applicable on that date of receipt.

(b) The designation fee shall be paid within a time limit of:

(i) one year from the priority date, or

(ii) one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that one-month period expires later than one year from the priority date.

(c) Where the designation fee is paid before the expiration of one month from the date of receipt of the international application, the amount payable shall be the amount applicable on that date of receipt. Where the time limit under paragraph (b)(i) applies and the designation fee is paid before the expiration of that time limit but later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application, the amount payable shall be the amount applicable on the date of payment.

15.5 Fees Under Rule 4.9(c)

(a) Notwithstanding Rule 15.4(b), the confirmation under Rule 4.9(c) of any designations made under Rule 4.9(b) shall be subject to the payment to the receiving Office of as many designation fees (for the benefit of the International Bureau) as there are national patents and regional patents sought by the applicant by virtue of the confirmation, together with a confirmation fee (for the benefit of the receiving Office) equal to 50% of the sum of the designation fees payable under this paragraph. Such fees shall be payable in respect of each designation so confirmed, even if the maximum number of designation fees referred to in item 2(a) of the Schedule of Fees is already payable or if a designation fee is already payable in respect of the designation under Rule 4.9(a) of the same State for a different purpose.

(b) Where moneys paid by the applicant within the time limit under Rule 4.9(b)(ii) are not sufficient to cover the fees due under paragraph (a), the receiving Office shall allocate any moneys paid as specified by the applicant or, in the absence of such specification, as prescribed by the Administrative Instructions.

15.6 *Refund*

The receiving Office shall refund the international fee to the applicant:

- (i) if the determination under Article 11(1) is negative,
- (ii) if, before the transmittal of the record copy to the International Bureau, the international application is withdrawn or considered withdrawn, or
- (iii) if, due to prescriptions concerning national security, the international application is not treated as such.

Rule 16

The Search Fee

16.1 *Right to Ask for a Fee*

(a) Each International Searching Authority may require that the applicant pay a fee ("search fee") for its own benefit for carrying out the international search and for performing all other tasks entrusted to International Searching Authorities by the Treaty and these Regulations.

(b) The search fee shall be collected by the receiving Office. The said fee shall be payable in the currency or one of the currencies prescribed by that Office ("receiving Office currency"), it being understood that, if any receiving Office currency is not that, or one of those, in which the International Searching Authority has fixed the said fee ("fixed currency"), it shall, when transferred by the receiving Office to the International Searching Authority, be freely convertible into the currency of the State in which the International Searching Authority has its headquarters ("headquarters currency"). The amount of the search fee in any receiving Office currency, other than the fixed currency, shall be established by the Director General after consultation with the receiving Office of, or acting under Rule 19.1(b) for, the State whose official currency is the same as the receiving Office currency. The amounts so established shall be the equivalents, in round figures, of the amount established by the International Searching Authority in the headquarters currency. They shall be notified by the International Bureau to each receiving Office prescribing payment in that receiving Office currency and shall be published in the Gazette.

(c) Where the amount of the search fee in the headquarters currency is changed, the corresponding

amounts in the receiving Office currencies, other than the fixed currency or currencies, shall be applied from the same date as the changed amount in the headquarters currency.

(d) Where the exchange rate between the headquarters currency and any receiving Office currency, other than the fixed currency or currencies, becomes different from the exchange rate last applied, the Director General shall establish the new amount in the said receiving Office currency according to directives given by the Assembly. The newly established amount shall become applicable two months after its publication in the Gazette, provided that any receiving Office referred to in the third sentence of paragraph (b) and the Director General may agree on a date falling during the said two-month period, in which case the said amount shall become applicable for that Office from that date.

(e) Where, in respect of the payment of the search fee in a receiving Office currency, other than the fixed currency or currencies, the amount actually received by the International Searching Authority in the headquarters currency is less than that fixed by it, the difference will be paid to the International Searching Authority by the International Bureau, whereas, if the amount actually received is more, the difference will belong to the International Bureau.

(f) As to the time limit for payment of the search fee and the amount payable, the provisions of Rule 15.4(a) relating to the basic fee shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

16.2 *Refund*

The receiving Office shall refund the search fee to the applicant:

- (i) if the determination under Article 11(1) is negative,
- (ii) if, before the transmittal of the search copy to the International Searching Authority, the international application is withdrawn or considered withdrawn, or
- (iii) if, due to prescriptions concerning national security, the international application is not treated as such.

16.3 *Partial Refund*

Where the international application claims the priority of an earlier international application which has been the subject of an international search by the

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

same International Searching Authority, that Authority shall refund the search fee paid in connection with the later international application to the extent and under the conditions provided for in the agreement under Article 16(3)(b), if the international search report on the later international application could wholly or partly be based on the results of the international search effected on the earlier international application.

Rule 16^{bis}

Extension of Time Limits for Payment of Fees

16^{bis}.1 *Invitation by the Receiving Office*

(a) Where, by the time they are due under Rules 14.1(c), 15.4(a) and 16.1(f), the receiving Office finds that no fees were paid to it, or that the amount paid to it is insufficient to cover the transmittal fee, the basic fee and the search fee, the receiving Office shall invite the applicant to pay to it the amount required to cover those fees, together with, where applicable, the late payment fee under Rule 16^{bis}.2, within a time limit of one month from the date of the invitation.

(b) Where, by the time they are due under Rule 15.4(b), the receiving Office finds that no fees were paid to it, or that the amount paid to it is insufficient to cover the designation fees necessary to cover all the designations under Rule 4.9(a), the receiving Office shall invite the applicant to pay to it the amount required to cover those fees, together with, where applicable, the late payment fee under Rule 16^{bis}.2, within a time limit of one month from the date of the invitation. The amount payable in respect of any designation fee shall be the amount applicable on the last day of the one-year period from the priority date if the time limit under Rule 15.4(b)(i) applies or the amount applicable on the date of receipt of the international application if the time limit under Rule 15.4(b)(ii) applies.

(c) Where the receiving Office has sent to the applicant an invitation under paragraph (a) or (b) and the applicant has not, within the time limit referred to in that paragraph, paid in full the amount due, including, where applicable, the late payment fee under Rule 16^{bis}.2, the receiving Office shall, subject to paragraph (d):

(i) allocate any moneys paid as specified by the applicant or, in the absence of such specification, as prescribed by the Administrative Instructions,

(ii) make the applicable declaration under Article 14(3), and

(iii) proceed as provided in Rule 29.

(d) Any payment received by the receiving Office before that Office sends the invitation under paragraph (a) or (b) shall be considered to have been received before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 14.1(c), 15.4(a) or (b) or 16.1(f), as the case may be.

(e) Any payment received by the receiving Office before that Office makes the applicable declaration under Article 14(3) shall be considered to have been received before the expiration of the time limit referred to in paragraph (a) or (b).

16^{bis}.2 *Late Payment Fee*

(a) The payment of fees in response to an invitation under Rule 16^{bis}.1(a) or (b) may be subjected by the receiving Office to the payment to it, for its own benefit, of a late payment fee. The amount of that fee shall be:

(i) 50% of the amount of unpaid fees which is specified in the invitation, or,

(ii) if the amount calculated under item (i) is less than the transmittal fee, an amount equal to the transmittal fee.

(b) The amount of the late payment fee shall not, however, exceed the amount of the basic fee referred to in item 1 (a) of the Schedule of Fees.

Rule 17

The Priority Document

17.1 *Obligation to Submit Copy of Earlier National or International Application*

(a) Where the priority of an earlier national or international application is claimed under Article 8, a copy of that earlier application, certified by the authority with which it was filed ("the priority document"), shall, unless already filed with the receiving Office together with the international application in which the priority claim is made, and subject to paragraph (b), be submitted by the applicant to the International Bureau or to the receiving Office not later than 16 months after the priority date, provided that

any copy of the said earlier application which is received by the International Bureau after the expiration of that time limit shall be considered to have been received by that Bureau on the last day of that time limit if it reaches it before the date of international publication of the international application.

(b) Where the priority document is issued by the receiving Office, the applicant may, instead of submitting the priority document, request the receiving Office to prepare and transmit the priority document to the International Bureau. Such request shall be made not later than 16 months after the priority date and may be subjected by the receiving Office to the payment of a fee.

(c) If the requirements of neither of the two preceding paragraphs are complied with, any designated State may disregard the priority claim, provided that no designated Office shall disregard the priority claim before giving the applicant an opportunity to furnish the priority document within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances.

17.2 Availability of Copies

(a) Where the applicant has complied with Rule 17.1(a) or (b), the International Bureau shall, at the specific request of the designated Office, promptly but not prior to the international publication of the international application, furnish a copy of the priority document to that Office. No such Office shall ask the applicant himself to furnish it with a copy. The applicant shall not be required to furnish a translation to the designated Office before the expiration of the applicable time limit under Article 22. Where the applicant makes an express request to the designated Office under Article 23(2) prior to the international publication of the international application, the International Bureau shall, at the specific request of the designated Office, furnish a copy of the priority document to that Office promptly after receiving it.

(b) The International Bureau shall not make copies of the priority document available to the public prior to the international publication of the international application.

(c) Where the international application has been published under Article 21, the International Bureau shall furnish a copy of the priority document to any person upon request and subject to reimbursement of the cost unless, prior to that publication:

(i) the international application was withdrawn,

(ii) the relevant priority claim was withdrawn or considered, under Rule 26^{bis}.2(b), not to have been made.

(iii) [Deleted]

(d) [Deleted]

Rule 18

The Applicant

18.1 Residence and Nationality

(a) Subject to the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c), the question whether an applicant is a resident or national of the Contracting State of which he claims to be a resident or national shall depend on the national law of that State and shall be decided by the receiving Office.

(b) In any case,

(i) possession of a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a Contracting State shall be considered residence in that State, and

(ii) a legal entity constituted according to the national law of a Contracting State shall be considered a national of that State.

(c) Where the international application is filed with the International Bureau as receiving Office, the International Bureau shall, in the circumstances specified in the Administrative Instructions, request the national Office of, or acting for, the Contracting State concerned to decide the question referred to in paragraph (a). The International Bureau shall inform the applicant of any such request. The applicant shall have an opportunity to submit arguments directly to the national Office. The national Office shall decide the said question promptly.

18.2 [Deleted]

18.3 Two or More Applicants

If there are two or more applicants, the right to file an international application shall exist if at least one of them is entitled to file an international application according to Article 9.

18.4 Information on Requirements Under National Law as to Applicants

(a) and (b) [Deleted]

(c) The International Bureau shall, from time to time, publish information on the various national laws

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

in respect of the question who is qualified (inventor, successor in title of the inventor, owner of the invention, or other) to file a national application and shall accompany such information by a warning that the effect of the international application in any designated State may depend on whether the person designated in the international application as applicant for the purposes of that State is a person who, under the national law of that State, is qualified to file a national application.

Rule 19

The Competent Receiving Office

19.1 *Where to File*

(a) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b), the international application shall be filed, at the option of the applicant,

(i) with the national Office of or acting for the Contracting State of which the applicant is a resident,

(ii) or with the national Office of or acting for the Contracting State of which the applicant is a national, or

(iii) irrespective of the Contracting State of which the applicant is a resident or national, with the International Bureau.

(b) Any Contracting State may agree with another Contracting State or any intergovernmental organization that the national Office of the latter State or the intergovernmental organization shall, for all or some purposes, act instead of the national Office of the former State as receiving Office for applicants who are residents or nationals of that former State. Notwithstanding such agreement, the national Office of the former State shall be considered the competent receiving Office for the purposes of Article 15(5).

(c) In connection with any decision made under Article 9(2), the Assembly shall appoint the national Office or the intergovernmental organization which will act as receiving Office for applications of residents or nationals of States specified by the Assembly. Such appointment shall require the previous consent of the said national Office or intergovernmental organization.

19.2 *Two or More Applicants*

If there are two or more applicants,

(i) the requirements of Rule 19.1 shall be considered to be met if the national Office with which the international application is filed is the national Office of or acting for a Contracting State of which at least one of the applicants is a resident or national;

(ii) the international application may be filed with the International Bureau under Rule 19.1(a)(iii) if at least one of the applicants is a resident or national of a Contracting State.

19.3 *Publication of Fact of Delegation of Duties of Receiving Office*

(a) Any agreement referred to in Rule 19.1(b) shall be promptly notified to the International Bureau by the Contracting State which delegates the duties of the receiving Office to the national Office of or acting for another Contracting State or an intergovernmental organization.

(b) The International Bureau shall, promptly upon receipt, publish the notification in the Gazette.

19.4 *Transmittal to the International Bureau as Receiving Office*

(a) Where an international application is filed with a national Office which acts as a receiving Office under the Treaty but

(i) that national Office is not competent under Rule 19.1 or 19.2 to receive that international application, or

(ii) that international application is not in a language accepted under Rule 12.1(a) by that national Office but is in a language accepted under that Rule by the International Bureau as receiving Office, or

(iii) that national Office and the International Bureau agree, for any reason other than those specified under items (i) and (ii), and with the authorization of the applicant, that the procedure under this Rule should apply, that international application shall, subject to paragraph (b), be considered to have been received by that Office on behalf of the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii).

(b) Where, pursuant to paragraph (a), an international application is received by a national Office on behalf of the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii), that national Office shall, unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the international application from being

so transmitted, promptly transmit it to the International Bureau. Such transmittal may be subjected by the national Office to the payment of a fee, for its own benefit, equal to the transmittal fee charged by that Office under Rule 14. The international application so transmitted shall be considered to have been received by the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii) on the date of receipt of the international application by that national Office.

(c) For the purposes of Rules 14.1(c), 15.4(a) to (c) and 16.1(f), where the international application was transmitted to the International Bureau under paragraph (b), the date of receipt of the international application shall be considered to be the date on which the international application was actually received by the International Bureau. For the purposes of this paragraph, the last sentence of paragraph (b) shall not apply.

Rule 20

Receipt of the International Application

20.1 Date and Number

(a) Upon receipt of papers purporting to be an international application, the receiving Office shall indelibly mark the date of actual receipt on the request of each copy received and the international application number on each sheet of each copy received.

(b) The place on each sheet where the date or number shall be marked, and other details, shall be specified in the Administrative Instructions.

20.2 Receipt on Different Days

(a) In cases where all the sheets pertaining to the same purported international application are not received on the same day by the receiving Office, that Office shall correct the date marked on the request (still leaving legible, however, the earlier date or dates already marked) so that it indicates the day on which the papers completing the international application were received, provided that

(i) where no invitation under Article 11(2)(a) to correct was sent to the applicant, the said papers are received within 30 days from the date on which sheets were first received;

(ii) where an invitation under Article 11(2)(a) to correct was sent to the applicant, the said papers are received within the applicable time limit under Rule 20.6;

(iii) in the case of Article 14(2), the missing drawings are received within 30 days from the date on which the incomplete papers were filed;

(iv) the absence or later receipt of any sheet containing the abstract or part thereof shall not, in itself, require any correction of the date marked on the request.

(b) Any sheet received on a date later than the date on which sheets were first received shall be marked by the receiving Office with the date on which it was received.

20.3 Corrected International Application

In the case referred to in Article 11(2)(b), the receiving Office shall correct the date marked on the request (still leaving legible, however, the earlier date or dates already marked) so that it indicates the day on which the last required correction was received.

20.3^{bis} [Deleted]

20.4 Determination Under Article 11(1)

(a) Promptly after receipt of the papers purporting to be an international application, the receiving Office shall determine whether the papers comply with the requirements of Article 11(1).

(b) For the purposes of Article 11(1)(iii)(c), it shall be sufficient to indicate the name of the applicant in a way which allows his identity to be established even if the name is misspelled, the given names are not fully indicated, or, in the case of legal entities, the indication of the name is abbreviated or incomplete.

(c) For the purposes of Article 11(1)(ii), it shall be sufficient that the part which appears to be a description (other than any sequence listing part thereof) and the part which appears to be a claim or claims be in a language accepted by the receiving Office under Rule 12.1(a).

(d) If, on October 1, 1997, paragraph (c) is not compatible with the national law applied by the receiving Office, paragraph (c) shall not apply to that receiving Office for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by December 31, 1997. The information received shall

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

20.5 *Positive Determination*

(a) If the determination under Article 11(1) is positive, the receiving Office shall stamp on the request the name of the receiving Office and the words "PCT International Application," or "Demande internationale PCT." If the official language of the receiving Office is neither English nor French, the words "International Application" or "Demande internationale" may be accompanied by a translation of these words in the official language of the receiving Office.

(b) The copy whose request has been so stamped shall be the record copy of the international application.

(c) The receiving Office shall promptly notify the applicant of the international application number and the international filing date. At the same time, it shall send to the International Bureau a copy of the notification sent to the applicant, except where it has already sent, or is sending at the same time, the record copy to the International Bureau under Rule 22.1(a).

20.6 *Invitation to Correct*

(a) The invitation to correct under Article 11(2) shall specify the requirement provided for under Article 11(1) which, in the opinion of the receiving Office, has not been fulfilled.

(b) The receiving Office shall promptly mail the invitation to the applicant and shall fix a time limit, reasonable under the circumstances of the case, for filing the correction. The time limit shall not be less than 10 days, and shall not exceed one month, from the date of the invitation. If such time limit expires after the expiration of one year from the filing date of any application whose priority is claimed, the receiving Office may call this circumstance to the attention of the applicant.

20.7 *Negative Determination*

If the receiving Office does not, within the prescribed time limit, receive a reply to its invitation to correct, or if the correction offered by the applicant

still does not fulfill the requirements provided for under Article 11(1), it shall:

(i) promptly notify the applicant that his application is not and will not be treated as an international application and shall indicate the reasons therefor,

(ii) notify the International Bureau that the number it has marked on the papers will not be used as an international application number,

(iii) keep the papers constituting the purported international application and any correspondence relating thereto as provided in Rule 93.1, and

(iv) send a copy of the said papers to the International Bureau where, pursuant to a request by the applicant under Article 25(1), the International Bureau needs such a copy and specially asks for it.

20.8 *Error by the Receiving Office*

If the receiving Office later discovers, or on the basis of the applicant's reply realizes, that it has erred in issuing an invitation to correct since the requirements provided for under Article 11(1) were fulfilled when the papers were received, it shall proceed as provided in Rule 20.5.

20.9 *Certified Copy for the Applicant*

Against payment of a fee, the receiving Office shall furnish to the applicant, on request, certified copies of the international application as filed and of any corrections thereto.

Rule 21

Preparation of Copies

21.1 *Responsibility of the Receiving Office*

(a) Where the international application is required to be filed in one copy, the receiving Office shall be responsible for preparing the home copy and the search copy required under Article 12(1).

(b) Where the international application is required to be filed in two copies, the receiving Office shall be responsible for preparing the home copy.

(c) If the international application is filed in less than the number of copies required under Rule 11.1(b), the receiving Office shall be responsible for the prompt preparation of the number of copies required, and shall have the right to fix a fee for performing that task and to collect such fee from the applicant.

Rule 22

Transmittal of the Record Copy

22.1 Procedure

(a) If the determination under Article 11(1) is positive, and unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the international application from being treated as such, the receiving Office shall transmit the record copy to the International Bureau. Such transmittal shall be effected promptly after receipt of the international application or, if a check to preserve national security must be performed, as soon as the necessary clearance has been obtained. In any case, the receiving Office shall transmit the record copy in time for it to reach the International Bureau by the expiration of the 13th month from the priority date. If the transmittal is effected by mail, the receiving Office shall mail the record copy not later than five days prior to the expiration of the 13th month from the priority date.

(b) If the International Bureau has received a copy of the notification under Rule 20.5(c) but is not, by the expiration of 13 months from the priority date, in possession of the record copy, it shall remind the receiving Office that it should transmit the record copy to the International Bureau promptly.

(c) If the International Bureau has received a copy of the notification under Rule 20.5(c) but is not, by the expiration of 14 months from the priority date, in possession of the record copy, it shall notify the applicant and the receiving Office accordingly.

(d) After the expiration of 14 months from the priority date, the applicant may request the receiving Office to certify a copy of his international application as being identical with the international application as filed and may transmit such certified copy to the International Bureau.

(e) Any certification under paragraph (d) shall be free of charge and may be refused only on any of the following grounds:

- (i) the copy which the receiving Office has been requested to certify is not identical with the international application as filed;
- (ii) prescriptions concerning national security prevent the international application from being treated as such;
- (iii) the receiving Office has already transmitted the record copy to the International Bureau and

that Bureau has informed the receiving Office that it has received the record copy.

(f) Unless the International Bureau has received the record copy, or until it receives the record copy, the copy certified under paragraph (e) and received by the International Bureau shall be considered to be the record copy.

(g) If, by the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22, the applicant has performed the acts referred to in that Article but the designated Office has not been informed by the International Bureau of the receipt of the record copy, the designated Office shall inform the International Bureau. If the International Bureau is not in possession of the record copy, it shall promptly notify the applicant and the receiving Office unless it has already notified them under paragraph (c).

(h) Where the international application is to be published in the language of a translation furnished under Rule 12.3, that translation shall be transmitted by the receiving Office to the International Bureau together with the record copy under paragraph (a) or, if the receiving Office has already transmitted the record copy to the International Bureau under that paragraph, promptly after receipt of the translation.

22.2 [Deleted]

22.3 Time Limit Under Article 12(3)

The time limit referred to in Article 12(3) shall be three months from the date of the notification sent by the International Bureau to the applicant under Rule 22.1(c) or (g).

Rule 23

**Transmittal of the Search Copy,
Translation and Sequence Listing**

23.1 Procedure

(a) Where no translation of the international application is required under Rule 12.3(a), the search copy shall be transmitted by the receiving Office to the International Searching Authority at the latest on the same day as the record copy is transmitted to the International Bureau unless no search fee has been paid. In the latter case, it shall be transmitted promptly after payment of the search fee.

(b) Where a translation of the international application is furnished under Rule 12.3, a copy of

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

that translation and of the request, which together shall be considered to be the search copy under Article 12(1), shall be transmitted by the receiving Office to the International Searching Authority, unless no search fee has been paid. In the latter case, a copy of the said translation and of the request shall be transmitted promptly after payment of the search fee.

(c) Any sequence listing in computer readable form which is furnished to the receiving Office shall be transmitted by that Office to the International Searching Authority.

Rule 24

Receipt of the Record Copy by the International Bureau

24.1 *[Deleted]*

24.2 *Notification of Receipt of the Record Copy*

(a) The International Bureau shall promptly notify:

- (i) the applicant,
- (ii) the receiving Office, and
- (iii) the International Searching Authority

(unless it has informed the International Bureau that it wishes not to be so notified), of the fact and the date of receipt of the record copy. The notification shall identify the international application by its number, the international filing date and the name of the applicant, and shall indicate the filing date of any earlier application whose priority is claimed. The notification sent to the applicant shall also contain a list of the States designated under Rule 4.9(a) and, where applicable, of those States whose designations have been confirmed under Rule 4.9(c).

(b) Each designated Office which has informed the International Bureau that it wishes to receive the notification under paragraph (a) prior to the communication under Rule 47.1 shall be so notified by the International Bureau:

- (i) if the designation concerned was made under Rule 4.9(a), promptly after the receipt of the record copy;
- (ii) if the designation concerned was made under Rule 4.9(b), promptly after the International Bureau has been informed by the receiving Office of the confirmation of that designation.

(c) If the record copy is received after the expiration of the time limit fixed in Rule 22.3, the Interna-

tional Bureau shall promptly notify the applicant, the receiving Office, and the International Searching Authority, accordingly.

Rule 25

Receipt of the Search Copy by the International Searching Authority

25.1 *Notification of Receipt of the Search Copy*

The International Searching Authority shall promptly notify the International Bureau, the applicant, and - unless the International Searching Authority is the same as the receiving Office - the receiving Office, of the fact and the date of receipt of the search copy.

Rule 26

Checking by, and Correcting Before, the Receiving Office of Certain Elements of the International Application

26.1 *Time Limit for Check*

(a) The receiving Office shall issue the invitation to correct provided for in Article 14(1)(b) as soon as possible, preferably within one month from the receipt of the international application.

(b) If the receiving Office issues an invitation to correct the defect referred to in Article 14(1)(a)(iii) or (iv) (missing title or missing abstract), it shall notify the International Searching Authority accordingly.

26.2 *Time Limit for Correction*

The time limit referred to in Article 14(1)(b) shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in each case by the receiving Office. It shall not be less than one month from the date of the invitation to correct. It may be extended by the receiving Office at any time before a decision is taken.

26.3 *Checking of Physical Requirements Under Article 14(1)(a)(v)*

(a) Where the international application is filed in a language of publication, the receiving Office shall check:

- (i) the international application for compliance with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11 only to the extent that compliance therewith is necessary for the purpose of reasonably uniform international publication;

(ii) any translation furnished under Rule 12.3 for compliance with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11 to the extent that compliance therewith is necessary for the purpose of satisfactory reproduction.

(b) Where the international application is filed in a language which is not a language of publication, the receiving Office shall check:

(i) the international application for compliance with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11 only to the extent that compliance therewith is necessary for the purpose of satisfactory reproduction;

(ii) any translation furnished under Rule 12.3 and the drawings for compliance with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11 to the extent that compliance therewith is necessary for the purpose of reasonably uniform international publication.

26.3^{bis} *Invitation Under Article 14(1)(b) to Correct Defects Under Rule 11*

The receiving Office shall not be required to issue the invitation under Article 14(1)(b) to correct a defect under Rule 11 where the physical requirements referred to in that Rule are complied with to the extent required under Rule 26.3.

26.3^{ter} *Invitation to Correct Defects Under Article 3(4)(i)*

(a) Where the abstract or any text matter of the drawings is filed in a language which is different from the language of the description and the claims, the receiving Office shall, unless

(i) a translation of the international application is required under Rule 12.3(a), or

(ii) the abstract or the text matter of the drawings is in the language in which the international application is to be published, invite the applicant to furnish a translation of the abstract or the text matter of the drawings into the language in which the international application is to be published. Rules 26.1(a), 26.2, 26.3, 26.3^{bis}, 26.5 and 29.1 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

(b) If, on October 1, 1997, paragraph (a) is not compatible with the national law applied by the receiving Office, paragraph (a) shall not apply to that receiving Office for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by

December 31, 1997. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

(c) Where the request does not comply with Rule 12.1(c), the receiving Office shall invite the applicant to file a translation so as to comply with that Rule. Rules 3, 26.1(a), 26.2, 26.5 and 29.1 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

(d) If, on October 1, 1997, paragraph (c) is not compatible with the national law applied by the receiving Office, paragraph (c) shall not apply to that receiving Office for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by December 31, 1997. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

26.4 *Procedure*

Any correction offered to the receiving Office may be stated in a letter addressed to that Office if the correction is of such a nature that it can be transferred from the letter to the record copy without adversely affecting the clarity and the direct reproducibility of the sheet on to which the correction is to be transferred; otherwise, the applicant shall be required to submit a replacement sheet embodying the correction and the letter accompanying the replacement sheet shall draw attention to the differences between the replaced sheet and the replacement sheet.

26.5 *Decision of the Receiving Office*

The receiving Office shall decide whether the applicant has submitted the correction within the time limit under Rule 26.2 and, if the correction has been submitted within that time limit, whether the international application so corrected is or is not to be considered withdrawn, provided that no international application shall be considered withdrawn for lack of compliance with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11 if it complies with those requirements to the extent necessary for the purpose of reasonably uniform international publication.

26.6 *Missing Drawings*

(a) If, as provided in Article 14(2), the international application refers to drawings which in fact are not included in that application, the receiving Office shall so indicate in the said application.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(b) The date on which the applicant receives the notification provided for in Article 14(2) shall have no effect on the time limit fixed under Rule 20.2(a)(iii).

Rule 26^{bis}

Correction or Addition of Priority Claim

26^{bis}.1 *Correction or Addition of Priority Claim*

(a) The applicant may correct or add a priority claim by a notice submitted to the receiving Office or the International Bureau within a time limit of 16 months from the priority date or, where the correction or addition would cause a change in the priority date, 16 months from the priority date as so changed, whichever 16-month period expires first, provided that such a notice may be submitted until the expiration of four months from the international filing date. The correction of a priority claim may include the addition of any indication referred to in Rule 4.10.

(b) Any notice referred to in paragraph (a) received by the receiving Office or the International Bureau after the applicant has made a request for early publication under Article 21(2)(b) shall be considered not to have been submitted, unless that request is withdrawn before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

(c) Where the correction or addition of a priority claim causes a change in the priority date, any time limit which is computed from the previously applicable priority date and which has not already expired shall be computed from the priority date as so changed.

26^{bis}.2 *Invitation to Correct Defects in Priority Claims*

(a) Where the receiving Office or, if the receiving Office fails to do so, the International Bureau, finds that a priority claim does not comply with the requirements of Rule 4.10 or that any indication in a priority claim is not the same as the corresponding indication appearing in the priority document, the receiving Office or the International Bureau, as the case may be, shall invite the applicant to correct the priority claim.

(b) If, in response to an invitation under paragraph (a), the applicant does not, before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{bis}.1(a), submit a notice

correcting the priority claim so as to comply with the requirements of Rule 4.10, that priority claim shall, for the purposes of the procedure under the Treaty, be considered not to have been made and the receiving Office or the International Bureau, as the case may be, shall so declare and shall inform the applicant accordingly, provided that a priority claim shall not be considered not to have been made only because the indication of the number of the earlier application referred to in Rule 4.10(a)(ii) is missing or because an indication in the priority claim is not the same as the corresponding indication appearing in the priority document.

(c) Where the receiving Office or the International Bureau has made a declaration under paragraph (b), the International Bureau shall, upon request made by the applicant and received by the International Bureau prior to the completion of the technical preparations for international publication, and subject to the payment of a special fee whose amount shall be fixed in the Administrative Instructions, publish, together with the international application, information concerning the priority claim which was considered not to have been made. A copy of that request shall be included in the communication under Article 20 where a copy of the pamphlet is not used for that communication or where the international application is not published by virtue of Article 64(3).

Rule 26^{ter}

Correction or Addition of Declarations Under Rule 4.17

26^{ter}.1 *Correction or Addition of Declarations*

The applicant may correct or add to the request any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17 by a notice submitted to the International Bureau within a time limit of 16 months from the priority date, provided that any notice which is received by the International Bureau after the expiration of that time limit shall be considered to have been received on the last day of that time limit if it reaches it before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

26^{ter}.2 *Processing of Declarations*

(a) Where the receiving Office or the International Bureau finds that any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17 is not worded as required or, in the case of

the declaration of inventorship referred to in Rule 4.17(iv), is not signed as required, the receiving Office or the International Bureau, as the case may be, may invite the applicant to correct the declaration within a time limit of 16 months from the priority date.

(b) Where the International Bureau receives any declaration or correction under Rule 26^{ter}.1 after the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1, the International Bureau shall notify the applicant accordingly and shall proceed as provided for in the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 27

Lack of Payment of Fees

27.1 Fees

(a) For the purposes of Article 14(3)(a), "fees prescribed under Article 3(4)(iv)" means: the transmittal fee (Rule 14), the basic fee part of the international fee (Rule 15.1(i)), the search fee (Rule 16), and, where required, the late payment fee (Rule 16^{bis}.2).

(b) For the purposes of Article 14(3)(a) and (b), "the fee prescribed under Article 4(2)" means the designation fee part of the international fee (Rule 15.1(ii)) and, where required, the late payment fee (Rule 16^{bis}.2).

Rule 28

Defects Noted by the International Bureau

28.1 Note on Certain Defects

(a) If, in the opinion of the International Bureau, the international application contains any of the defects referred to in Article 14(1)(a)(i), (ii), or (v), the International Bureau shall bring such defects to the attention of the receiving Office.

(b) The receiving Office shall, unless it disagrees with the said opinion, proceed as provided in Article 14(1)(b) and Rule 26.

Rule 29

International Applications or Designations Considered Withdrawn

29.1 Finding by Receiving Office

(a) If the receiving Office declares, under Article 14(1)(b) and Rule 26.5 (failure to correct certain

defects), or under Article 14(3)(a) (failure to pay the prescribed fees under Rule 27.1(a)), or under Article 14(4) (later finding of non-compliance with the requirements listed in items (i) to (iii) of Article 11(1)), or under Rule 12.3(d) (failure to furnish a required translation or, where applicable, to pay a late furnishing fee), or under Rule 92.4(g)(i) (failure to furnish the original of a document), that the international application is considered withdrawn:

(i) the receiving Office shall transmit the record copy (unless already transmitted), and any correction offered by the applicant, to the International Bureau;

(ii) the receiving Office shall promptly notify both the applicant and the International Bureau of the said declaration, and the International Bureau shall in turn notify each designated Office which has already been notified of its designation;

(iii) the receiving Office shall not transmit the search copy as provided in Rule 23, or, if such copy has already been transmitted, it shall notify the International Searching Authority of the said declaration;

(iv) the International Bureau shall not be required to notify the applicant of the receipt of the record copy.

(b) If the receiving Office declares under Article 14(3)(b) (failure to pay the prescribed designation fee under Rule 27.1(b)) that the designation of any given State is considered withdrawn, the receiving Office shall promptly notify both the applicant and the International Bureau of the said declaration. The International Bureau shall in turn notify each designated Office which has already been notified of its designation.

29.2 [Deleted]

29.3 Calling Certain Facts to the Attention of the Receiving Office

If the International Bureau or the International Searching Authority considers that the receiving Office should make a finding under Article 14(4), it shall call the relevant facts to the attention of the receiving Office.

29.4 Notification of Intent to Make Declaration Under Article 14(4)

Before the receiving Office issues any declaration under Article 14(4), it shall notify the applicant of its intent to issue such declaration and the reasons there-

for. The applicant may, if he disagrees with the tentative finding of the receiving Office, submit arguments to that effect within one month from the notification.

Rule 30

Time Limit Under Article 14(4)

30.1 *Time Limit*

The time limit referred to in Article 14(4) shall be four months from the international filing date.

Rule 31

Copies Required Under Article 13

31.1 *Request for Copies*

(a) Requests under Article 13(1) may relate to all, some kinds of, or individual international applications in which the national Office making the request is designated. Requests for all or some kinds of such international applications must be renewed for each year by means of a notification addressed by that Office before November 30 of the preceding year to the International Bureau.

(b) Requests under Article 13(2)(b) shall be subject to the payment of a fee covering the cost of preparing and mailing the copy.

31.2 *Preparation of Copies*

The preparation of copies required under Article 13 shall be the responsibility of the International Bureau.

Rule 32

[Deleted]

Rule 32^{bis}

[Deleted]

Rule 33

Relevant Prior Art for the International Search

33.1 *Relevant Prior Art for the International Search*

(a) For the purposes of Article 15(2), relevant prior art shall consist of everything which has been made available to the public anywhere in the world by means of written disclosure (including drawings and other illustrations) and which is capable of being of

assistance in determining that the claimed invention is or is not new and that it does or does not involve an inventive step (i.e., that it is or is not obvious), provided that the making available to the public occurred prior to the international filing date.

(b) When any written disclosure refers to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition, or other means whereby the contents of the written disclosure were made available to the public, and such making available to the public occurred on a date prior to the international filing date, the international search report shall separately mention that fact and the date on which it occurred if the making available to the public of the written disclosure occurred on a date which is the same as, or later than, the international filing date.

(c) Any published application or any patent whose publication date is the same as, or later than, but whose filing date, or, where applicable, claimed priority date, is earlier than the international filing date of the international application searched, and which would constitute relevant prior art for the purposes of Article 15(2) had it been published prior to the international filing date, shall be specially mentioned in the international search report.

33.2 *Fields to Be Covered by the International Search*

(a) The international search shall cover all those technical fields, and shall be carried out on the basis of all those search files, which may contain material pertinent to the invention.

(b) Consequently, not only shall the art in which the invention is classifiable be searched but also analogous arts regardless of where classified.

(c) The question what arts are, in any given case, to be regarded as analogous shall be considered in the light of what appears to be the necessary essential function or use of the invention and not only the specific functions expressly indicated in the international application.

(d) The international search shall embrace all subject matter that is generally recognized as equivalent to the subject matter of the claimed invention for all or certain of its features, even though, in its specifics, the invention as described in the international application is different.

33.3 *Orientation of the International Search*

(a) International search shall be made on the basis of the claims, with due regard to the description and the drawings (if any) and with particular emphasis on the inventive concept towards which the claims are directed.

(b) In so far as possible and reasonable, the international search shall cover the entire subject matter to which the claims are directed or to which they might reasonably be expected to be directed after they have been amended.

Rule 34

Minimum Documentation

34.1 *Definition*

(a) The definitions contained in Article 2(i) and (ii) shall not apply for the purposes of this Rule.

(b) The documentation referred to in Article 15(4) ("minimum documentation") shall consist of:

(i) the "national patent documents" as specified in paragraph (c),

(ii) the published international (PCT) applications, the published regional applications for patents and inventors' certificates, and the published regional patents and inventors' certificates,

(iii) such other published items of nonpatent literature as the International Searching Authorities shall agree upon and which shall be published in a list by the International Bureau when agreed upon for the first time and whenever changed.

(c) Subject to paragraphs (d) and (e), the "national patent documents" shall be the following:

(i) the patents issued in and after 1920 by France, the former *Reichspatentamt* of Germany, Japan, the former Soviet Union, Switzerland (in French and German languages only), the United Kingdom, and the United States of America,

(ii) the patents issued by the Federal Republic of Germany and the Russian Federation,

(iii) the patent applications, if any, published in and after 1920 in the countries referred to in items (i) and (ii),

(iv) the inventors' certificates issued by the former Soviet Union,

(v) the utility certificates issued by, and the published applications for utility certificates of, France,

(vi) such patents issued by, and such patent applications published in, any other country after 1920 as are in the English, French, German, or Spanish language and in which no priority is claimed, provided that the national Office of the interested country sorts out these documents and places them at the disposal of each International Searching Authority.

(d) Where an application is republished once (for example, an *Offenlegungsschrift* as an *Auslegeschrift*) or more than once, no International Searching Authority shall be obliged to keep all versions in its documentation; consequently, each such Authority shall be entitled not to keep more than one version. Furthermore, where an application is granted and is issued in the form of a patent or a utility certificate (France), no International Searching Authority shall be obliged to keep both the application and the patent or utility certificate (France) in its documentation; consequently, each such Authority shall be entitled to keep either the application only or the patent or utility certificate (France) only.

(e) Any International Searching Authority whose official language, or one of whose official languages, is not Japanese, Russian or Spanish is entitled not to include in its documentation those patent documents of Japan, the Russian Federation and the former Soviet Union as well as those patent documents in the Spanish language, respectively, for which no abstracts in the English language are generally available. English abstracts becoming generally available after the date of entry into force of these Regulations shall require the inclusion of the patent documents to which the abstracts refer no later than six months after such abstracts become generally available. In case of the interruption of abstracting services in English in technical fields in which English abstracts were formerly generally available, the Assembly shall take appropriate measures to provide for the prompt restoration of such services in the said fields.

(f) For the purposes of this Rule, applications which have only been laid open for public inspection are not considered published applications.

Rule 35

The Competent International Searching Authority

35.1 When Only One International Searching Authority Is Competent

Each receiving Office shall, in accordance with the terms of the applicable agreement referred to in Article 16(3)(b), inform the International Bureau which International Searching Authority is competent for the searching of the international applications filed with it, and the International Bureau shall promptly publish such information.

35.2 When Several International Searching Authorities Are Competent

(a) Any receiving Office may, in accordance with the terms of the applicable agreement referred to in Article 16(3)(b), specify several International Searching Authorities:

(i) by declaring all of them competent for any international application filed with it, and leaving the choice to the applicant, or

(ii) by declaring one or more competent for certain kinds of international applications filed with it, and declaring one or more others competent for other kinds of international applications filed with it, provided that, for those kinds of international applications for which several International Searching Authorities are declared to be competent, the choice shall be left to the applicant.

(b) Any receiving Office availing itself of the faculty provided in paragraph (a) shall promptly inform the International Bureau, and the International Bureau shall promptly publish such information.

35.3 When the International Bureau Is Receiving Office Under Rule 19.1 (a)(iii)

(a) Where the international application is filed with the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii), an International Searching Authority shall be competent for the searching of that international application if it would have been competent had that international application been filed with a receiving Office competent under Rule 19.1(a)(i) or (ii), (b) or (c), or Rule 19.2(i).

(b) Where two or more International Searching Authorities are competent under paragraph (a), the choice shall be left to the applicant.

(c) Rules 35.1 and 35.2 shall not apply to the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii).

Rule 36

Minimum Requirements for International Searching Authorities

36.1 Definition of Minimum Requirements

The minimum requirements referred to in Article 16(3)(c) shall be the following:

(i) the national Office or intergovernmental organization must have at least 100 full-time employees with sufficient technical qualifications to carry out searches;

(ii) that Office or organization must have in its possession, or have access to, at least the minimum documentation referred to in Rule 34, properly arranged for search purposes, on paper, in microform or stored on electronic media;

(iii) that Office or organization must have a staff which is capable of searching the required technical fields and which has the language facilities to understand at least those languages in which the minimum documentation referred to in Rule 34 is written or is translated.

Rule 37

Missing or Defective Title

37.1 Lack of Title

If the international application does not contain a title and the receiving Office has notified the International Searching Authority that it has invited the applicant to correct such defect, the International Searching Authority shall proceed with the international search unless and until it receives notification that the said application is considered withdrawn.

37.2 Establishment of Title

If the international application does not contain a title and the International Searching Authority has not received a notification from the receiving Office to the effect that the applicant has been invited to furnish a title, or if the said Authority finds that the title does not comply with Rule 4.3, it shall itself establish a title. Such title shall be established in the language in which the international application is to be published or, if a translation into another language was transmit-

ted under Rule 23.1(b) and the International Searching Authority so wishes, in the language of that translation.

Rule 38

Missing or Defective Abstract

38.1 Lack of Abstract

If the international application does not contain an abstract and the receiving Office has notified the International Searching Authority that it has invited the applicant to correct such defect, the International Searching Authority shall proceed with the international search unless and until it receives notification that the said application is considered withdrawn.

38.2 Establishment of Abstract

(a) If the international application does not contain an abstract and the International Searching Authority has not received a notification from the receiving Office to the effect that the applicant has been invited to furnish an abstract, or if the said Authority finds that the abstract does not comply with Rule 8, it shall itself establish an abstract. Such abstract shall be established in the language in which the international application is to be published or, if a translation into another language was transmitted under Rule 23.1(b) and the International Searching Authority so wishes, in the language of that translation.

(b) The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of the international search report, submit comments on the abstract established by the International Searching Authority. Where that Authority amends the abstract established by it, it shall notify the amendment to the International Bureau.

Rule 39

Subject Matter Under Article 17(2)(a)(i)

39.1 Definition

No International Searching Authority shall be required to search an international application if, and to the extent to which, its subject matter is any of the following:

- (i) scientific and mathematical theories,
- (ii) plant or animal varieties or essentially biological processes for the production of plants and ani-

mals, other than microbiological processes and the products of such processes,

(iii) schemes, rules, or methods of doing business, performing purely mental acts or playing games,

(iv) methods for treatment of the human or animal body by surgery or therapy, as well as diagnostic methods,

(v) mere presentations of information,

(vi) computer programs to the extent that the International Searching Authority is not equipped to search prior art concerning such programs.

Rule 40

Lack of Unity of Invention (International Search)

40.1 Invitation to Pay

The invitation to pay additional fees provided for in Article 17(3)(a) shall specify the reasons for which the international application is not considered as complying with the requirement of unity of invention and shall indicate the amount to be paid.

40.2 Additional Fees

(a) The amount of the additional fee due for searching under Article 17(3)(a) shall be determined by the competent International Searching Authority.

(b) The additional fee due for searching under Article 17(3)(a) shall be payable direct to the International Searching Authority.

(c) Any applicant may pay the additional fee under protest, that is, accompanied by a reasoned statement to the effect that the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention or that the amount of the required additional fee is excessive. Such protest shall be examined by a three-member board or other special instance of the International Searching Authority or any competent higher authority, which, to the extent that it finds the protest justified, shall order the total or partial reimbursement to the applicant of the additional fee. On the request of the applicant, the text of both the protest and the decision thereon shall be notified to the designated Offices together with the international search report. The applicant shall submit any translation thereof with the furnishing of the translation of the international application required under Article 22.

(d) The three-member board, special instance or competent higher authority, referred to in para-

graph (c), shall not comprise any person who made the decision which is the subject of the protest.

(e) Where the applicant has, under paragraph (c), paid an additional fee under protest, the International Searching Authority may, after a prior review of the justification for the invitation to pay an additional fee, require that the applicant pay a fee for the examination of the protest ("protest fee"). The protest fee shall be paid within one month from the date of the notification to the applicant of the result of the review. If the protest fee is not so paid, the protest shall be considered withdrawn. The protest fee shall be refunded to the applicant where the three-member board, special instance or higher authority referred to in paragraph (c) finds that the protest was entirely justified.

40.3 *Time Limit*

The time limit provided for in Article 17(3)(a) shall be fixed, in each case, according to the circumstances of the case, by the International Searching Authority; it shall not be shorter than 15 or 30 days, respectively, depending on whether the applicant's address is in the same country as or in a different country from that in which the International Searching Authority is located, and it shall not be longer than 45 days, from the date of the invitation.

Rule 41

Earlier Search Other Than International Search

41.1 *Obligation to Use Results; Refund of Fee*

If reference has been made in the request, in the form provided for in Rule 4.11, to an international-type search carried out under the conditions set out in Article 15(5) or to a search other than an international or international-type search, the International Searching Authority shall, to the extent possible, use the results of the said search in establishing the international search report on the international application. The International Searching Authority shall refund the search fee, to the extent and under the conditions provided for in the agreement under Article 16(3)(b) or in a communication addressed to and published in the Gazette by the International Bureau, if the international search report could wholly or partly be based on the results of the said search.

Rule 42

Time Limit for International Search

42.1 *Time Limit for International Search*

The time limit for establishing the international search report or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a) shall be three months from the receipt of the search copy by the International Searching Authority, or nine months from the priority date, whichever time limit expires later.

Rule 43

The International Search Report

43.1 *Identifications*

The international search report shall identify the International Searching Authority which established it by indicating the name of such Authority, and the international application by indicating the international application number, the name of the applicant, and the international filing date.

43.2 *Dates*

The international search report shall be dated and shall indicate the date on which the international search was actually completed. It shall also indicate the filing date of any earlier application whose priority is claimed or, if the priority of more than one earlier application is claimed, the filing date of the earliest among them.

43.3 *Classification*

(a) The international search report shall contain the classification of the subject matter at least according to the International Patent Classification.

(b) Such classification shall be effected by the International Searching Authority.

43.4 *Language*

Every international search report and any declaration made under Article 17(2)(a) shall be in the language in which the international application to which it relates is to be published or, if a translation into another language was transmitted under Rule 23.1(b) and the International Searching Authority so wishes, in the language of that translation.

43.5 *Citations*

(a) The international search report shall contain the citations of the documents considered to be relevant.

(b) The method of identifying any cited document shall be regulated by the Administrative Instructions.

(c) Citations of particular relevance shall be specially indicated.

(d) Citations which are not relevant to all the claims shall be cited in relation to the claim or claims to which they are relevant.

(e) If only certain passages of the cited document are relevant or particularly relevant, they shall be identified, for example, by indicating the page, the column, or the lines, where the passage appears. If the entire document is relevant but some passages are of particular relevance, such passages shall be identified unless such identification is not practicable.

43.6 *Fields Searched*

(a) The international search report shall list the classification identification of the fields searched. If that identification is effected on the basis of a classification other than the International Patent Classification, the International Searching Authority shall publish the classification used.

(b) If the international search extended to patents, inventors' certificates, utility certificates, utility models, patents or certificates of addition, inventors' certificates of addition, utility certificates of addition, or published applications for any of those kinds of protection, of States, periods, or languages, not included in the minimum documentation as defined in Rule 34, the international search report shall, when practicable, identify the kinds of documents, the States, the periods, and the languages to which it extended. For the purposes of this paragraph, Article 2(ii) shall not apply.

(c) If the international search was based on, or was extended to, any electronic data base, the international search report may indicate the name of the data base and, where considered useful to others and practicable, the search terms used.

43.7 *Remarks Concerning Unity of Invention*

If the applicant paid additional fees for the international search, the international search report shall so indicate. Furthermore, where the international search

was made on the main invention only or on less than all the inventions (Article 17(3)(a)), the international search report shall indicate what parts of the international application were and what parts were not searched.

43.8 *Authorized Officer*

The international search report shall indicate the name of the officer of the International Searching Authority responsible for that report.

43.9 *Additional Matter*

The international search report shall contain no matter other than that specified in Rules 33.1(b) and (c), 43.1 to 43.3, 43.5 to 43.8, and 44.2, and the indication referred to in Article 17(2)(b), provided that the Administrative Instructions may permit the inclusion in the international search report of any additional matter specified in the Administrative Instructions. The international search report shall not contain, and the Administrative Instructions shall not permit the inclusion of, any expressions of opinion, reasoning, arguments, or explanations.

43.10 *Form*

The physical requirements as to the form of the international search report shall be prescribed by the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 44

Transmittal of the International Search Report, Etc.

44.1 *Copies of Report or Declaration*

The International Searching Authority shall, on the same day, transmit one copy of the international search report or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a) to the International Bureau and one copy to the applicant.

44.2 *Title or Abstract*

The international search report shall either state that the International Searching Authority approves the title and the abstract as submitted by the applicant or be accompanied by the text of the title and/or abstract as established by the International Searching Authority under Rules 37 and 38.

44.3 *Copies of Cited Documents*

(a) The request referred to in Article 20(3) may be presented any time during seven years from the

international filing date of the international application to which the international search report relates.

(b) The International Searching Authority may require that the party (applicant or designated Office) presenting the request pay to it the cost of preparing and mailing the copies. The level of the cost of preparing copies shall be provided for in the agreements referred to in Article 16(3)(b) between the International Searching Authorities and the International Bureau.

(c) *[Deleted]*

(d) Any International Searching Authority may perform the obligations referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) through another agency responsible to it.

Rule 45

Translation of the International Search Report

45.1 Languages

International search reports and declarations referred to in Article 17(2)(a) shall, when not in English, be translated into English.

Rule 46

Amendment of Claims Before the International Bureau

46.1 Time Limit

The time limit referred to in Article 19 shall be two months from the date of transmittal of the international search report to the International Bureau and to the applicant by the International Searching Authority or 16 months from the priority date, whichever time limit expires later, provided that any amendment made under Article 19 which is received by the International Bureau after the expiration of the applicable time limit shall be considered to have been received by that Bureau on the last day of that time limit if it reaches it before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

46.2 Where to File

Amendments made under Article 19 shall be filed directly with the International Bureau.

46.3 Language of Amendments

If the international application has been filed in a language other than the language in which it is pub-

lished, any amendment made under Article 19 shall be in the language of publication.

46.4 Statement

(a) The statement referred to in Article 19(1) shall be in the language in which the international application is published and shall not exceed 500 words if in the English language or if translated into that language. The statement shall be identified as such by a heading, preferably by using the words "Statement under Article 19(1)" or their equivalent in the language of the statement.

(b) The statement shall contain no disparaging comments on the international search report or the relevance of citations contained in that report. Reference to citations, relevant to a given claim, contained in the international search report may be made only in connection with an amendment of that claim.

46.5 Form of Amendments

The applicant shall be required to submit a replacement sheet for every sheet of the claims which, on account of an amendment or amendments under Article 19, differs from the sheet originally filed. The letter accompanying the replacement sheets shall draw attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets. To the extent that any amendment results in the cancellation of an entire sheet, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter.

Rule 47

Communication to Designated Offices

47.1 Procedure

(a) The communication provided for in Article 20 shall be effected by the International Bureau.

(a^{bis}) The International Bureau shall notify each designated Office, at the time of the communication provided for in Article 20, of the fact and date of receipt of the record copy and of the fact and date of receipt of any priority document. Such notification shall also be sent to any designated Office which has waived the communication provided for in Article 20, unless such Office has also waived the notification of its designation.

(a^{ter}) The notification under paragraph (a^{bis}) shall include any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17(i) to (iv), and any correction thereof under Rule 26^{ter}.1,

which was received by the International Bureau before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1, provided that the designated Office has informed the International Bureau that the applicable national law requires the furnishing of documents or evidence relating to the matter to which the declaration relates.

(b) Such communication shall be effected promptly after the international publication of the international application and, in any event, by the end of the 19th month after the priority date. Any amendment received by the International Bureau within the time limit under Rule 46.1 which was not included in the communication shall be communicated promptly to the designated Offices by the International Bureau, and the latter shall notify the applicant accordingly.

(c) The International Bureau shall send a notice to the applicant indicating the designated Offices to which the communication has been effected and the date of such communication. Such notice shall be sent on the same day as the communication. Each designated Office shall be informed, separately from the communication, about the sending and the date of mailing of the notice. The notice shall be accepted by all designated Offices as conclusive evidence that the communication has duly taken place on the date specified in the notice.

(d) Each designated Office shall, when it so requires, receive the international search reports and the declarations referred to in Article 17(2)(a) also in the translation referred to in Rule 45.1.

(e) Where any designated Office has waived the requirement provided under Article 20, the copies of the documents which otherwise would have been sent to that Office shall, at the request of that Office or the applicant, be sent to the applicant at the time of the notice referred to in paragraph (c).

47.2 Copies

(a) The copies required for communication shall be prepared by the International Bureau.

(b) They shall be on sheets of A4 size.

(c) Except to the extent that any designated Office notifies the International Bureau otherwise, copies of the pamphlet under Rule 48 may be used for the purposes of the communication of the international application under Article 20.

47.3 Languages

(a) The international application communicated under Article 20 shall be in the language in which it is published.

(b) Where the language in which the international application is published is different from the language in which it was filed, the International Bureau shall furnish to any designated Office, upon the request of that Office, a copy of that application in the language in which it was filed.

47.4 Express Request Under Article 23(2)

Where the applicant makes an express request to a designated Office under Article 23(2) before the communication provided for in Article 20 has taken place, the International Bureau shall, upon request of the applicant or the designated Office, promptly effect that communication to that Office.

Rule 48

International Publication

48.1 Form

(a) The international application shall be published in the form of a pamphlet.

(b) The particulars regarding the form of the pamphlet and the method of reproduction shall be governed by the Administrative Instructions.

48.2 Contents

(a) The pamphlet shall contain:

(i) a standardized front page,

(ii) the description,

(iii) the claims,

(iv) the drawings, if any,

(v) subject to paragraph (g), the international search report or the declaration under Article 17(2)(a); the publication of the international search report in the pamphlet shall, however, not be required to include the part of the international search report which contains only matter referred to in Rule 43 already appearing on the front page of the pamphlet,

(vi) any statement filed under Article 19(1), unless the International Bureau finds that the statement does not comply with the provisions of Rule 46.4,

(vii) any request for rectification referred to in the third sentence of Rule 91.1(f),

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(viii) the relevant data from any indications in relation to deposited biological material furnished under Rule 13^{bis} separately from the description, together with an indication of the date on which the International Bureau received such indications,

(ix) any information concerning a priority claim considered not to have been made under Rule 26^{bis}.2(b), the publication of which is requested under Rule 26^{bis}.2(c),

(x) any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17(v), and any correction thereof under Rule 26^{ter}.1, which was received by the International Bureau before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1.

(b) Subject to paragraph (c), the front page shall include:

(i) data taken from the request sheet and such other data as are prescribed by the Administrative Instructions,

(ii) a figure or figures where the international application contains drawings, unless Rule 8.2(b) applies,

(iii) the abstract; if the abstract is both in English and in another language, the English text shall appear first,

(iv) an indication that the request contains any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17 which was received by the International Bureau before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1.

(c) Where a declaration under Article 17(2)(a) has issued, the front page shall conspicuously refer to that fact and need include neither a drawing nor an abstract.

(d) The figure or figures referred to in paragraph (b)(ii) shall be selected as provided in Rule 8.2. Reproduction of such figure or figures on the front page may be in a reduced form.

(e) If there is not enough room on the front page for the totality of the abstract referred to in paragraph (b)(iii), the said abstract shall appear on the back of the front page. The same shall apply to the translation of the abstract when such translation is required to be published under Rule 48.3(c).

(f) If the claims have been amended under Article 19, the publication shall contain either the full text of the claims both as filed and as amended or the full text of the claims as filed and specify the amend-

ments. Any statement referred to in Article 19(1) shall be included as well, unless the International Bureau finds that the statement does not comply with the provisions of Rule 46.4. The date of receipt of the amended claims by the International Bureau shall be indicated.

(g) If, at the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication, the international search report is not yet available (for example, because of publication on the request of the applicant as provided in Articles 21(2)(b) and 64(3)(c)(i)), the pamphlet shall contain, in place of the international search report, an indication to the effect that that report was not available and that either the pamphlet (then also including the international search report) will be republished or the international search report (when it becomes available) will be separately published.

(h) If, at the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication, the time limit for amending the claims under Article 19 has not expired, the pamphlet shall refer to that fact and indicate that, should the claims be amended under Article 19, then, promptly after such amendments, either the pamphlet (containing the claims as amended) will be republished or a statement reflecting all the amendments will be published. In the latter case, at least the front page and the claims shall be republished and, if a statement under Article 19(1) has been filed, that statement shall be published as well, unless the International Bureau finds that the statement does not comply with the provisions of Rule 46.4.

(i) The Administrative Instructions shall determine the cases in which the various alternatives referred to in paragraphs (g) and (h) shall apply. Such determination shall depend on the volume and complexity of the amendments and/or the volume of the international application and the cost factors.

48.3 *Languages of Publication*

(a) If the international application is filed in Chinese, English, French, German, Japanese, Russian or Spanish ("languages of publication"), that application shall be published in the language in which it was filed.

(a^{bis}) If the international application is not filed in a language of publication and a translation into a language of publication has been furnished under Rule

12.3, that application shall be published in the language of that translation.

(b) If the international application is filed in a language which is not a language of publication and no translation into a language of publication is required under Rule 12.3(a), that application shall be published in English translation. The translation shall be prepared under the responsibility of the International Searching Authority, which shall be obliged to have it ready in time to permit international publication by the prescribed date, or, where Article 64(3)(b) applies, to permit the communication under Article 20 by the end of the 19th month after the priority date. Notwithstanding Rule 16.1(a), the International Searching Authority may charge a fee for the translation to the applicant. The International Searching Authority shall give the applicant an opportunity to comment on the draft translation. The International Searching Authority shall fix a time limit reasonable under the circumstances of the case for such comments. If there is no time to take the comments of the applicant into account before the translation is communicated or if there is a difference of opinion between the applicant and the said Authority as to the correct translation, the applicant may send a copy of his comments, or what remains of them, to the International Bureau and each designated Office to which the translation was communicated. The International Bureau shall publish the relevant portions of the comments together with the translation of the International Searching Authority or subsequently to the publication of such translation.

(c) If the international application is published in a language other than English, the international search report to the extent that it is published under Rule 48.2(a)(v), or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a), the title of the invention, the abstract and any text matter pertaining to the figure or figures accompanying the abstract shall be published both in that language and in English. The translations shall be prepared under the responsibility of the International Bureau.

48.4 *Earlier Publication on the Applicant's Request*

(a) Where the applicant asks for publication under Articles 21(2)(b) and 64(3)(c)(i) and the international search report, or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a), is not yet available for publication together with the international application, the Inter-

national Bureau shall collect a special publication fee whose amount shall be fixed in the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Publication under Articles 21(2)(b) and 64(3)(c)(i) shall be effected by the International Bureau promptly after the applicant has asked for it and, where a special fee is due under paragraph (a), after receipt of such fee.

48.5 *Notification of National Publication*

Where the publication of the international application by the International Bureau is governed by Article 64(3)(c)(ii), the national Office concerned shall, promptly after effecting the national publication referred to in the said provision, notify the International Bureau of the fact of such national publication.

48.6 *Announcing of Certain Facts*

(a) If any notification under Rule 29.1(a)(ii) reaches the International Bureau at a time later than that at which it was able to prevent the international publication of the international application, the International Bureau shall promptly publish a notice in the *Gazette* reproducing the essence of such notification.

(b) *[Deleted]*

(c) If the international application, the designation of any designated State or the priority claim is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis} after the technical preparations for international publication have been completed, notice of the withdrawal shall be published in the *Gazette*.

Rule 49

Copy, Translation and Fee Under Article 22

49.1 *Notification*

(a) Any Contracting State requiring the furnishing of a translation or the payment of a national fee, or both, under Article 22, shall notify the International Bureau of:

- (i) the languages from which and the language into which it requires translation,
- (ii) the amount of the national fee.

(a^{bis}) Any Contracting State not requiring the furnishing, under Article 22, by the applicant of a copy of the international application (even though the communication of the copy of the international application by the International Bureau under Rule 47 has not

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

taken place by the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22) shall notify the International Bureau accordingly.

(a^{ter}) Any Contracting State which, pursuant to Article 24(2), maintains, if it is a designated State, the effect provided for in Article 11(3) even though a copy of the international application is not furnished by the applicant by the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22 shall notify the International Bureau accordingly.

(b) Any notification received by the International Bureau under paragraphs (a), (a^{bis}) or (a^{ter}) shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

(c) If the requirements under paragraph (a) change later, such changes shall be notified by the Contracting State to the International Bureau and that Bureau shall promptly publish the notification in the Gazette. If the change means that translation is required into a language which, before the change, was not required, such change shall be effective only with respect to international applications filed later than two months after the publication of the notification in the Gazette. Otherwise, the effective date of any change shall be determined by the Contracting State.

49.2 Languages

The language into which translation may be required must be an official language of the designated Office. If there are several of such languages, no translation may be required if the international application is in one of them. If there are several official languages and a translation must be furnished, the applicant may choose any of those languages. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, if there are several official languages but the national law prescribes the use of one such language for foreigners, a translation into that language may be required.

49.3 Statements Under Article 19; Indications Under Rule 13^{bis}.4

For the purposes of Article 22 and the present Rule, any statement made under Article 19(1) and any indication furnished under Rule 13^{bis}.4 shall, subject to Rule 49.5(c) and (h), be considered part of the international application.

49.4 Use of National Form

No applicant shall be required to use a national form when performing the acts referred to in Article 22.

49.5 Contents of and Physical Requirements for the Translation

(a) For the purposes of Article 22, the translation of the international application shall contain the description (subject to paragraph (a^{bis})), the claims, any text matter of the drawings, and the abstract. If required by the designated Office, the translation shall also, subject to paragraphs (b), (c^{bis}) and (e),

- (i) contain the request,
- (ii) if the claims have been amended under Article 19, contain both the claims as filed and the claims as amended, and
- (iii) be accompanied by a copy of the drawings.

(a^{bis}) No designated Office shall require the applicant to furnish to it a translation of any text matter contained in the sequence listing part of the description if such sequence listing part complies with Rule 12.1(d) and if the description complies with Rule 5.2(b).

(b) Any designated Office requiring the furnishing of a translation of the request shall furnish copies of the request form in the language of the translation free of charge to the applicants. The form and contents of the request form in the language of the translation shall not be different from those of the request under Rules 3 and 4; in particular, the request form in the language of the translation shall not ask for any information that is not in the request as filed. The use of the request form in the language of the translation shall be optional.

(c) Where the applicant did not furnish a translation of any statement made under Article 19(1), the designated Office may disregard such statement.

(c^{bis}) Where the applicant furnishes, to a designated Office which requires under paragraph (a)(ii) a translation of both the claims as filed and the claims as amended, only one of the required two translations, the designated Office may disregard the claims of which a translation has not been furnished or invite the applicant to furnish the missing translation within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in the invitation. Where

the designated Office chooses to invite the applicant to furnish the missing translation and the latter is not furnished within the time limit fixed in the invitation, the designated Office may disregard those claims of which a translation has not been furnished or consider the international application withdrawn.

(d) If any drawing contains text matter, the translation of that text matter shall be furnished either in the form of a copy of the original drawing with the translation pasted on the original text matter or in the form of a drawing executed anew.

(e) Any designated Office requiring under paragraph (a) the furnishing of a copy of the drawings shall, where the applicant failed to furnish such copy within the time limit applicable under Article 22, invite the applicant to furnish such copy within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in the invitation.

(f) The expression "Fig." does not require translation into any language.

(g) Where any copy of the drawings or any drawing executed anew which has been furnished under paragraph (d) or (e) does not comply with the physical requirements referred to in Rule 11, the designated Office may invite the applicant to correct the defect within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in the invitation.

(h) Where the applicant did not furnish a translation of the abstract or of any indication furnished under Rule 13^{bis}.4, the designated Office shall invite the applicant to furnish such translation, if it deems it to be necessary, within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in the invitation.

(i) Information on any requirement and practice of designated Offices under the second sentence of paragraph (a) shall be published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

(j) No designated Office shall require that the translation of the international application comply with physical requirements other than those prescribed for the international application as filed.

(k) Where a title has been established by the International Searching Authority pursuant to Rule 37.2, the translation shall contain the title as established by that Authority.

(l) If, on July 12, 1991, paragraph (c^{bis}) or paragraph (k) is not compatible with the national law applied by the designated Office, the paragraph concerned shall not apply to that designated Office for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by December 31, 1991. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

Rule 50

Faculty Under Article 22(3)

50.1 *Exercise of Faculty*

(a) Any Contracting State allowing a time limit expiring later than the time limits provided for in Article 22(1) or (2) shall notify the International Bureau of the time limits so fixed.

(b) Any notification received by the International Bureau under paragraph (a) shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

(c) Notifications concerning the shortening of the previously fixed time limit shall be effective in relation to international applications filed after the expiration of three months computed from the date on which the notification was published by the International Bureau.

(d) Notifications concerning the lengthening of the previously fixed time limit shall become effective upon publication by the International Bureau in the Gazette in respect of international applications pending at the time or filed after the date of such publication, or, if the Contracting State effecting the notification fixes some later date, as from the latter date.

Rule 51

Review by Designated Offices

51.1 *Time Limit for Presenting the Request to Send Copies*

The time limit referred to in Article 25(1)(c) shall be two months computed from the date of the notification sent to the applicant under Rules 20.7(i), 24.2(c), 29.1(a)(ii), or 29.1(b).

51.2 *Copy of the Notice*

Where the applicant, after having received a negative determination under Article 11(1), requests the

International Bureau, under Article 25(1), to send copies of the file of the purported international application to any of the named Offices he has attempted to designate, he shall attach to his request a copy of the notice referred to in Rule 20.7(i).

51.3 Time Limit for Paying National Fee and Furnishing Translation

The time limit referred to in Article 25(2)(a) shall expire at the same time as the time limit prescribed in Rule 51.1.

Rule 51^{bis}

Certain National Requirements Allowed Under Article 27(1), (2), (6) and (7)

51^{bis}.1 Certain National Requirements Allowed

(a) Subject to Rule 51^{bis}.2, the national law applicable by the designated Office may, in accordance with Article 27, require the applicant to furnish, in particular:

- (i) any document relating to the identity of the inventor,
- (ii) any document relating to the applicant's entitlement to apply for or be granted a patent,
- (iii) any document containing any proof of the applicant's entitlement to claim priority of an earlier application where the applicant is not the applicant who filed the earlier application or where the applicant's name has changed since the date on which the earlier application was filed,
- (iv) where the international application designates a State whose national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor, any document containing an oath or declaration of inventorship,
- (v) any evidence concerning non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty, such as disclosures resulting from abuse, disclosures at certain exhibitions and disclosures by the applicant during a certain period of time.

(b) The national law applicable by the designated Office may, in accordance with Article 27(7), require that

- (i) the applicant be represented by an agent having the right to represent applicants before that Office and/or have an address in the designated State for the purpose of receiving notifications,

(ii) the agent, if any, representing the applicant be duly appointed by the applicant.

(c) The national law applicable by the designated Office may, in accordance with Article 27(1), require that the international application, the translation thereof or any document relating thereto be furnished in more than one copy.

(d) The national law applicable by the designated Office may, in accordance with Article 27(2)(ii), require that the translation of the international application furnished by the applicant under Article 22 be:

(i) verified by the applicant or the person having translated the international application in a statement to the effect that, to the best of his knowledge, the translation is complete and faithful;

(ii) certified by a public authority or sworn translator, but only where the designated Office may reasonably doubt the accuracy of the translation.

(e) The national law applicable by the designated Office may, in accordance with Article 27, require the applicant to furnish a translation of the priority document, provided that such a translation may only be required where the validity of the priority claim is relevant to the determination of whether the invention concerned is patentable.

(f) If, on March 17, 2000, the proviso in paragraph (e) is not compatible with the national law applied by the designated Office, that proviso shall not apply in respect of that Office for as long as that proviso continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by November 30, 2000. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

51^{bis}.2 Certain Circumstances in Which Documents or Evidence May Not Be Required

(a) Where the applicable national law does not require that national applications be filed by the inventor, the designated Office shall not, unless it may reasonably doubt the veracity of the indications or declaration concerned, require any document or evidence:

- (i) relating to the identity of the inventor (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(i)), if indications concerning the inventor, in accordance with Rule 4.6, are contained in the request or if a declaration as to the identity of

the inventor, in accordance with Rule 4.17(i), is contained in the request or is submitted directly to the designated Office;

(ii) relating to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to apply for and be granted a patent (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(ii)), if a declaration as to that matter, in accordance with Rule 4.17(ii), is contained in the request or is submitted directly to the designated Office;

(iii) relating to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to claim priority of an earlier application (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iii)), if a declaration as to that matter, in accordance with Rule 4.17(iii), is contained in the request or is submitted directly to the designated Office.

(b) Where the applicable national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor, the designated Office shall not, unless it may reasonably doubt the veracity of the indications or declaration concerned, require any document or evidence:

(i) relating to the identity of the inventor (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(i)) (other than a document containing an oath or declaration of inventorship (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iv))), if indications concerning the inventor, in accordance with Rule 4.6, are contained in the request;

(ii) relating to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to claim priority of an earlier application (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iii)), if a declaration as to that matter, in accordance with Rule 4.17(iii), is contained in the request or is submitted directly to the designated Office;

(iii) containing an oath or declaration of inventorship (Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(iv)), if a declaration of inventorship, in accordance with Rule 4.17(iv), is contained in the request or is submitted directly to the designated Office.

(c) If, on March 17, 2000, paragraph (a) is not compatible, in relation to any item of that paragraph, with the national law applied by the designated Office, paragraph (a) shall not apply in respect of that Office in relation to that item for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by November 30, 2000. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

51^{bis}.3 Opportunity to Comply with National Requirements

(a) Where any of the requirements referred to in Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)(i) to (iv) and (c) to (e), or any other requirement of the national law applicable by the designated Office which that Office may apply in accordance with Article 27(1) or (2), is not already fulfilled during the same period within which the requirements under Article 22 must be complied with, the designated Office shall invite the applicant to comply with the requirement within a time limit which shall not be less than two months from the date of the invitation. Each designated Office may require that the applicant pay a fee for complying with national requirements in response to the invitation.

(b) Where any requirement of the national law applicable by the designated Office which that Office may apply in accordance with Article 27(6) or (7) is not already fulfilled during the same period within which the requirements under Article 22 must be complied with, the applicant shall have an opportunity to comply with the requirement after the expiration of that period.

(c) If, on March 17, 2000, paragraph (a) is not compatible with the national law applied by the designated Office in relation to the time limit referred to in that paragraph, the said paragraph shall not apply in respect of that Office in relation to that time limit for as long as the said paragraph continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs the International Bureau accordingly by November 30, 2000. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

Rule 52

Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Designated Offices

52.1 Time Limit

(a) In any designated State in which processing or examination starts without special request, the applicant shall, if he so wishes, exercise the right under Article 28 within one month from the fulfillment of the requirements under Article 22, provided that, if the communication under Rule 47.1 has not been effected by the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 22, he shall exercise the said right

not later than four months after such expiration date. In either case, the applicant may exercise the said right at any other time if so permitted by the national law of the said State.

(b) In any designated State in which the national law provides that examination starts only on special request, the time limit within or the time at which the applicant may exercise the right under Article 28 shall be the same as that provided by the national law for the filing of amendments in the case of the examination, on special request, of national applications, provided that such time limit shall not expire prior to, or such time shall not come before, the expiration of the time limit applicable under paragraph (a).

PART C

Rules Concerning Chapter II of the Treaty

Rule 53

The Demand

53.1 Form

(a) The demand shall be made on a printed form or be presented as a computer printout. The particulars of the printed form and of a demand presented as a computer printout shall be prescribed by the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Copies of printed demand forms shall be furnished free of charge by the receiving Office or by the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(c) *[Deleted]*

53.2 Contents

(a) The demand shall contain:

- (i) a petition,
- (ii) indications concerning the applicant and the agent if there is an agent,
- (iii) indications concerning the international application to which it relates,
- (iv) election of States,
- (v) where applicable, a statement concerning amendments.

(b) The demand shall be signed.

53.3 The Petition

The petition shall be to the following effect and shall preferably be worded as follows: "Demand

under Article 31 of the Patent Cooperation Treaty: The undersigned requests that the international application specified below be the subject of international preliminary examination according to the Patent Cooperation Treaty."

53.4 The Applicant

As to the indications concerning the applicant, Rules 4.4 and 4.16 shall apply, and Rule 4.5 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*. Only applicants for the elected States are required to be indicated in the demand.

53.5 Agent or Common Representative

If an agent or common representative is appointed, the demand shall so indicate. Rules 4.4 and 4.16 shall apply, and Rule 4.7 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

53.6 Identification of the International Application

The international application shall be identified by the name and address of the applicant, the title of the invention, the international filing date (if known to the applicant) and the international application number or, where such number is not known to the applicant, the name of the receiving Office with which the international application was filed.

53.7 Election of States

(a) The demand shall indicate at least one Contracting State, from among those States which are designated and are bound by Chapter II of the Treaty ("eligible States"), as an elected State.

(b) Election of Contracting States in the demand shall be made:

(i) by an indication that all eligible States are elected, or,

(ii) in the case of States which have been designated for the purpose of obtaining national patents, by an indication of those eligible States that are elected, and, in the case of States which have been designated for the purpose of obtaining a regional patent, by an indication of the regional patent concerned together with either an indication that all eligible States party to the regional patent treaty concerned are elected or an indication of those among the said States that are elected.

53.8 Signature

(a) Subject to paragraph (b), the demand shall be signed by the applicant or, if there is more than one applicant, by all applicants making the demand.

(b) Where two or more applicants file a demand which elects a State whose national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor and where an applicant for that elected State who is an inventor refused to sign the demand or could not be found or reached after diligent effort, the demand need not be signed by that applicant ("the applicant concerned") if it is signed by at least one applicant and

(i) a statement is furnished explaining, to the satisfaction of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, the lack of signature of the applicant concerned, or

(ii) the applicant concerned did not sign the request but the requirements of Rule 4.15(b) were complied with.

53.9 Statement Concerning Amendments

(a) If amendments under Article 19 have been made, the statement concerning amendments shall indicate whether, for the purposes of the international preliminary examination, the applicant wishes those amendments

(i) to be taken into account, in which case a copy of the amendments shall preferably be submitted with the demand, or

(ii) to be considered as reversed by an amendment under Article 34.

(b) If no amendments under Article 19 have been made and the time limit for filing such amendments has not expired, the statement may indicate that the applicant wishes the start of the international preliminary examination to be postponed in accordance with Rule 69.1(d).

(c) If any amendments under Article 34 are submitted with the demand, the statement shall so indicate.

Rule 54

The Applicant Entitled to Make a Demand

54.1 Residence and Nationality

(a) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b), the residence or nationality of the applicant shall, for the purposes of Article 31(2), be determined according to Rule 18.1(a) and (b).

(b) The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, in the circumstances specified in the Administrative Instructions, request the receiving

Office or, where the international application was filed with the International Bureau as receiving Office, the national Office of, or acting for, the Contracting State concerned to decide the question whether the applicant is a resident or national of the Contracting State of which he claims to be a resident or national. The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall inform the applicant of any such request. The applicant shall have an opportunity to submit arguments directly to the Office concerned. The Office concerned shall decide the said question promptly.

54.2 Right to Make a Demand

The right to make a demand under Article 31(2) shall exist if the applicant making the demand or, if there are two or more applicants, at least one of them is a resident or national of a Contracting State bound by Chapter II and the international application has been filed with a receiving Office of or acting for a Contracting State bound by Chapter II.

(i) *[Deleted]*

(ii) *[Deleted]*

54.3 International Applications Filed with the International Bureau as Receiving Office

Where the international application is filed with the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii), the International Bureau shall, for the purposes of Article 31(2)(a), be considered to be acting for the Contracting State of which the applicant is a resident or national.

54.4 Applicant Not Entitled to Make a Demand

If the applicant does not have the right to make a demand or, in the case of two or more applicants, if none of them has the right to make a demand under Rule 54.2, the demand shall be considered not to have been submitted.

Rule 55

Languages (International Preliminary Examination)

55.1 Language of Demand

The demand shall be in the language of the international application or, if the international application has been filed in a language other than the language in which it is published, in the language of publication. However, if a translation of the international applica-

tion is required under Rule 55.2, the demand shall be in the language of that translation.

55.2 Translation of International Application

(a) Where neither the language in which the international application is filed nor the language in which the international application is published is accepted by the International Preliminary Examining Authority that is to carry out the international preliminary examination, the applicant shall, subject to paragraph (b), furnish with the demand a translation of the international application into a language which is both:

- (i) a language accepted by that Authority, and
- (ii) a language of publication.

(b) Where a translation of the international application into a language referred to in paragraph (a) was transmitted to the International Searching Authority under Rule 23.1(b) and the International Preliminary Examining Authority is part of the same national Office or intergovernmental organization as the International Searching Authority, the applicant need not furnish a translation under paragraph (a). In such a case, unless the applicant furnishes a translation under paragraph (a), the international preliminary examination shall be carried out on the basis of the translation transmitted under Rule 23.1(b).

(c) If the requirement of paragraph (a) is not complied with and paragraph (b) does not apply, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall invite the applicant to furnish the required translation within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances. That time limit shall not be less than one month from the date of the invitation. It may be extended by the International Preliminary Examining Authority at any time before a decision is taken.

(d) If the applicant complies with the invitation within the time limit under paragraph (c), the said requirement shall be considered to have been complied with. If the applicant fails to do so, the demand shall be considered not to have been submitted and the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall so declare.

(e) *[Deleted]*

55.3 Translation of Amendments

(a) Where a translation of the international application is required under Rule 55.2, any amend-

ments which are referred to in the statement concerning amendments under Rule 53.9 and which the applicant wishes to be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination, and any amendments under Article 19 which are to be taken into account under Rule 66.1(c), shall be in the language of that translation. Where such amendments have been or are filed in another language, a translation shall also be furnished.

(b) Where the required translation of an amendment referred to in paragraph (a) is not furnished, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall invite the applicant to furnish the missing translation within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances. That time limit shall not be less than one month from the date of the invitation. It may be extended by the International Preliminary Examining Authority at any time before a decision is taken.

(c) If the applicant fails to comply with the invention within the time limit under paragraph (b), the amendment shall not be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination.

Rule 56

Later Elections

56.1 Elections Submitted Later Than the Demand

(a) The election of States subsequent to the submission of the demand ("later election") shall be effected by a notice submitted to the International Bureau. The notice shall identify the international application and the demand, and shall include an indication as referred to in Rule 53.7(b)(ii).

(b) Subject to paragraph (c), the notice referred to in paragraph (a) shall be signed by the applicant for the elected States concerned or, if there is more than one applicant for those States, by all of them.

(c) Where two or more applicants file a notice effecting a later election of a State whose national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor and where an applicant for that elected State who is an inventor refused to sign the notice or could not be found or reached after diligent effort, the notice need not be signed by that applicant ("the applicant concerned") if it is signed by at least one applicant and

(i) a statement is furnished explaining, to the satisfaction of the International Bureau, the lack of signature of the applicant concerned, or

(ii) the applicant concerned did not sign the request but the requirements of Rule 4.15(b) were complied with, or did not sign the demand but the requirements of Rule 53.8(b) were complied with.

(d) An applicant for a State elected by a later election need not have been indicated as an applicant in the demand.

(e) If a notice effecting a later election is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, the International Bureau shall notify the applicant that the election does not have the effect provided for under Article 39(1)(a) and that the acts referred to in Article 22 must be performed in respect of the elected Office concerned within the time limit applicable under Article 22.

(f) If, notwithstanding paragraph (a), a notice effecting a later election is submitted by the applicant to the International Preliminary Examining Authority rather than the International Bureau, that Authority shall mark the date of receipt on the notice and transmit it promptly to the International Bureau. The notice shall be considered to have been submitted to the International Bureau on the date marked.

56.2 *Identification of the International Application*

The international application shall be identified as provided in Rule 53.6.

56.3 *Identification of the Demand*

The demand shall be identified by the date on which it was submitted and by the name of the International Preliminary Examining Authority to which it was submitted.

56.4 *Form of Later Elections*

The notice effecting the later election shall preferably be worded as follows: "In relation to the international application filed with ... on ... under No. ... by ... (applicant) (and the demand for international preliminary examination submitted on ... to ...), the undersigned elects the following additional State(s) under Article 31 of the Patent Cooperation Treaty: ..."

56.5 *Language of Later Elections*

The later election shall be in the language of the demand.

Rule 57

The Handling Fee

57.1 *Requirement to Pay*

Each demand for international preliminary examination shall be subject to the payment of a fee for the benefit of the International Bureau ("handling fee") to be collected by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to which the demand is submitted.

57.2 *Amount*

(a) The amount of the handling fee is as set out in the Schedule of Fees.

(b) *[Deleted]*

(c) The handling fee shall be payable in the currency or one of the currencies prescribed by the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("prescribed currency"), it being understood that, when transferred by that Authority to the International Bureau, it shall be freely convertible into Swiss currency. The amount of the handling fee shall be established, in each prescribed currency, for each International Preliminary Examining Authority which prescribes the payment of the handling fee in any currency other than Swiss currency, by the Director General after consultation with the Office with which consultation takes place under Rule 15.2(b) in relation to that currency, or, if there is no such Office, with the Authority which prescribes payment in that currency. The amount so established shall be the equivalent, in round figures, of the amount in Swiss currency set out in the Schedule of Fees. It shall be notified by the International Bureau to each International Preliminary Examining Authority prescribing payment in that prescribed currency and shall be published in the Gazette.

(d) Where the amount of the handling fee set out in the Schedule of Fees is changed, the corresponding amounts in the prescribed currencies shall be applied from the same date as the amount set out in the amended Schedule of Fees.

(e) Where the exchange rate between Swiss currency and any prescribed currency becomes different from the exchange rate last applied, the Director General shall establish the new amount in the prescribed currency according to directives given by the Assembly. The newly established amount shall become applicable two months after its publication in

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

the Gazette, provided that the interested International Preliminary Examining Authority and the Director General may agree on a date falling during the said two-month period in which case the said amount shall become applicable for that Authority from that date.

57.3 *Time Limit for Payment; Amount Payable*

The handling fee shall be paid within one month from the date on which the demand was submitted, provided that, where the demand was transmitted to the International Preliminary Examining Authority under Rule 59.3, the handling fee shall be paid within one month from the date of receipt by that Authority. The amount payable shall be the amount applicable on that date of submittal or date of receipt, as the case may be. For the purposes of the preceding two sentences, Rule 59.3(e) shall not apply.

(b) *[Deleted]*

(c) *[Deleted]*

57.4 *[Deleted]*

57.5 *[Deleted]*

57.6 *Refund*

The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall refund the handling fee to the applicant:

(i) if the demand is withdrawn before the demand has been sent by that Authority to the International Bureau, or

(ii) if the demand is considered, under Rule 54.4, not to have been submitted.

Rule 58

The Preliminary Examination Fee

58.1 *Right to Ask for a Fee*

(a) Each International Preliminary Examining Authority may require that the applicant pay a fee ("preliminary examination fee") for its own benefit for carrying out the international preliminary examination and for performing all other tasks entrusted to International Preliminary Examining Authorities under the Treaty and these Regulations.

(b) The amount of the preliminary examination fee, if any, shall be fixed by the International Preliminary Examining Authority. As to the time limit for payment of the preliminary examination fee and the amount payable, the provisions of Rule 57.3 relating to the handling fee shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

(c) The preliminary examination fee shall be payable directly to the International Preliminary Examining Authority. Where that Authority is a national Office, it shall be payable in the currency prescribed by that Office, and where the Authority is an intergovernmental organization, it shall be payable in the currency of the State in which the intergovernmental organization is located or in any other currency which is freely convertible into the currency of the said State.

58.2 *[Deleted]*

58.3 *Refund*

The International Preliminary Examining Authorities shall inform the International Bureau of the extent, if any, to which, and the conditions, if any, under which, they will refund any amount paid as a preliminary examination fee where the demand is considered as if it had not been submitted, and the International Bureau shall promptly publish such information.

Rule 58^{bis}

Extension of Time Limits for Payment of Fees

58^{bis}.1 *Invitation by the International Preliminary Examining Authority*

(a) Where, by the time they are due under Rules 57.3 and 58.1(b), the International Preliminary Examining Authority finds that no fees were paid to it, or that the amount paid to it is insufficient to cover the handling fee and the preliminary examination fee, the Authority shall invite the applicant to pay to it the amount required to cover those fees, together with, where applicable, the late payment fee under Rule 58^{bis}.2, within a time limit of one month from the date of the invitation.

(b) Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority has sent an invitation under paragraph (a) and the applicant has not, within the time limit referred to in that paragraph, paid in full the amount due, including, where applicable, the late payment fee under Rule 58^{bis}.2, the demand shall, subject to paragraph (c), be considered as if it had not been submitted and the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall so declare.

(c) Any payment received by the International Preliminary Examining Authority before that Authority sends the invitation under paragraph (a) shall be considered to have been received before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 57.3 or 58.1(b), as the case may be.

(d) Any payment received by the International Preliminary Examining Authority before that Authority proceeds under paragraph (b) shall be considered to have been received before the expiration of the time limit under paragraph (a).

58^{bis}.2 Late Payment Fee

(a) The payment of fees in response to an invitation under Rule 58^{bis}.1(a) may be subjected by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to the payment to it, for its own benefit, of a late payment fee. The amount of that fee shall be:

(i) 50% of the amount of unpaid fees which is specified in the invitation, or,

(ii) if the amount calculated under item (i) is less than the handling fee, an amount equal to the handling fee.

(b) The amount of the late payment fee shall not, however, exceed double the amount of the handling fee.

Rule 59

The Competent International Preliminary Examining Authority

59.1 Demands Under Article 31(2)(a)

(a) For demands made under Article 31(2)(a), each receiving Office of or acting for a Contracting State bound by the provisions of Chapter II shall, in accordance with the terms of the applicable agreement referred to in Article 32(2) and (3), inform the International Bureau which International Preliminary Examining Authority is or which International Preliminary Examining Authorities are competent for the international preliminary examination of international applications filed with it. The International Bureau shall promptly publish such information. Where several International Preliminary Examining Authorities are competent, the provisions of Rule 35.2 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

(b) Where the international application was filed with the International Bureau as receiving Office

under Rule 19.1(a)(iii), Rule 35.3(a) and (b) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*. Paragraph (a) of this Rule shall not apply to the International Bureau as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii).

59.2 Demands Under Article 31(2)(b)

As to demands made under Article 31(2)(b), the Assembly, in specifying the International Preliminary Examining Authority competent for international applications filed with a national Office which is an International Preliminary Examining Authority, shall give preference to that Authority; if the national Office is not an International Preliminary Examining Authority, the Assembly shall give preference to the International Preliminary Examining Authority recommended by that Office.

59.3 Transmittal of Demand to the Competent International Preliminary Examining Authority

(a) If the demand is submitted to a receiving Office, an International Searching Authority, or an International Preliminary Examining Authority which is not competent for the international preliminary examination of the international application, that Office or Authority shall mark the date of receipt on the demand and, unless it decides to proceed under paragraph (f), transmit the demand promptly to the International Bureau.

(b) If the demand is submitted to the International Bureau, the International Bureau shall mark the date of receipt on the demand.

(c) Where the demand is transmitted to the International Bureau under paragraph (a) or submitted to it under paragraph (b), the International Bureau shall promptly:

(i) if there is only one competent International Preliminary Examining Authority, transmit the demand to that Authority and inform the applicant accordingly, or

(ii) if two or more International Preliminary Examining Authorities are competent, invite the applicant to indicate, within 15 days from the date of the invitation or 19 months from the priority date, whichever is later, the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority to which the demand should be transmitted.

(d) Where an indication is furnished as required under paragraph (c)(ii), the International Bureau shall promptly transmit the demand to the competent Inter-

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

national Preliminary Examining Authority indicated by the applicant. Where no indication is so furnished, the demand shall be considered not to have been submitted and the International Bureau shall so declare.

(e) Where the demand is transmitted to a competent International Preliminary Examining Authority under paragraph (c), it shall be considered to have been received on behalf of that Authority on the date marked on it under paragraph (a) or (b), as applicable, and the demand so transmitted shall be considered to have been received by that Authority on that date.

(f) Where an Office or Authority to which the demand is submitted under paragraph (a) decides to transmit that demand directly to the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority, paragraphs (c) to (e) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

Rule 60

Certain Defects in the Demand or Elections

60.1 Defects in the Demand

(a) If the demand does not comply with the requirements specified in Rules 53.1, 53.2(a)(i) to (iv), 53.2(b), 53.3 to 53.8, and 55.1, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall invite the applicant to correct the defects within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances. That time limit shall not be less than one month from the date of the invitation. It may be extended by the International Preliminary Examining Authority at any time before a decision is taken.

(b) If the applicant complies with the invitation within the time limit under paragraph (a), the demand shall be considered as if it had been received on the actual filing date, provided that the demand as submitted contained at least one election and permitted the international application to be identified; otherwise, the demand shall be considered as if it had been received on the date on which the International Preliminary Examining Authority receives the correction.

(c) Subject to paragraph (d), if the applicant does not comply with the invitation within the time limit under paragraph (a), the demand shall be considered as if it had not been submitted and the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall so declare.

(d) Where, after the expiration of the time limit under paragraph (a), a signature required under Rule

53.8 or a prescribed indication is lacking in respect of an applicant for a certain elected State, the election of that State considered as if it had not been made.

(e) If the defect is noticed by the International Bureau, it shall bring the defect to the attention of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, which shall then proceed as provided in paragraphs (a) to (d).

(f) If the demand does not contain a statement concerning amendments, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall proceed as provided for in Rules 66.1 and 69.1(a) or (b).

(g) Where the statement concerning amendments contains an indication that amendments under Article 34 are submitted with the demand (Rule 53.9(c)) but no such amendments are, in fact, submitted, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall invite the applicant to submit the amendments within a time limit fixed in the invitation and shall proceed as provided for in Rule 69.1(e).

60.2 Defects in Later Elections

(a) If the notice effecting a later election does not comply with the requirements of Rule 56, the International Bureau shall invite the applicant to correct the defects within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances. That time limit shall not be less than one month from the date of the invitation. It may be extended by the International Bureau at any time before a decision is taken.

(b) If the applicant complies with the invitation within the time limit under paragraph (a), the notice shall be considered as if it had been received on the actual filing date, provided that the notice as submitted contained at least one election and permitted the international application to be identified; otherwise, the notice shall be considered as if it had been received on the date on which the International Bureau receives the correction.

(c) Subject to paragraph (d), if the applicant does not comply with the invitation within the time limit under paragraph (a), the notice shall be considered as if it had not been submitted.

(d) Where, in respect of an applicant for a certain elected State, the signature required under Rule 56.1(b) and (c) or the name or address is lacking after the expiration of the time limit under paragraph (a), the later election of that State shall be considered as if it had not been made.

Rule 61

Notification of the Demand and Elections

61.1 Notification to the International Bureau and the Applicant

(a) The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall indicate on the demand the date of receipt or, where applicable, the date referred to in Rule 60.1(b). The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall promptly either send the demand to the International Bureau and keep a copy in its files or send a copy to the International Bureau and keep the demand in its files.

(b) The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall promptly notify the applicant of the date of receipt of the demand. Where the demand has been considered under Rules 54.4, 55.2(d), 58^{bis}.1(b) or 60.1(c) as if it had not been submitted or where an election has been considered under Rule 60.1(d) as if it had not been made, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall notify the applicant and the International Bureau accordingly.

(c) The International Bureau shall promptly notify the applicant of the receipt, and the date of receipt, of any notice effecting a later election. That date shall be the actual date of receipt by the International Bureau or, where applicable, the date referred to in Rule 56.1(f) or 60.2(b). Where the notice has been considered under Rule 60.2(c) as if it had not been submitted or where a later election has been considered under Rule 60.2(d) as if it had not been made, the International Bureau shall notify the applicant accordingly.

61.2 Notification to the Elected Offices

(a) The notification provided for in Article 31(7) shall be effected by the International Bureau.

(b) The notification shall indicate the number and filing date of the international application, the name of the applicant, the filing date of the application whose priority is claimed (where priority is claimed), the date of receipt by the International Preliminary Examining Authority of the demand, and - in the case of a later election - the date of receipt of the notice effecting the later election. The latter date shall be the actual date of receipt by the International Bureau or, where applicable, the date referred to in Rule 56.1(f) or 60.2(b).

(c) The notification shall be sent to the elected Office together with the communication provided for in Article 20. Elections effected after such communication shall be notified promptly after they have been made.

(d) Where the applicant makes an express request to an elected Office under Article 40(2) before the communication provided for in Article 20 has taken place, the International Bureau shall, upon request of the applicant or the elected Office, promptly effect that communication to that Office.

61.3 Information for the Applicant

The International Bureau shall inform the applicant in writing of the notification referred to in Rule 61.2 and of the elected Offices notified under Article 31(7).

61.4 Publication in the Gazette

Where a demand has been filed before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, the International Bureau shall, promptly after the filing of the demand but not before the international publication of the international application, publish in the Gazette information on the demand and the elected States concerned, as provided in the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 62

Copy of Amendments Under Article 19 for the International Preliminary Examining Authority

62.1 Amendments Made Before the Demand Is Filed

Upon receipt of a demand, or a copy thereof, from the International Preliminary Examining Authority, the International Bureau shall promptly transmit a copy of any amendments under Article 19, and any statement referred to in that Article, to that Authority, unless that Authority has indicated that it has already received such a copy.

62.2 Amendments Made After the Demand Is Filed

If, at the time of filing any amendments under Article 19, a demand has already been submitted, the applicant shall preferably, at the same time as he files the amendments with the International Bureau, also file with the International Preliminary Examining Authority a copy of such amendments and any statement referred to in that Article. In any case, the International Bureau shall promptly transmit a copy of such amendments and statement to that Authority.

Rule 63

Minimum Requirements for International Preliminary Examining Authorities

63.1 Definition of Minimum Requirements

The minimum requirements referred to in Article 32(3) shall be the following:

(i) the national Office or intergovernmental organization must have at least 100 full-time employees with sufficient technical qualifications to carry out examinations;

(ii) that Office or organization must have at its ready disposal at least the minimum documentation referred to in Rule 34, properly arranged for examination purposes;

(iii) that Office or organization must have a staff which is capable of examining in the required technical fields and which has the language facilities to understand at least those languages in which the minimum documentation referred to in Rule 34 is written or is translated.

Rule 64

Prior Art for International Preliminary Examination

64.1 Prior Art

(a) For the purposes of Article 33(2) and (3), everything made available to the public anywhere in the world by means of written disclosure (including drawings and other illustrations) shall be considered prior art provided that such making available occurred prior to the relevant date.

(b) For the purposes of paragraph (a), the relevant date will be:

(i) subject to item (ii), the international filing date of the international application under international preliminary examination;

(ii) where the international application under international preliminary examination validly claims the priority of an earlier application, the filing date of such earlier application.

64.2 Non-Written Disclosures

In cases where the making available to the public occurred by means of an oral disclosure, use, exhibi-

tion or other non-written means ("non-written disclosure") before the relevant date as defined in Rule 64.1(b) and the date of such non-written disclosure is indicated in a written disclosure which has been made available to the public on a date which is the same as, or later than, the relevant date, the non-written disclosure shall not be considered part of the prior art for the purposes of Article 33(2) and (3). Nevertheless, the international preliminary examination report shall call attention to such non-written disclosure in the manner provided for in Rule 70.9.

64.3 Certain Published Documents

In cases where any application or any patent which would constitute prior art for the purposes of Article 33(2) and (3) had it been published prior to the relevant date referred to in Rule 64.1 was published on a date which is the same as, or later than, the relevant date but was filed earlier than the relevant date or claimed the priority of an earlier application which had been filed prior to the relevant date, such published application or patent shall not be considered part of the prior art for the purposes of Article 33(2) and (3). Nevertheless, the international preliminary examination report shall call attention to such application or patent in the manner provided for in Rule 70.10.

Rule 65

Inventive Step or Non-Obviousness

65.1 Approach to Prior Art

For the purposes of Article 33(3), the international preliminary examination shall take into consideration the relation of any particular claim to the prior art as a whole. It shall take into consideration the claim's relation not only to individual documents or parts thereof taken separately but also its relation to combinations of such documents or parts of documents, where such combinations are obvious to a person skilled in the art.

65.2 Relevant Date

For the purposes of Article 33(3), the relevant date for the consideration of inventive step (non-obviousness) is the date prescribed in Rule 64.1.

Rule 66

Procedure Before the International Preliminary Examining Authority

66.1 Basis of the International Preliminary Examination

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) to (d), the international preliminary examination shall be based on the international application as filed.

(b) The applicant may submit amendments under Article 34 at the time of filing the demand or, subject to Rule 66.4^{bis}, until the international preliminary examination report is established.

(c) Any amendments under Article 19 made before the demand was filed shall be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination unless superseded, or considered as reversed, by an amendment under Article 34.

(d) Any amendments under Article 19 made after the demand was filed and any amendments under Article 34 submitted to the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, subject to Rule 66.4^{bis}, be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination.

(e) Claims relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of international preliminary examination.

66.2 First Written Opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority

(a) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority

(i) considers that any of the situations referred to in Article 34(4) exists,

(ii) considers that the international preliminary examination report should be negative in respect of any of the claims because the invention claimed therein does not appear to be novel, does not appear to involve an inventive step (does not appear to be non-obvious), or does not appear to be industrially applicable,

(iii) notices that there is some defect in the form or contents of the international application under the Treaty or these Regulations,

(iv) considers that any amendment goes beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed,

(v) wishes to accompany the international preliminary examination report by observations on the clarity of the claims, the description, and the drawings, or the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description,

(vi) considers that a claim relates to an invention in respect of which no international search report has been established and has decided not to carry out the international preliminary examination in respect of that claim, or

(vii) considers that a nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing is not available to it in such a form that a meaningful international preliminary examination can be carried out, the said Authority shall notify the applicant accordingly in writing. Where the national law of the national Office acting as International Preliminary Examining Authority does not allow multiple dependent claims to be drafted in a manner different from that provided for in the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a), the International Preliminary Examining Authority may, in case of failure to use that manner of claiming, apply Article 34(4)(b). In such case, it shall notify the applicant accordingly in writing.

(b) The notification shall fully state the reasons for the opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(c) The notification shall invite the applicant to submit a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments.

(d) The notification shall fix a time limit for the reply. The time limit shall be reasonable under the circumstances. It shall normally be two months after the date of notification. In no case shall it be shorter than one month after the said date. It shall be at least two months after the said date where the international search report is transmitted at the same time as the notification. It shall not be more than three months after the said date but may be extended if the applicant so requests before its expiration.

66.3 Formal Response to the International Preliminary Examining Authority

(a) The applicant may respond to the invitation referred to in Rule 66.2(c) of the International Preliminary Examining Authority by making amendments or - if he disagrees with the opinion of that Authority - by submitting arguments, as the case may be, or do both.

(b) Any response shall be submitted directly to the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

66.4 Additional Opportunity for Submitting Amendments or Arguments

(a) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority wishes to issue one or more additional written opinions, it may do so, and Rules 66.2 and 66.3 shall apply.

(b) On the request of the applicant, the International Preliminary Examining Authority may give him one or more additional opportunities to submit amendments or arguments.

66.4^{bis} Consideration of Amendments and Arguments

Amendments or arguments need not be taken into account by the International Preliminary Examining Authority for the purposes of a written opinion or the international preliminary examination report if they are received after that Authority has begun to draw up that opinion or report.

66.5 Amendment

Any change, other than the rectification of obvious errors, in the claims, the description, or the drawings, including cancellation of claims, omission of passages in the description, or omission of certain drawings, shall be considered an amendment.

66.6 Informal Communications with the Applicant

The International Preliminary Examining Authority may, at any time, communicate informally, over the telephone, in writing, or through personal interviews, with the applicant. The said Authority shall, at its discretion, decide whether it wishes to grant more than one personal interview if so requested by the applicant, or whether it wishes to reply to any informal written communication from the applicant.

66.7 Priority Document

(a) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority needs a copy of the application whose priority is claimed in the international application, the International Bureau shall, on request, promptly furnish such copy. If that copy is not furnished to the International Preliminary Examining Authority because the applicant failed to comply with the requirements of Rule 17.1, the international preliminary examination report may be established as if the priority had not been claimed.

(b) If the application whose priority is claimed in the international application is in a language other than the language or one of the languages of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, that Authority may, where the validity of the priority claim is relevant for the formulation of the opinion referred to in Article 33(1), invite the applicant to furnish a translation in the said language or one of the said languages within two months from the date of the invitation. If the translation is not furnished within that time limit, the international preliminary examination report may be established as if the priority had not been claimed.

66.8 Form of Amendments

(a) Subject to paragraph (b), the applicant shall be required to submit a replacement sheet for every sheet of the international application which, on account of an amendment, differs from the sheet previously filed. The letter accompanying the replacement sheets shall draw attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets and shall preferably also explain the reasons for the amendment.

(b) Where the amendment consists in the deletion of passages or in minor alterations or additions, the replacement sheet referred to in paragraph (a) may be a copy of the relevant sheet of the international application containing the alterations or additions, provided that the clarity and direct reproducibility of that sheet are not adversely affected. To the extent that any amendment results in the cancellation of an entire sheet, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter which shall preferably also explain the reasons for the amendment.

66.9 Language of Amendments

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) and (c), if the international application has been filed in a language other than the language in which it is published, any amendment, as well as any letter referred to in Rule 66.8, shall be submitted in the language of publication.

(b) If the international preliminary examination is carried out, pursuant to rule 55.2, on the basis of a translation of the international application, any amendment, as well as any letter referred to in paragraph (a), shall be submitted in the language of that translation.

(c) Subject to Rule 55.3, if an amendment or letter is not submitted in a language as required under paragraph (a) or (b), the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, if practicable, having regard to the time limit for establishing the international preliminary examination report, invite the applicant to furnish the amendment or letter in the required language within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances.

(d) If the applicant fails to comply, within the time limit under paragraph (c), with the invitation to furnish an amendment in the required language, the amendment shall not be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination. If the applicant fails to comply, within the time limit under paragraph (c), with the invitation to furnish a letter referred to in paragraph (a) in the required language, the amendment concerned need not be taken into account for the purposes of the international preliminary examination.

Rule 67

Subject Matter Under Article 34(4)(a)(i)

67.1 Definition

No International Preliminary Examining Authority shall be required to carry out an international preliminary examination on an international application if, and to the extent to which, its subject matter is any of the following:

- (i) scientific and mathematical theories,
- (ii) plant or animal varieties or essentially biological processes for the production of plants and animals, other than microbiological processes and the products of such processes,
- (iii) schemes, rules, or methods of doing business, performing purely mental acts, or playing games,
- (iv) methods for treatment of the human or animal body by surgery or therapy, as well as diagnostic methods,
- (v) mere presentations of information,
- (vi) computer programs to the extent that the International Preliminary Examining Authority is not equipped to carry out an international preliminary examination concerning such programs.

Rule 68

Lack of Unity of Invention (International Preliminary Examination)

68.1 *No Invitation to Restrict or Pay*

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority finds that the requirement of unity of invention is not complied with and chooses not to invite the applicant to restrict the claims or to pay additional fees, it shall proceed with the international preliminary examination, subject to Article 34(4)(b) and Rule 66.1(e), in respect of the entire international application, but shall indicate, in any written opinion and in the international preliminary examination report, that it considers that the requirement of unity of invention is not fulfilled and it shall specify the reasons therefor.

68.2 *Invitation to Restrict or Pay*

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority finds that the requirement of unity of invention is not complied with and chooses to invite the applicant, at his option, to restrict the claims or to pay additional fees, it shall specify at least one possibility of restriction which, in the opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, would be in compliance with the applicable requirement, and shall specify the amount of the additional fees and the reasons for which the international application is not considered as complying with the requirement of unity of invention. It shall, at the same time, fix a time limit, with regard to the circumstances of the case, for complying with the invitation; such time limit shall not be shorter than one month, and it shall not be longer than two months, from the date of the invitation.

68.3 *Additional Fees*

(a) The amount of the additional fee due for international preliminary examination under Article 34(3)(a) shall be determined by the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(b) The additional fee due for international preliminary examination under Article 34(3)(a) shall be payable direct to the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(c) Any applicant may pay the additional fee under protest, that is, accompanied by a reasoned statement to the effect that the international application complies with the requirement of unity of inven-

tion or that the amount of the required additional fee is excessive. Such protest shall be examined by a three-member board or other special instance of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, or any competent higher authority, which, to the extent that it finds the protest justified, shall order the total or partial reimbursement to the applicant of the additional fee. On the request of the applicant, the text of both the protest and the decision thereon shall be notified to the elected Offices as an annex to the international preliminary examination report.

(d) The three-member board, special instance or competent higher authority, referred to in paragraph (c), shall not comprise any person who made the decision which is the subject of the protest.

(e) Where the applicant has, under paragraph (c), paid an additional fee under protest, the International Preliminary Examining Authority may, after a prior review of the justification for the invitation to pay an additional fee, require that the applicant pay a fee for the examination of the protest ("protest fee"). The protest fee shall be paid within one month from the date of the notification to the applicant of the result of the review. If the protest fee is not so paid, the protest shall be considered withdrawn. The protest fee shall be refunded to the applicant where the three-member board, special instance or higher authority referred to in paragraph (c) finds that the protest was entirely justified.

68.4 *Procedure in the Case of Insufficient Restriction of the Claims*

If the applicant restricts the claims but not sufficiently to comply with the requirement of unity of invention, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall proceed as provided in Article 34(3)(c).

68.5 *Main Invention*

In case of doubt which invention is the main invention for the purposes of Article 34(3)(c), the invention first mentioned in the claims shall be considered the main invention.

Rule 69

Start of and Time Limit for International Preliminary Examination

69.1 *Start of International Preliminary Examination*

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) to (e), the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall start the international preliminary examination when it is in possession both of the demand and of either the international search report or a notice of the declaration by the International Searching Authority under Article 17(2)(a) that no international search report will be established.

(b) If the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority is part of the same national Office or intergovernmental organization as the competent International Searching Authority, the international preliminary examination may, if the International Preliminary Examining Authority so wishes and subject to paragraph (d), start at the same time as the international search.

(c) Where the statement concerning amendments contains an indication that amendments under Article 19 are to be taken into account (Rule 53.9(a)(i)), the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall not start the international preliminary examination before it has received a copy of the amendments concerned.

(d) Where the statement concerning amendments contains an indication that the start of the international preliminary examination is to be postponed (Rule 53.9(b)), the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall not start the international preliminary examination before

(i) it has received a copy of any amendments made under Article 19,

(ii) it has received a notice from the applicant that he does not wish to make amendments under Article 19, or

(iii) the expiration of 20 months from the priority date, whichever occurs first.

(e) Where the statement concerning amendments contains an indication that amendments under Article 34 are submitted with the demand (Rule 53.9(c)) but no such amendments are, in fact, submitted, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall not start the international preliminary examination before it has received the amendments or before the time limit fixed in the invitation referred to in Rule 60.1(g) has expired, whichever occurs first.

69.2 *Time Limit for International Preliminary Examination*

The time limit for establishing the international preliminary examination report shall be:

- (i) 28 months from the priority date, or
- (ii) eight months from the date of payment of the fees referred to in Rules 57.1 and 58.1(a), or
- (iii) eight months from the date of receipt by the International Preliminary Examining Authority of the translation furnished under Rule 55.2, whichever expires last.

Rule 70

The International Preliminary Examination Report

70.1 Definition

For the purposes of this Rule, "report" shall mean international preliminary examination report.

70.2 Basis of the Report

(a) If the claims have been amended, the report shall issue on the claims as amended.

(b) If, pursuant to Rule 66.7(a) or (b), the report is established as if the priority had not been claimed, the report shall so indicate.

(c) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that any amendment goes beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed, the report shall be established as if such amendment had not been made, and the report shall so indicate. It shall also indicate the reasons why it considers that the amendment goes beyond the said disclosure.

(d) Where claims relate to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established and have therefore not been the subject of international preliminary examination, the international preliminary examination report shall so indicate.

70.3 Identifications

The report shall identify the International Preliminary Examining Authority which established it by indicating the name of such Authority, and the international application by indicating the international application number, the name of the applicant, and the international filing date.

70.4 Dates

The report shall indicate:

- (i) the date on which the demand was submitted, and

- (ii) the date of the report; that date shall be the date on which the report is completed.

70.5 Classification

(a) The report shall repeat the classification given under Rule 43.3 if the International Preliminary Examining Authority agrees with such classification.

(b) Otherwise, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall indicate in the report the classification, at least according to the International Patent Classification, which it considers correct.

70.6 Statement Under Article 35(2)

(a) The statement referred to in Article 35(2) shall consist of the words "YES" or "NO," or their equivalent in the language of the report, or some appropriate sign provided for in the Administrative Instructions, and shall be accompanied by the citations, explanations, and observations, if any, referred to in the last sentence of Article 35(2).

(b) If any of the three criteria referred to in Article 35(2) (that is, novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), industrial applicability) is not satisfied, the statement shall be negative. If, in such a case, any of the criteria, taken separately, is satisfied, the report shall specify the criterion or criteria so satisfied.

70.7 Citations Under Article 35(2)

(a) The report shall cite the documents considered to be relevant for supporting the statements made under Article 35(2), whether or not such documents are cited in the international search report. Documents cited in the international search report need only be cited in the report when they are considered by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to be relevant.

(b) The provisions of Rule 43.5(b) and (e) shall apply also to the report.

70.8 Explanations Under Article 35(2)

The Administrative Instructions shall contain guidelines for cases in which the explanations referred to in Article 35(2) should or should not be given and the form of such explanations. Such guidelines shall be based on the following principles:

- (i) explanations shall be given whenever the statement in relation to any claim is negative;
- (ii) explanations shall be given whenever the statement is positive unless the reason for citing any

document is easy to imagine on the basis of consultation of the cited document;

(iii) generally, explanations shall be given if the case provided for in the last sentence of Rule 70.6(b) obtains.

70.9 *Non-Written Disclosures*

Any non-written disclosure referred to in the report by virtue of Rule 64.2 shall be mentioned by indicating its kind, the date on which the written disclosure referring to the non-written disclosure was made available to the public, and the date on which the non-written disclosure occurred in public.

70.10 *Certain Published Documents*

Any published application or any patent referred to in the report by virtue of Rule 64.3 shall be mentioned as such and shall be accompanied by an indication of its date of publication, of its filing date, and its claimed priority date (if any). In respect of the priority date of any such document, the report may indicate that, in the opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority, such date has not been validly claimed.

70.11 *Mention of Amendments*

If, before the International Preliminary Examining Authority, amendments have been made, this fact shall be indicated in the report. Where any amendment has resulted in the cancellation of an entire sheet, this fact shall also be specified in the report.

70.12 *Mention of Certain Defects and Other Matters*

If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that, at the time it prepares the report:

(i) the international application contains any of the defects referred to in Rule 66.2(a)(iii), it shall include this opinion and the reasons therefor in the report;

(ii) the international application calls for any of the observations referred to in Rule 66.2(a)(v), it may include this opinion in the report and, if it does, it shall also indicate in the report the reasons for such opinion;

(iii) any of the situations referred to in Article 34(4) exists, it shall state this opinion and the reasons therefor in the reports;

(iv) a nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing is not available to it in such a form that a mean-

ingful international preliminary examination can be carried out, it shall so state in the report.

70.13 *Remarks Concerning Unity of Invention*

If the applicant paid additional fees for the international preliminary examination, or if the international application or the international preliminary examination was restricted under Article 34(3), the report shall so indicate. Furthermore, where the international preliminary examination was carried out on restricted claims (Article 34(3)(a)), or on the main invention only (Article 34(3)(c)), the report shall indicate what parts of the international application were and what parts were not the subject of international preliminary examination. The report shall contain the indications provided for in Rule 68.1, where the International Preliminary Examining Authority chose not to invite the applicant to restrict the claims or to pay additional fees.

70.14 *Authorized Officer*

The report shall indicate the name of the officer of the International Preliminary Examining Authority responsible for that report.

70.15 *Form*

The physical requirements as to the form of the report shall be prescribed by the Administrative Instructions.

70.16 *Annexes to the Report*

Each replacement sheet under Rule 66.8(a) or (b), each replacement sheet containing amendments under Article 19 and each replacement sheet containing rectifications of obvious errors authorized under Rule 91.1(e)(iii) shall, unless superseded by later replacement sheets or amendments resulting in the cancellation of entire sheets under Rule 66.8(b), be annexed to the report. Amendments under Article 19 which have been considered as reversed by an amendment under Article 34 and letters under Rule 66.8 shall not be annexed.

70.17 *Languages of the Report and the Annexes*

The report and any annex shall be in the language in which the international application to which they relate is published, or, if the international preliminary examination is carried out, pursuant to Rule 55.2, on the basis of a translation of the international application in the language of that translation.

Rule 71

Transmittal of the International Preliminary Examination Report

71.1 Recipients

The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, on the same day, transmit one copy of the international preliminary examination report and its annexes, if any, to the International Bureau, and one copy to the applicant.

71.2 Copies of Cited Documents

(a) The request under Article 36(4) may be presented any time during seven years from the international filing date of the international application to which the report relates.

(b) The International Preliminary Examining Authority may require that the party (applicant or elected Office) presenting the request pay to it the cost of preparing and mailing the copies. The level of the cost of preparing copies shall be provided for in the agreements referred to in Article 32(2) between the International Preliminary Examining Authorities and the International Bureau.

(c) *[Deleted]*

(d) Any International Preliminary Examining Authority may perform the obligations referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) through another agency responsible to it.

Rule 72

Translation of the International Preliminary Examination Report

72.1 Languages

(a) Any elected State may require that the international preliminary examination report, established in any language other than the official language, or one of the official languages, of its national Office, be translated into English.

(b) Any such requirement shall be notified to the International Bureau, which shall promptly publish it in the Gazette.

72.2 Copy of Translation for the Applicant

The International Bureau shall transmit a copy of the translation referred to in Rule 72.1(a) of the international preliminary examination report to the appli-

cant at the same time as it communicates such translation to the interested elected Office or Offices.

72.3 Observations on the Translation

The applicant may make written observations on what, in his opinion, are errors of translation in the translation of the international preliminary examination report and shall send a copy of any such observations to each of the interested elected Offices and a copy to the International Bureau.

Rule 73

Communication of the International Preliminary Examination Report

73.1 Preparation of Copies

The International Bureau shall prepare the copies of the documents to be communicated under Article 36(3)(a).

73.2 Time Limit for Communication

The communication provided for in Article 36(3)(a) shall be effected as promptly as possible but not earlier than the communication under Article 20.

Rule 74

Translations of Annexes of the International Preliminary Examination Report and Transmittal Thereof

74.1 Contents of Translation and Time Limit for Transmittal Thereof

(a) Where the furnishing of a translation of the international application is required by the elected Office under Article 39(1), the applicant shall, within the time limit applicable under Article 39(1), transmit a translation of any replacement sheet referred to in Rule 70.16 which is annexed to the international preliminary examination report unless such sheet is in the language of the required translation of the international application. The same time limit shall apply where the furnishing of a translation of the international application to the elected Office must, because of a declaration made under Article 64(2)(a)(i), be effected within the time limit applicable under Article 22.

(b) Where the furnishing under Article 39(1) of a translation of the international application is not required by the elected Office, that Office may require

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

the applicant to furnish, within the time limit applicable under that Article, a translation into the language in which the international application was published of any replacement sheet referred to in Rule 70.16 which is annexed to the international preliminary examination report and is not in that language.

Rule 75

[Deleted]

Rule 76

Copy, Translation and Fee Under Article 39(1); Translation of Priority Document

76.1, 76.2 and 76.3 [Deleted]

76.4 Time Limit for Translation of Priority Document

The applicant shall not be required to furnish to any elected Office a translation of the priority document before the expiration of the applicable time limit under Article 39.

76.5 Application of Rules 22.1(g), 49 and 51^{bis}

Rules 22.1(g), 49 and 51^{bis} shall apply, provided that:

(i) any reference in the said Rules to the designated Office or to the designated State shall be construed as a reference to the elected Office or to the elected State, respectively;

(ii) any reference in the said Rules to Article 22 or Article 24(2) shall be construed as a reference to Article 39(1) or Article 39(3), respectively;

(iii) the words "international applications filed" in Rule 49.1(c) shall be replaced by the words "a demand submitted;"

(iv) for the purposes of Article 39(1), where an international preliminary examination report has been established, a translation of any amendment under Article 19 shall only be required if that amendment is annexed to that report.

76.6 Transitional Provision

If, on July 12, 1991, Rule 76.5(iv) is not compatible with the national law applied by the elected Office in respect of claims amended under Article 19, Rule 76.5(iv) shall not apply in that respect to that elected Office for as long as it continues not to be compatible with that law, provided that the said Office informs

the International Bureau accordingly by December 31, 1991. The information received shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

Rule 77

Faculty Under Article 39(1)(b)

77.1 Exercise of Faculty

(a) Any Contracting State allowing a time limit expiring later than the time limit provided for in Article 39(1)(a) shall notify the International Bureau of the time limit so fixed.

(b) Any notification received by the International Bureau under paragraph (a) shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette.

(c) Notifications concerning the shortening of the previously fixed time limit shall be effective in relation to demands submitted after the expiration of three months computed from the date on which the notification was published by the International Bureau.

(d) Notifications concerning the lengthening of the previously fixed time limit shall become effective upon publication by the International Bureau in the Gazette in respect of demands pending at the time or submitted after the date of such publication, or, if the Contracting State effecting the notification fixes some later date, as from the latter date.

Rule 78

Amendment of the Claims, the Description, and the Drawings, Before Elected Offices

78.1 Time Limit Where Election Is Effected Prior To Expiration of 19 Months from Priority Date

(a) Where the election of any Contracting State is effected prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date, the applicant shall, if he so wishes, exercise the right under Article 41 to amend the claims, the description and the drawings, before the elected Office concerned within one month from the fulfillment of the requirements under Article 39(1)(a), provided that, if the transmittal of the international preliminary examination report under Article 36(1) has not taken place by the expiration of the time limit applicable under Article 39, he shall exercise the said right not later than four months after such expiration date. In either case, the applicant may exercise

the said right at any other time if so permitted by the national law of the said State.

(b) In any elected State in which the national law provides that examination starts only on special request, the national law may provide that the time limit within or the time at which the applicant may exercise the right under Article 41 shall, where the election of any Contracting State is effected prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date, be the same as that provided by the national law for the filing of amendments in the case of the examination, on special request, of national applications, provided that such time limit shall not expire prior to, or such time shall not come before, the expiration of the time limit applicable under paragraph (a).

78.2 Time Limit Where Election is Effected after Expiration of 19 Months from Priority Date

Where the election of any Contracting State has been effected after the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date and the applicant wishes to make amendments under Article 41, the time limit for making amendments under Article 28 shall apply.

78.3 Utility Models

The provisions of Rules 6.5 and 13.5 shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, before elected Offices. If the election was made before the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date, the reference to the time limit applicable under Article 22 is replaced by a reference to the time limit applicable under Article 39.

PART D

**Rules Concerning
Chapter III of the Treaty**

Rule 79

Calendar

79.1 Expressing Dates

Applicants, national Offices, receiving Offices, International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities, and the International Bureau, shall, for the purposes of the Treaty and the Regulations, express any date in terms of the Christian era and the Gregorian calendar, or, if they use other eras and calendars, they shall also express any date in terms of the Christian era and the Gregorian calendar.

Rule 80

Computation of Time Limits

80.1 Periods Expressed in Years

When a period is expressed as one year or a certain number of years, computation shall start on the day following the day on which the relevant event occurred, and the period shall expire in the relevant subsequent year in the month having the same name and on the day having the same number as the month and the day on which the said event occurred, provided that if the relevant subsequent month has no day with the same number the period shall expire on the last day of that month.

80.2 Periods Expressed in Months

When a period is expressed as one month or a certain number of months, computation shall start on the day following the day on which the relevant event occurred, and the period shall expire in the relevant subsequent month on the day which has the same number as the day on which the said event occurred, provided that if the relevant subsequent month has no day with the same number the period shall expire on the last day of that month.

80.3 Periods Expressed in Days

When a period is expressed as a certain number of days, computation shall start on the day following the day on which the relevant event occurred, and the period shall expire on the day on which the last day of the count has been reached.

80.4 Local Dates

(a) The date which is taken into consideration as the starting date of the computation of any period shall be the date which prevails in the locality at the time when the relevant event occurred.

(b) The date on which any period expires shall be the date which prevails in the locality in which the required document must be filed or the required fee must be paid.

80.5 Expiration on a Non-Working Day

If the expiration of any period during which any document or fee must reach a national Office or inter-governmental organization falls on a day on which such Office or organization is not open to the public for the purposes of the transaction of official business, or on which ordinary mail is not delivered in the

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

locality in which such Office or organization is situated, the period shall expire on the next subsequent day on which neither of the said two circumstances exists.

80.6 *Date of Documents*

Where a period starts on the day of the date of a document or letter emanating from a national Office or intergovernmental organization, any interested party may prove that the said document or letter was mailed on a day later than the date it bears, in which case the date of actual mailing shall, for the purposes of computing the period, be considered to be the date on which the period starts. Irrespective of the date on which such a document or letter was mailed, if the applicant offers to the national Office or intergovernmental organization evidence which satisfies the national Office or intergovernmental organization that the document or letter was received more than seven days after the date it bears, the national Office or intergovernmental organization shall treat the period starting from the date of the document or letter as expiring later by an additional number of days which is equal to the number of days which the document or letter was received later than seven days after the date it bears.

80.7 *End of Working Day*

(a) A period expiring on a given day shall expire at the moment the national Office or intergovernmental organization with which the document must be filed or to which the fee must be paid closes for business on that day.

(b) Any Office or organization may depart from the provisions of paragraph (a) up to midnight on the relevant day.

(c) *[Deleted]*

Rule 81

Modification of Time Limits Fixed in the Treaty

81.1 *Proposal*

(a) Any Contracting State or the Director General may propose a modification under Article 47(2).

(b) Proposals made by a Contracting State shall be presented to the Director General.

81.2 *Decision by the Assembly*

(a) When the proposal is made to the Assembly, its text shall be sent by the Director General to all

Contracting States at least two months in advance of that session of the Assembly whose agenda includes the proposal.

(b) During the discussion of the proposal in the Assembly, the proposal may be amended or consequential amendments proposed.

(c) The proposal shall be considered adopted if none of the Contracting States present at the time of voting votes against the proposal.

81.3 *Voting by Correspondence*

(a) When voting by correspondence is chosen, the proposal shall be included in a written communication from the Director General to the Contracting States, inviting them to express their vote in writing.

(b) The invitation shall fix the time limit within which the reply containing the vote expressed in writing must reach the International Bureau. That time limit shall not be less than three months from the date of the invitation.

(c) Replies must be either positive or negative. Proposals for amendments or mere observations shall not be regarded as votes.

(d) The proposal shall be considered adopted if none of the Contracting States opposes the amendment and if at least one-half of the Contracting States express either approval or indifference or abstention.

Rule 82

Irregularities in the Mail Service

82.1 *Delay or Loss in Mail*

(a) Any interested party may offer evidence that he has mailed the document or letter five days prior to the expiration of the time limit. Except in cases where surface mail normally arrives at its destination within two days of mailing, or where no airmail service is available, such evidence may be offered only if the mailing was by airmail. In any case, evidence may be offered only if the mailing was by mail registered by the postal authorities.

(b) If the mailing, in accordance with paragraph (a), of a document or letter is proven to the satisfaction of the national Office or intergovernmental organization which is the addressee, delay in arrival shall be excused, or, if the document or letter is lost in the mail, substitution for it of a new copy shall be permitted, provided that the interested party proves to the satisfaction of the said Office or organization that the

document or letter offered in substitution is identical with the document or letter lost.

(c) In the cases provided for in paragraph (b), evidence of mailing within the prescribed time limit, and, where the document or letter was lost, the substitute document or letter as well as the evidence concerning its identity with the document or letter lost shall be submitted within one month after the date on which the interested party noticed - or with due diligence should have noticed - the delay or the loss, and in no case later than six months after the expiration of the time limit applicable in the given case.

(d) Any national Office or intergovernmental organization which has notified the International Bureau that it will do so shall, where a delivery service other than the postal authorities is used to mail a document or letter, apply the provisions of paragraphs (a) to (c) as if the delivery service was a postal authority. In such a case, the last sentence of paragraph (a) shall not apply but evidence may be offered only if details of the mailing were recorded by the delivery service at the time of mailing. The notification may contain an indication that it applies only to mailings using specified delivery services or delivery services which satisfy specified criteria. The International Bureau shall publish the information so notified in the Gazette.

(e) Any national Office or intergovernmental organization may proceed under paragraph (d):

(i) even if, where applicable, the delivery service used was not one of those specified, or did not satisfy the criteria specified, in the relevant notification under paragraph (d), or

(ii) even if that Office or organization has not sent to the International Bureau a notification under paragraph (d).

82.2 *Interruption in the Mail Service*

(a) Any interested party may offer evidence that on any of the 10 days preceding the day of expiration of the time limit the postal service was interrupted on account of war, revolution, civil disorder, strike, natural calamity, or other like reason, in the locality where the interested party resides or has his place of business or is staying.

(b) If such circumstances are proven to the satisfaction of the national Office or intergovernmental organization which is the addressee, delay in arrival shall be excused, provided that the interested party

proves to the satisfaction of the said Office or organization that he effected the mailing within five days after the mail service was resumed. The provisions of Rule 82.1(c) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

Rule 82^{bis}

Excuse by the Designated or Elected State of Delays in Meeting Certain Time Limits

82^{bis}.1 *Meaning of "Time Limit" in Article 48(2)*

The reference to "any time limit" in Article 48(2) shall be construed as comprising a reference:

(i) to any time limit fixed in the Treaty or these Regulations;

(ii) to any time limit fixed by the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority or the International Bureau or applicable by the receiving Office under its national law;

(iii) to any time limit fixed by, or in the national law applicable by, the designated or elected Office, for the performance of any act by the applicant before that Office.

82^{bis}.2 *Reinstatement of Rights and Other Provisions to Which Article 48(2) Applies*

The provisions of the national law which is referred to in Article 48(2) concerning the excusing, by the designated or elected State, of any delay in meeting any time limit are those provisions which provide for reinstatement of rights, restoration, *restitutio in integrum* or further processing in spite of noncompliance with a time limit, and any other provision providing for the extension of time limits or for excusing delays in meeting time limits.

Rule 82^{ter}

Rectification of Errors Made by the Receiving Office or by the International Bureau

82^{ter}.1 *Errors Concerning the International Filing Date and the Priority Claim*

If the applicant proves to the satisfaction of any designated or elected Office that the international filing date is incorrect due to an error made by the receiving Office or that the priority claim has been erroneously considered by the receiving Office or the International Bureau not to have been made, and if the

error is an error such that, had it been made by the designated or elected Office itself, that Office would rectify it under the national law or national practice, the said Office shall rectify the error and shall treat the international application as if it had been accorded the rectified international filing date or as if the priority claim had not been considered not to have been made.

Rule 83

Right to Practice Before International Authorities

83.1 *Proof of Right*

The International Bureau, the competent International Searching Authority, and the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority may require the production of proof of the right to practice referred to in Article 49.

83.1^{bis} *Where the International Bureau Is the Receiving Office*

(a) Any person who has the right to practice before the national Office of, or acting for, a Contracting state of which the applicant or, if there are two or more applicants, any of the applicants is a resident or national shall be entitled to practice in respect of the international application before the International Bureau in its capacity as receiving Office under Rule 19.1(a)(iii).

(b) Any person having the right to practice before the International Bureau in its capacity as receiving Office in respect of an international application shall be entitled to practice in respect of that application before the International Bureau in any other capacity and before the competent International Searching Authority and competent International Preliminary Examining Authority.

83.2 *Information*

(a) The national Office or the intergovernmental organization which the interested person is alleged to have a right to practice before shall, upon request, inform the International Bureau, the competent International Searching Authority, or the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority, whether such person has the right to practice before it.

(b) Such information shall be binding upon the International Bureau, the International Searching Authority, or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be.

PART E

Rules Concerning Chapter V of the Treaty

Rule 84

Expenses of Delegations

84.1 *Expenses Borne by Governments*

The expenses of each Delegation participating in any organ established by or under the Treaty shall be borne by the Government which has appointed it.

Rule 85

Absence of Quorum in the Assembly

85.1 *Voting by Correspondence*

In the case provided for in Article 53(5)(b), the International Bureau shall communicate the decisions of the Assembly (other than those concerning the Assembly's own procedure) to the Contracting States which were not represented and shall invite them to express in writing their vote or abstention within a period of three months from the date of the communication. If, at the expiration of that period, the number of Contracting States having thus expressed their vote or abstention attains the number of Contracting States which was lacking for attaining the quorum in the session itself, such decisions shall take effect provided that at the same time the required majority still obtains.

Rule 86

The Gazette

86.1 *Contents and Form*

(a) The Gazette referred to in Article 55(4) shall contain:

(i) for each published international application, the data specified by the Administrative Instructions taken from the front page of the pamphlet published under Rule 48, the drawing (if any) appearing on the said front page, and the abstract,

(ii) the schedule of all fees payable to the receiving Offices, the International Bureau, and the International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities,

(iii) notices the publication of which is required under the Treaty or these Regulations,

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(iv) information, if and to the extent furnished to the International Bureau by the designated or elected Offices, on the question whether the requirements provided for in Articles 22 or 39 have been complied with in respect of the international applications designating or electing the Office concerned,

(v) any other useful information prescribed by the Administrative Instructions, provided access to such information is not prohibited under the Treaty or these Regulations.

(b) The information referred to in paragraph (a) shall be made available in two forms:

(i) as a Gazette in paper form, which shall contain the data specified by the Administrative Instructions taken from the front page of the pamphlet published under Rule 48 ("bibliographic data") and the matters referred to in paragraph (a)(ii) to (v);

(ii) as a Gazette in electronic form, which shall contain the bibliographic data, the drawing (if any) appearing on the said front page, and the abstract.

86.2 *Languages; Access to the Gazette*

(a) The Gazette in paper form shall be published in a bilingual (English and French) edition. It shall also be published in editions in any other language, provided the cost of publication is assured through sales or subventions.

(b) The Assembly may order the publication of the Gazette in languages other than those referred to in paragraph (a).

(c) The Gazette in electronic form referred to in Rule 86.1(b)(ii) shall be made accessible, in English and French at the same time, by any electronic ways and means specified in the Administrative Instructions. The translations shall be ensured by the International Bureau in English and French. The International Bureau shall ensure that the making accessible of the Gazette in electronic form shall be effected on, or as soon as possible after, the date of publication of the pamphlet containing the international application.

86.3 *Frequency*

The frequency of publication of the Gazette shall be determined by the Director General.

86.4 *Sale*

The subscription and other sale prices of the Gazette shall be determined by the Director General.

86.5 *Title*

The title of the Gazette shall be determined by the Director General.

86.6 *Further Details*

Further details concerning the Gazette may be provided for in the Administrative Instructions.

Rule 87

Copies of Publications

87.1 *International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities*

Any International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority shall have the right to receive, free of charge, two copies of every published international application, of the Gazette, and of any other publication of general interest published by the International Bureau in connection with the Treaty or these Regulations.

87.2 *National Offices*

(a) Any national Office shall have the right to receive, free of charge, one copy of every published international application, of the Gazette, and of any other publication of general interest published by the International Bureau in connection with the Treaty or these Regulations.

(b) The publications referred to in paragraph (a) shall be sent on special request. If any publication is available in more than one language, the request shall specify the language or languages in which it is desired.

Rule 88

Amendment of the Regulations

88.1 *Requirement of Unanimity*

Amendment of the following provisions of these Regulations shall require that no State having the right to vote in the Assembly vote against the proposed amendment:

- (i) Rule 14.1 (Transmittal Fee),
- (ii) *[Deleted]*
- (iii) Rule 22.3 (Time Limit under Article 12(3)),
- (iv) Rule 33 (Relevant Prior Art for International Search),
- (v) Rule 64 (Prior Art for International Preliminary Examination),

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

- (vi) Rule 81 (Modification of Time Limits Fixed in the Treaty),
- (vii) the present paragraph (i.e., Rule 88.1).

88.2 [Deleted]

88.3 Requirement of Absence of Opposition by Certain States

Amendment of the following provisions of these Regulations shall require that no State referred to in Article 58(3)(a)(ii) and having the right to vote in the Assembly vote against the proposed amendment:

- (i) Rule 34 (Minimum Documentation),
- (ii) Rule 39 (Subject Matter under Article 17(2)(a)(i)),
- (iii) Rule 67 (Subject Matter under Article 34(4)(a)(i)),
- (iv) the present paragraph (i.e., Rule 88.3).

88.4 Procedure

Any proposal for amending a provision referred to in Rules 88.1 or 88.3 shall, if the proposal is to be decided upon in the Assembly, be communicated to all Contracting States at least two months prior to the opening of that session of the Assembly which is called upon to make a decision on the proposal.

Rule 89

Administrative Instructions

89.1 Scope

(a) The Administrative Instructions shall contain provisions:

- (i) concerning matters in respect of which these Regulations expressly refer to such Instructions,
- (ii) concerning any details in respect of the application of these Regulations.

(b) The Administrative Instructions shall not be in conflict with the provisions of the Treaty, these Regulations, or any agreement concluded by the International Bureau with an International Searching Authority, or an International Preliminary Examining Authority.

89.2 Source

(a) The Administrative Instructions shall be drawn up and promulgated by the Director General after consultation with the receiving Offices and the International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities.

(b) They may be modified by the Director General after consultation with the Offices or Authorities which have a direct interest in the proposed modification.

(c) The Assembly may invite the Director General to modify the Administrative Instructions, and the Director General shall proceed accordingly.

89.3 Publication and Entry into Force

(a) The Administrative Instructions and any modification thereof shall be published in the Gazette.

(b) Each publication shall specify the date on which the published provisions come into effect. The dates may be different for different provisions, provided that no provision may be declared effective prior to its publication in the Gazette.

PART F

Rules Concerning Several Chapters of the Treaty

Rule 89^{bis}

Filing, Processing and Transmission of International Applications and Other Documents in Electronic Form or by Electronic Means

89^{bis}.1 International Applications

(a) International applications may, subject to paragraphs (b) to (e), be filed and processed in electronic form or by electronic means, in accordance with the Administrative Instructions, provided that any receiving Office shall permit the filing of international applications on paper.

(b) These Regulations shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to international applications filed in electronic form or by electronic means, subject to any special provisions of the Administrative Instructions.

(c) The Administrative Instructions shall set out the provisions and requirements in relation to the filing and processing of international applications filed, in whole or in part, in electronic form or by electronic means, including but not limited to, provisions and requirements in relation to acknowledgment of receipt, procedures relating to the according of an international filing date, physical requirements and the consequences of non-compliance with those requirements, signature of documents, means of

authentication of documents and of the identity of parties communicating with Offices and authorities, and the operation of Article 12 in relation to the home copy, the record copy and the search copy, and may contain different provisions and requirements in relation to international applications filed in different languages.

(d) No national Office or intergovernmental organization shall be obliged to receive or process international applications filed in electronic form or by electronic means unless it has notified the International Bureau that it is prepared to do so in compliance with the applicable provisions of the Administrative Instructions. The International Bureau shall publish the information so notified in the Gazette.

(e) No receiving Office which has given the International Bureau a notification under paragraph (d) may refuse to process an international application filed in electronic form or by electronic means which complies with the applicable requirements under the Administrative Instructions.

89^{bis}.2 Other Documents

Rule 89^{bis}.1 shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to other documents and correspondence relating to international applications.

89^{bis}.3 Transmittal Between Offices

Where the Treaty, these Regulations or the Administrative Instructions provide for documents, notifications, communications or correspondence to be transmitted by one national Office or intergovernmental organization to another, such transmittal may, where so agreed by both the sender and the receiver, be effected in electronic form or by electronic means.

Rule 89^{ter}

Copies in Electronic Form of Documents Filed on Paper

89^{ter}.1 Copies in Electronic Form of Documents Filed on Paper

Any national Office or intergovernmental organization may provide that, where an international application or other document relating to an international application is filed on paper, a copy thereof in elec-

tronic form, in accordance with the Administrative Instructions, may be furnished by the applicant.

Rule 90

Agents and Common Representatives

90.1 Appointment as Agent

(a) A person having the right to practice before the national Office with which the international application is filed or, where the international application is filed with the International Bureau, having the right to practice in respect of the international application before the International Bureau as receiving Office may be appointed by the applicant as his agent to represent him before the receiving Office, the International Bureau, the International Searching Authority, and the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(b) A person having the right to practice before the national Office or intergovernmental organization which acts as the International Searching Authority may be appointed by the applicant as his agent to represent him specifically before that Authority.

(c) A person having the right to practice before the national Office or intergovernmental organization which acts as the International Preliminary Examining Authority may be appointed by the applicant as his agent to represent him specifically before that Authority.

(d) An agent appointed under paragraph (a) may, unless otherwise indicated in the document appointing him, appoint one or more subagents to represent the applicant as the applicant's agent:

(i) before the receiving Office, the International Bureau, the International Searching Authority, and the International Preliminary Examining Authority, provided that any person so appointed as sub-agent has the right to practice before the national Office with which the international application was filed or to practice in respect of the international application before the International Bureau as receiving Office, as the case may be;

(ii) specifically before the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, provided that any person so appointed as sub-agent has the right to practice before the national Office or intergovernmental organization which acts as the International Searching Authority or

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be.

90.2 *Common Representative*

(a) Where there are two or more applicants and the applicants have not appointed an agent representing all of them (a "common agent") under Rule 90.1(a), one of the applicants who is entitled to file an international application according to Article 9 may be appointed by the other applicants as their common representative.

(b) Where there are two or more applicants and all the applicants have not appointed a common agent under Rule 90.1(a) or a common representative under paragraph (a), the applicant first named in the request who is entitled according to Rule 19.1 to file an international application with the receiving Office shall be considered to be the common representative of all the applicants.

90.3 *Effects of Acts by or in Relation to Agents and Common Representatives*

(a) Any act by or in relation to an agent shall have the effect of an act by or in relation to the applicant or applicants concerned.

(b) If there are two or more agents representing the same applicant or applicants, any act by or in relation to any of those agents shall have the effect of an act by or in relation to the said applicant or applicants.

(c) Subject to Rule 90^{bis}.5(a), second sentence, any act by or in relation to a common representative or his agent shall have the effect of an act by or in relation to all the applicants.

90.4 *Manner of Appointment of Agent or Common Representative*

(a) The appointment of an agent shall be effected by the applicant signing the request, the demand, or a separate power of attorney. Where there are two or more applicants, the appointment of a common agent or common representative shall be effected by each applicant signing, at his choice, the request, the demand or a separate power of attorney.

(b) Subject to Rule 90.5, a separate power of attorney shall be submitted to either the receiving Office or the International Bureau, provided that, where a power of attorney appoints an agent under Rule 90.1(b), (c), or (d)(ii), it shall be submitted to the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be.

(c) If the separate power of attorney is not signed, or if the required separate power of attorney is missing, or if the indication of the name or address of the appointed person does not comply with Rule 4.4, the power of attorney shall be considered nonexistent unless the defect is corrected.

90.5 *General Power of Attorney*

(a) Appointment of an agent in relation to a particular international application may be effected by referring in the request, the demand, or a separate notice to an existing separate power of attorney appointing that agent to represent the applicant in relation to any international application which may be filed by that applicant (i.e., a "general power of attorney"), provided that:

(i) the general power of attorney has been deposited in accordance with paragraph (b), and

(ii) a copy of it is attached to the request, the demand or the separate notice, as the case may be; that copy need not be signed.

(b) The general power of attorney shall be deposited with the receiving Office, provided that, where it appoints an agent under Rule 90.1(b), (c), or (d)(ii), it shall be deposited with the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be.

90.6 *Revocation and Renunciation*

(a) Any appointment of an agent or common representative may be revoked by the persons who made the appointment or by their successors in title, in which case any appointment of a sub-agent under Rule 90.1(d) by that agent shall also be considered as revoked. Any appointment of a subagent under Rule 90.1(d) may also be revoked by the applicant concerned.

(b) The appointment of an agent under Rule 90.1(a) shall, unless otherwise indicated, have the effect of revoking any earlier appointment of an agent made under that Rule.

(c) The appointment of a common representative shall, unless otherwise indicated, have the effect of revoking any earlier appointment of a common representative.

(d) An agent or a common representative may renounce his appointment by a notification signed by him.

(e) Rule 90.4(b) and (c) shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, to a document containing a revocation or renunciation under this Rule.

Rule 90^{bis}

Withdrawals

90^{bis}.1 Withdrawal of the International Application

(a) The applicant may withdraw the international application at any time prior to the expiration of 20 months from the priority date or, where Article 39(1) applies, prior to the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

(b) Withdrawal shall be effective on receipt of a notice addressed by the applicant, at his option, to the International Bureau, to the receiving Office or, where Article 39(1) applies, to the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(c) No international publication of the international application shall be effected if the notice of withdrawal sent by the applicant or transmitted by the receiving Office or the International Preliminary Examining Authority reaches the International Bureau before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

90^{bis}.2 Withdrawal of Designations

(a) The applicant may withdraw the designation of any designated State at any time prior to the expiration of 20 months from the priority date or, where Article 39(1) applies in respect of that State, prior to the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Withdrawal of the designation of a State which has been elected shall entail withdrawal of the corresponding election under Rule 90^{bis}.4.

(b) Where a State has been designated for the purpose of obtaining both a national patent and a regional patent, withdrawal of the designation of that State shall be taken to mean withdrawal of only the designation for the purpose of obtaining a national patent, except where otherwise indicated.

(c) Withdrawal of the designations of all designated States shall be treated as withdrawal of the international application under Rule 90^{bis}.1.

(d) Withdrawal shall be effective on receipt of a notice addressed by the applicant, at his option, to the International Bureau, to the receiving Office or, where

Article 39(1) applies, to the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(e) No international publication of the designation shall be effected if the notice of withdrawal sent by the applicant or transmitted by the receiving Office or the International Preliminary Examining Authority reaches the International Bureau before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed.

90^{bis}.3 Withdrawal of Priority Claims

(a) The applicant may withdraw a priority claim, made in the international application under Article 8(1), at any time prior to the expiration of 20 months from the priority date or, where Article 39(1) applies, 30 months from the priority date.

(b) Where the international application contains more than one priority claim, the applicant may exercise the right provided for in paragraph (a) in respect of one or more or all of the priority claims.

(c) Withdrawal shall be effective on receipt of a notice addressed by the applicant, at his option, to the International Bureau, to the receiving Office or, where Article 39(1) applies, to the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(d) Where the withdrawal of a priority claim causes a change in the priority date, any time limit which is computed from the original priority date and which has not already expired shall, subject to paragraph (e), be computed from the priority date resulting from that change.

(e) In the case of the time limit referred to in Article 21(2)(a), the International Bureau may nevertheless proceed with the international publication on the basis of the said time limit as computed from the original priority date if the notice of withdrawal sent by the applicant or transmitted by the receiving Office or the International Preliminary Examining Authority reaches the International Bureau after the completion of the technical preparations for international publication.

90^{bis}.4 Withdrawal of the Demand, or of Elections

(a) The applicant may withdraw the demand or any or all elections at any time prior to the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

(b) Withdrawal shall be effective upon receipt of a notice addressed by the applicant to the International Bureau.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(c) If the notice of withdrawal is submitted by the applicant to the International Preliminary Examining Authority, that Authority shall mark the date of receipt on the notice and transmit it promptly to the International Bureau. The notice shall be considered to have been submitted to the International Bureau on the date marked.

90^{bis}.5 Signature

(a) Any notice of withdrawal referred to in Rules 90^{bis}.1 to 90^{bis}.4 shall, subject to paragraph (b), be signed by the applicant. Where one of the applicants is considered to be the common representative under Rule 90.2(b), such notice shall, subject to paragraph (b), require the signature of all the applicants.

(b) Where two or more applicants file an international application which designates a State whose national law requires that national applications be filed by the inventor and where an applicant for that designated State who is an inventor could not be found or reached after diligent effort, a notice of withdrawal referred to in Rules 90^{bis}.1 to 90^{bis}.4 need not be signed by that applicant ("the applicant concerned") if it is signed by at least one applicant and

(i) a statement is furnished explaining, to the satisfaction of the receiving Office, the International Bureau, or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be, the lack of signature of the applicant concerned, or

(ii) in the case of a notice of withdrawal referred to in Rule 90^{bis}.1(b), 90^{bis}.2(d), or 90^{bis}.3(c), the applicant concerned did not sign the request but the requirements of Rule 4.15(b) were complied with, or

(iii) in the case of a notice of withdrawal referred to in Rule 90^{bis}.4(b), the applicant concerned did not sign the demand but the requirements of Rule 53.8(b) were complied with, or did not sign the later election concerned but the requirements of Rule 56.1(c) were complied with.

90^{bis}.6 Effect of Withdrawal

(a) Withdrawal under Rule 90^{bis} of the international application, any designation, any priority claim, the demand or any election shall have no effect in any designated or elected Office where the processing or examination of the international application has already started under Article 23(2) or Article 40(2).

(b) Where the international application is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.1, the international processing of the international application shall be discontinued.

(c) Where the demand or all elections are withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.4, the processing of the international application by the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall be discontinued.

90^{bis}.7 Faculty Under Article 37(4)(b)

(a) Any Contracting State whose national law provides for what is described in the second part of Article 37(4)(b) shall notify the International Bureau in writing.

(b) The notification referred to in paragraph (a) shall be promptly published by the International Bureau in the Gazette, and shall have effect in respect of international applications filed more than one month after the date of such publication.

Rule 91

Obvious Errors in Documents

91.1 Rectification

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) to (g^{quater}), obvious errors in the international application or other papers submitted by the applicant may be rectified.

(b) Errors which are due to the fact that something other than what was obviously intended was written in the international application or other paper shall be regarded as obvious errors. The rectification itself shall be obvious in the sense that anyone would immediately realize that nothing else could have been intended than what is offered as rectification.

(c) Omissions of entire elements or sheets of the international application, even if clearly resulting from inattention, at the stage, for example, of copying or assembling sheets, shall not be rectifiable.

(d) Rectification may be made on the request of the applicant. The authority having discovered what appears to be an obvious error may invite the applicant to present a request for rectification as provided in paragraphs (e) to (g^{quater}). Rule 26.4 shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to the manner in which rectifications shall be requested.

(e) No rectification shall be made except with the express authorization:

(i) of the receiving Office if the error is in the request,

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(ii) of the International Searching Authority if the error is in any part of the international application other than the request or in any paper submitted to that Authority,

(iii) of the International Preliminary Examining Authority if the error is in any part of the international application other than the request or in any paper submitted to that Authority, and

(iv) of the International Bureau if the error is in any paper, other than the international application or amendments or corrections to that application, submitted to the International Bureau.

(f) Any authority which authorizes or refuses any rectification shall promptly notify the applicant of the authorization or refusal and, in the case of refusal, of the reasons therefor. The authority which authorizes a rectification shall promptly notify the International Bureau accordingly. Where the authorization of the rectification was refused, the International Bureau shall, upon request made by the applicant prior to the time relevant under paragraph (g^{bis}), (g^{ter}), or (g^{quater}) and subject to the payment of a special fee whose amount shall be fixed in the Administrative Instructions, publish the request for rectification together with the international application. A copy of the request for rectification shall be included in the communication under Article 20 where a copy of the pamphlet is not used for that communication or where the international application is not published by virtue of Article 64(3).

(g) The authorization for rectification referred to in paragraph (e) shall, subject to paragraphs (g^{bis}), (g^{ter}), and (g^{quater}), be effective:

(i) where it is given by the receiving Office or by the International Searching Authority, if its notification to the International Bureau reaches that Bureau before the expiration of 17 months from the priority date;

(ii) where it is given by the International Preliminary Examining Authority, if it is given before the establishment of the international preliminary examination report;

(iii) where it is given by the International Bureau, if it is given before the expiration of 17 months from the priority date.

(g^{bis}) If the notification made under paragraph (g)(i) reaches the International Bureau, or if the rectification made under paragraph (g)(iii) is authorized by the International Bureau, after the expiration of 17 months from the priority date but before the technical preparations for international publication have been completed, the authorization shall be effective and the rectification shall be incorporated in the said publication.

(g^{ter}) Where the applicant has asked the International Bureau to publish his international application before the expiration of 18 months from the priority date, any notification made under paragraph (g)(i) must reach, and any rectification made under paragraph (g)(iii) must be authorized by, the International Bureau, in order for the authorization to be effective, not later than at the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication.

(g^{quater}) Where the international application is not published by virtue of Article 64(3), any notification made under paragraph (g)(i) must reach, and any rectification made under paragraph (g)(iii) must be authorized by, the International Bureau, in order for the authorization to be effective, not later than at the time of the communication of the international application under Article 20.

Rule 92

Correspondence

92.1 *Need for Letter and for Signature*

(a) Any paper submitted by the applicant in the course of the international procedure provided for in the Treaty and these Regulations, other than the international application itself, shall, if not itself in the form of a letter, be accompanied by a letter identifying the international application to which it relates. The letter shall be signed by the applicant.

(b) If the requirements provided for in paragraph (a) are not complied with, the applicant shall be informed as to the non-compliance and invited to remedy the omission within a time limit fixed in the invitation. The time limit so fixed shall be reasonable in the circumstances; even where the time limit so fixed expires later than the time limit applying to the furnishing of the paper (or even if the latter time limit has already expired), it shall not be less than 10 days and not more than one month from the mailing of the

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

invitation. If the omission is remedied within the time limit fixed in the invitation, the omission shall be disregarded; otherwise, the applicant shall be informed that the paper has been disregarded.

(c) Where non-compliance with the requirements provided for in paragraph (a) has been overlooked and the paper taken into account in the international procedure, the non-compliance shall be disregarded.

92.2 *Languages*

(a) Subject to Rules 55.1 and 66.9 and to paragraph (b) of this Rule, any letter or document submitted by the applicant to the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall be in the same language as the international application to which it relates. However, where a translation of the international application has been transmitted under Rule 23.1(b) or furnished under Rule 55.2, the language of such translation shall be used.

(b) Any letter from the applicant to the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority may be in a language other than that of the international application, provided the said Authority authorizes the use of such language.

(c) *[Deleted]*

(d) Any letter from the applicant to the International Bureau shall be in English or French.

(e) Any letter or notification from the International Bureau to the applicant or to any national Office shall be in English or French.

92.3 *Mailings by National Offices and Intergovernmental Organizations*

Any document or letter emanating from or transmitted by a national Office or an intergovernmental organization and constituting an event from the date of which any time limit under the Treaty or these Regulations commences to run shall be sent by air mail, provided that surface mail may be used instead of air mail in cases where surface mail normally arrives at its destination within two days from mailing or where air mail service is not available.

92.4 *Reproductions*

(a) A document making up the international application, and any later document or correspon-

dence relating thereto, may, notwithstanding the provisions of Rules 11.14 and 92.1(a), but subject to paragraph (h), be transmitted, to the extent feasible, by telegraph, teleprinter, facsimile machine or other like means of communication resulting in the filing of a printed or written document.

(b) A signature appearing on a document transmitted by facsimile machine shall be recognized for the purposes of the Treaty and these Regulations as a proper signature.

(c) Where the applicant has attempted to transmit a document by any of the means referred to in paragraph (a) but part or all of the received document is illegible or part of the document is not received, the document shall be treated as not having been received to the extent that the received document is illegible or that the attempted transmission failed. The national Office or intergovernmental organization shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly.

(d) Any national Office or intergovernmental organization may require that the original of any document transmitted by any of the means referred to in paragraph (a) and an accompanying letter identifying that earlier transmission be furnished within 14 days from the date of the transmission, provided that such requirement has been notified to the International Bureau and the International Bureau has published information thereon in the Gazette. The notification shall specify whether such requirement concerns all or only certain kinds of documents.

(e) Where the applicant fails to furnish the original of a document as required under paragraph (d), the national Office or intergovernmental organization concerned may, depending on the kind of document transmitted and having regard to Rules 11 and 26.3,

(i) waive the requirement under paragraph (d), or

(ii) invite the applicant to furnish, within a time limit which shall be reasonable under the circumstances and shall be fixed in the invitation, the original of the document transmitted, provided that, where the document transmitted contains defects, or shows that the original contains defects, in respect of which the national Office or intergovernmental organization may issue an invitation to correct, that Office or organization may issue such an invitation in addition to, or instead of, proceeding under item (i) or (ii).

(f) Where the furnishing of the original of a document is not required under paragraph (d) but the national Office or intergovernmental organization considers it necessary to receive the original of the said document, it may issue an invitation as provided for under paragraph (e)(ii).

(g) If the applicant fails to comply with an invitation under paragraph (e)(ii) or (f):

(i) where the document concerned is the international application, the latter shall be considered withdrawn and the receiving Office shall so declare;

(ii) where the document concerned is a document subsequent to the international application, the document shall be considered as not having been submitted.

(h) No national Office or intergovernmental organization shall be obliged to receive any document submitted by a means referred to in paragraph (a) unless it has notified the International Bureau that it is prepared to receive such a document by that means and the International Bureau has published information thereon in the Gazette.

Rule 92^{bis}

Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand

92^{bis}.1 Recording of Changes by the International Bureau

(a) The International Bureau shall, on the request of the applicant or the receiving Office, record changes in the following indications appearing in the request or demand:

(i) person, name, residence, nationality, or address of the applicant,

(ii) person, name, or address of the agent, the common representative, or the inventor.

(b) The International Bureau shall not record the requested change if the request for recording is received by it after the expiration:

(i) of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1), where Article 39(1) is not applicable with respect to any Contracting State;

(ii) of the time limit referred to in Article 39(1)(a), where Article 39(1) is applicable with respect to at least one Contracting State.

Rule 93

Keeping of Records and Files

93.1 The Receiving Office

Each receiving Office shall keep the records relating to each international application or purported international application, including the home copy, for at least 10 years from the international filing date or, where no international filing date is accorded, from the date of receipt.

93.2 The International Bureau

(a) The International Bureau shall keep the file, including the record copy, of any international application for at least 30 years from the date of receipt of the record copy.

(b) The basic records of the International Bureau shall be kept indefinitely.

93.3 The International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities

Each International Searching Authority and each International Preliminary Examining Authority shall keep the file of each international application it receives for at least 10 years from the international filing date.

93.4 Reproductions

For the purposes of this Rule, records, copies and files may be kept as photographic, electronic or other reproductions, provided that the reproductions are such that the obligations to keep records, copies and files under Rules 93.1 to 93.3 are met.

Rule 94

Access to Files

94.1 Access to the File Held by the International Bureau

(a) At the request of the applicant or any person authorized by the applicant, the International Bureau shall furnish, subject to reimbursement of the cost of the service, copies of any document contained in its file.

(b) The International Bureau shall, at the request of any person but not before the international publication of the international application and subject to Article 38, furnish, subject to the reimburse-

ment of the cost of the service, copies of any document contained in its file.

94.2 *Access to the File Held by the International Preliminary Examining Authority*

At the request of the applicant or any person authorized by the applicant, or, once the international preliminary examination report has been established, of any elected Office, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall furnish, subject to reimbursement of the cost of the service, copies of any document contained in its file.

94.3 *Access to the File Held by the Elected Office*

If the national law applicable by any elected Office allows access by third parties to the file of a national application, that Office may allow access to any documents relating to the international application, including any document relating to the international preliminary examination, contained in its file, to the same extent as provided by the national law for access to the file of a national application, but not before the international publication of the international applica-

tion. The furnishing of copies of documents may be subject to reimbursement of the cost of the service.

Rule 95

Availability of Translations

95.1 *Furnishing of Copies of Translations*

(a) At the request of the International Bureau, any designated or elected Office shall provide it with a copy of the translation of the international application furnished by the applicant to that Office.

(b) The International Bureau may, upon request and subject to reimbursement of the cost, furnish to any person copies of the translations received under paragraph (a).

Rule 96

The Schedule of Fees

96.1 *Schedule of Fees Annexed to Regulations*

The amounts of the fees referred to in Rules 15 and 57 shall be expressed in Swiss currency. They shall be specified in the Schedule of Fees which is annexed to these Regulations and forms an integral part thereof.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

SCHEDULE OF FEES

Fees	Amounts
1. Basic Fee: (Rule 15.2(a))	
(a) if the international application contains not more than 30 sheets	650 Swiss francs
(b) in the international application contains more than 30 sheets	650 Swiss francs plus 15 Swiss francs for each sheet in excess of 30 sheets
2. Designation Fee: (Rule 15.2(a))	
(a) for designations made under Rule 4.9(a)	140 Swiss francs per designation, provided that any designation made under Rule 4.9(a) in excess of 8 shall not require the payment of a designation fee*
(b) for designations made under Rule 4.9(b) and confirmed under Rule 4.9(c)**	140 Swiss francs per designation
3. Handling Fee: (Rule 57.2(a))	233 Swiss francs

4. The total amount of the fees payable under items 1 and 2(a) is reduced by 200 Swiss francs if the international application is, in accordance with and to the extent provided for in the Administrative Instructions, filed on paper together with a copy thereof in electronic form.

5. All fees payable (where applicable, as reduced under item 4) are reduced by 75% for international applications filed by any applicant who is a natural person and who is a national of and resides in a State whose per capita national income is below US \$3,000 (according to the average per capita national income figures used by the United Nations for determining its scale of assessments for the contributions payable for the years 1995, 1996 and 1997); if there are several applicants, each must satisfy those criteria.

** Editor's Note:* The amount of the designation fee and the maximum number of designation fees payable, as shown in item 2 as amended, apply to international applications filed on or after January 1, 2000. The previously applicable amount (150 Swiss francs) and maximum number (10) generally apply to international applications filed before January 1, 2000. However, the amended amount and maximum number apply to international applications filed before January 1, 2000, if the second sentence of Rule 15.4(c) applies (that is, if the time limit under Rule 15.4(b)(i) applies (one year from the priority date) and the designation fees are paid before the expiration of that time limit but later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application) and if the date of payment is on or after January 1, 2000.

*** Editor's Note:* See Rule 15.5(a) for the confirmation fee, which is also payable.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT INDEX—LEGEND

Acronym/Term	Meaning
Art.	Patent Cooperation Treaty Article
A.I.	Patent Cooperation Treaty Administrative Instruction
CFR	U.S. Code of Federal Regulations
DO	Designated Office
EO	Elected Office
HC	Home Copy of International Application
IA	International Application
IB	International Bureau
IPE	International Preliminary Examination
IPEA	International Preliminary Examining Authority
IPER	International Preliminary Examination Report
Ipub	International Publication
IS	International Search
ISA	International Searching Authority
ISR	International Search Report
PCT	Patent Cooperation Treaty
PD	Priority Date of Earlier Filed National Application
RC	Record Copy of International Application
RO	Receiving Office
Rule	Patent Cooperation Treaty Rule
SC	Search Copy of International Application
U.S.C.	United States Code
USPTO	United States Patent and Trademark Office

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

A

Abandonment of IA as to USPTO 37 CFR 1.494(g)
 37 CFR 1.495(h)

Abbreviated expressions used in IA
 Meaning of A.I. 101
 37 CFR 1.401

Codes/Indications A.I. 115

Abstract Rule 8
 Amendment by ISA in response to
 applicant's comments A.I. 515
 Missing or defective Rule 38
 U.S. Rule regarding 37 CFR 1.438

Absence of quorum in assembly, voting Rule 25

Access to files Rule 94

Additional (new) matter in request,
 deletion of A.I. 303

Addresses of applicants, inventors
 and agents Rule 4.4

Administrative instructions - scope, source,
 entry into force Rule 89

Administrative provisions of the PCT
 Assembly Art. 53
 Committee for technical cooperation Art. 56
 Executive committee Art. 54
 Finances Art. 57
 International bureau Art. 55
 Regulations Art. 58

Agent
 See also Common representative
 See also Representative
 "Applicant" encompasses the term "agent"
 in certain situations Rule 2.1

Appointment of Rule 90.1

Changes, recording of by IB Rule 93^{bis}.1

In general Rule 2.2, Rule 4.7, Rule 90

Indications concerning,
 In demand Rule 53.2, Rule 53.5
 In request Art. 4, Rule 4.1, Rule 4.7

National law requirements Art. 27
 Rule 51^{bis}.1b

Notice of change of agent sent to IB A.I. 328

Notice of change of agent sent from IB
 to ISA and IPEA A.I. 425

Notice of change of agent sent from ISA
 to IB A.I. 512

Notice of change of agent sent from IPEA
 to IB A.I. 608

Right of agent to practice before
 international authorities Art. 49

Amendment
 Copy of amendment under Article 19
 for IPEA Rule 62

Copy of amendment under Article 19 sent
 (communicated) to DO Art. 20, Rule 47.1(b)

Definition of, before IPEA Rule 66.5

Form of, before IPEA Rule 66.8

Language of, before IPEA Rule 66.9

Language of changes in the IA Rule 12.2

Processing of Article 19 amendment by IB . . . A.I. 417

Processing of by IPEA A.I. 602

Of abstract by ISA A.I. 515

Of claims, description, and drawing
 before DO Rule 52

Of claims before IB Art. 19, Rule 46

Of claims before IPEA Art. 34, 37 CFR 1.485

Of claims before EO Art. 41, Rule 78

Of claims Numbering and identification
 in amendment A.I. 205

Of description before IPEA Art. 34,
 37 CFR 1.485

Of description before EO Art. 41, Rule 78

Of drawing before EO Art. 41, Rule 78

Of drawing before IPEA Art. 34, 37 CFR 1.485

Of certain PCT provisions Art. 61

See also Revision of PCT

Of PCT regulations Rule 88, Art. 58

Sheet(s) — processing of by RO A.I. 309

Applicant
 Different applicants for different
 designated states Rule 4.5
 A.I. 203

Entitled to make a demand Art. 31(2), Rule 54

First named used to identify IA A.I. 105

Improper, in U.S. national stage 35 U.S.C. 373

In general Art. 9, Rule 2.1, Rule 4.5, Rule 18

Recording by IB of changes regarding
 applicant Rule 92^{bis}

U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.421

Application - See International application

Assembly of PCT contracting states Art 53
 Executive committee established by Art. 54

Assignment
 Of IA, possible requirement to furnish
 to a national Office Rule 51^{bis}.1

Recording by USPTO if U.S. is a
 designated country in the IA 37 CFR 3.21

Authorized
 officer Rule 43.8, Rule 70.14, A.I. 514, A.I. 612

Availability of translation of IA to IB Rule 95

B

Biological material invention, Rule 13^{bis}
 Deposited, Indications as to A.I. 209

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

See also

- Nucleotide or amino acid sequence listing
- Sequence listing

C

- Calendar (Gregorian to express dates)..... Rule 79
 - See also Dates
- Changes in person, name or address of applicants and inventors (U.S. requirements) 37 CFR 1.472
- Check list (In request)
 - Re documents filed with IA..... Rule 3.3
 - Necessary annotations by RO A.I. 313
- Citations (proper) of documents in the ISR..... A.I. 503
- Claims
 - Amendment before EO Art. 41
 - Amendment before IB Art. 19, Rule 46
 - Amendment before
 - IPEA Art. 34, Rule 66.4, Rule 66.8
 - In general Art. 6, Rule 6
 - Numbering and identification upon amendment A.I. 205
 - U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.436
- Classification of IA subject matter A.I. 504
- Committee established by assembly of states Art. 56
- Common representative..... Rule 2.2^{bis}, Rule 90.2
 - Change of..... A.I. 106
 - Notice of change sent from RO to IB A.I. 328
 - Notice of change sent from IB to RO, ISA, & IPEA A.I. 425
 - Notice of change sent by ISA to IB..... A.I. 512
 - Notice of change sent by IPEA to IB..... A.I. 608
- Communication
 - From IB, of IA, ISR, or any Article 17(2)(a) determination and indication that no search will be established, to each DO Art. 20, Rule 47
- Communication transmitted electronically Rule 89^{bis}, A.I. 114
- Competent IPEA Rule 59
- Competent ISA Art. 16, Rule 35
- Competent RO Art. 11(1)(i), Rule 19
- Confidential nature
 - Of IA Art. 30
 - Of IPE Art. 38
- Confirmation copy of facsimile transmission (N/A in U.S.)..... Rule 92.4, A.I. 331
- Confirmation by RO of designation and necessary annotations by RO..... Rule 4.9(b), Rule 4.9(c), A.I. 315
- Continuation or continuation-in-part, IA treated as in any designated state Rule 4.14

Copies

- In electronic form of documents filed
 - on paper Rule 89^{ter}
 - Sequence Listings A.I. 801 through A.I. 806
- Making home copy and search copy from original IA (record copy) by RO..... Art.12, Rule 21
 - Sequence Listings A.I. 804
 - Identifying RC, SC, and HC by RO A.I. 305
- Correction of request by RO *ex officio* A.I. 327
- Corrections and amendments during international processing..... Rule 26.4, Rule 46, 37 CFR 1.471

Correspondence

- For applicant, to whom sent A.I. 108
- In general Rule 92

D

- Dates (using Gregorian calendar)..... Rule 79
 - Format of, in IA A.I. 110
- Deadlines (See also Time limit)
 - Applicable to Applicants
 - (1) Before the RO
 - After which applicant can request RO to certify copy of IA as identical with IA as filed and applicant can send certified copy to IB (14 months from PD) Rule 22.1
 - To correct Article 14(1) defects in IA Art. 14(1)b (e.g., IA is not properly signed, does not contain proper indications re applicant, has no title, has no abstract, does not comply with physical requirements in Rule 11) Rule 26.2
 - Extensions of time available Rule 26.2
 - Sanction: RO declares IA withdrawn under Rule 29.
 - To correct defects under Article 11 to obtain an international filing date..... Art. 11(2), Rule 20.6
 - Sanctions: International filing date given IA when Article 11(1) defect is corrected in time set by RO; but RO declares IA withdrawn if not corrected within time set.
 - To provide missing drawings (30 days). . Art. 14(2), Rule 26.2, 37 CFR 1.437
 - Extensions of time available Rule 26.2
 - Sanction: Drawings considered nonexistent.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

To pay deficiencies in transmittal fee (Rule 14), international basic fee (Rule 15.1(i)), search fee (Rule 16), late payment fee (Rule 16^{bis}.2) Art. 14(3),
Rule 16^{bis}, 37 CFR 1.431

Extension of time - One month set by RO when RO finds deficiency Rule 16^{bis}.1

Sanction: RO declares IA withdrawn under Rule 29.

To pay deficiencies in the transmittal fee, basic fee (incl. suppl. for over 30 pages) or search fee when RO finds discrepancies before fees are due A.I. 304(b)

To pay deficiencies in designation fees Art. 14(3),
Rule 26.2, 37 CFR 1.432

Extensions of time available Rule 26.2

Sanction: Appropriate designations withdrawn.

To pay deficiencies in designation fees when RO finds discrepancies before fees are due A.I. 304(b)

(2) Before the ISA

To amend claims under Article 19 before IB within two months of date of transmittal of ISR to IB, or 16 months from priority date Rule 46.1

To amend claims under Article 19 - latest of 2 months from date ISR sent to IB and Applicant or 16 months from PD or if amendment reaches IB before completion of technical preparations for Ipub Rule 46.1

To submit priority document, unless already filed with RO together with IA, to IB or RO not later than 16 months after PD, or where DO processes IA at any time on express request of applicant (Art. 23(2)), not later than date processing or examination is requested Rule 17.1

Where lack of unity of invention is held, time limit of between 15 and 45 days set to pay additional fees to have additional inventions searched Art. 17(3)
Rule 40.3, 37 CFR 1.476

(3) Before the IPEA

To amend claims, description, or drawings under Article 34 before the IPEA Rule 66
37 CFR 1.485

To amend claims, description, or drawings under Article 34 before the IPEA at time of filing demand or, subject to Rule 66.4^{bis}, until IPER is established Rule 66.1, Rule 66.4^{bis}

To correct defects in demand upon invitation within a time limit not less than 1 month and which may be extended by IPEA before a decision is made Rule 60.1

To correct later elections not complying with Rule 56 within a time limit not less than 1 month and which may be extended by IPEA before a decision is made . . . Rule 60.2

To provide translation of priority document upon invitation by IPEA within 2 months of invitation date Rule 66.7

To respond (including Article 34 amendments) to a written opinion within time set therein (not less than 1 month) . . . Rule 66.2
Rule 66.2 permits response time set in written opinion to be from 1 month to 3 months (plus extensions) Rule 66.2
37 CFR 1.484 permits reply time set in written opinion to be from 1 to 2 months with no extensions possible
. 37 CFR 1.484

Where lack of unity of invention is held by IPEA, time limit of between 1 and 2 months set to pay additional fees to have additional inventions searched Art. 34(3)
Rule 68.2, 37 CFR 1.488

When filing a demand for IPE, must pay handling fee at time demand filed or within the 1 month deadline set when IPEA invites applicant to pay the fee . . . Rule 57

Sanction: IPEA considers IA withdrawn.

When seeking IPE, preliminary examination fee must be paid at time demand filed or within the 1 month deadline set when IPEA invites applicant to pay the fee Rule 58^{bis}

Sanction: IPEA considers IA withdrawn.

(4) Before the DO/EO

To enter the National Stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 where U.S. is DO . 37 CFR 1.494

To enter the National Stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 where the U.S. is EO 37 CFR 1.495

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

To amend claims description, or drawing under Article 28 before the DO.	Rule 52	Declarations relating to national requirements	Rule 4.17, Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)
To amend claims, description, or drawings before EO (varies)	Rule 78	Correction of or addition of	Rule 26 ^{ter} .1, A.I. 216, A.I. 317
Applicable to the RO		<i>Ex officio</i> corrections are not to be made	
For RO to check certain elements (request is signed, has indications re applicant, has a title, an abstract, meets physical requirements of Rule 11) of IA	Rule 26.1	by RO	A.I. 327(d)
For RO to hold IA withdrawn for lack of compliance with Article 11(1), items (i) to (iii) after IA has already been accorded a filing date	Art. 14(4), Rule 30	by IB	A.I. 419(c)
For RO to transmit record copy to IB (normally 13 months or earlier, unless failure to obtain national security clearance obtained).	Rule 22	Invitation for, by IB	Rule 26 ^{ter} .2(a)
For RO to transmit search copy to ISA . . .	Rule 23	Invitation for, by RO	Rule 26 ^{ter} .2(a)
Applicable to the IB		Processing by IB	Rule 26 ^{ter} .2(b), A.I. 419
IB shall promptly notify each EO of receipt and date of receipt, of any later election, and will be sent along with the Article 20 communication (of the IA, ISR, Article 19 amendments), if possible	Rule 61.2	Entitlement to apply for a patent	Rule 4.17(ii), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(ii), A.I. 212
For IB to notify applicant, RO, ISA (unless it declined to be notified) and DO (if it asked to be notified) of fact and date receipt of record copy of IA.	Rule 24	Entitlement to claim priority	Rule 4.17(iii), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(iii), A.I. 213
International publication of IA promptly after expiration of 18 months from PD, unless earlier publication requested under Articles 21(2)(b) and 64(3)(c)(i)	Art. 21 Rule 48	Exceptions to lack of novelty	Rule 4.17(v), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(v), A.I. 215
Applicable to the ISA		Identity of inventor	Rule 4.17(i), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(i), A.I. 211
For ISA to establish the ISR (or declaration that the subject matter is not required to be searched or is unsearchable as per Article 17(2)) - the later of 3 months from date of receipt of SC by ISA or 9 months from PD.	Rule 42	Inventorship	Rule 4.17(iv), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(iv), A.I. 214
Applicable to the IPEA		Non-prejudicial disclosures	Rule 4.17(v), Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(a)(v), A.I. 215
For IPEA to establish the IPER (28 months from PD; or 8 months from payment of fees; or 8 months from receipt of translation	Rule 69.2	Processing by IB	Rule 26 ^{ter} .2, A.I. 419
For IPEA to start IPE (may start as early as international search but no later than 20 months from PD)	Rule 69.1	Defects	
IPEA shall promptly notify applicant of receipt of the demand.	Rule 61.1	Correction	
Deceased inventor (U.S. Rule)	37 CFR 1.422	Of indications re applicant's residence or nationality	A.I. 329
		Of obvious defects, by RO	A.I. 325
		Of request, <i>ex officio</i> , by RO	A.I. 327
		Processing by IB	A.I. 413
		IA held withdrawn because of failure to correct certain defects.	Rule 29.1
		In abstract	Rule 38
		In certain original documents submitted to national Office	Rule 92.4
		In demand	Rule 60.1
		In drawings furnished to DO under Rule 49.5, possibly permitting correction by invitation	Rule 49.5(g)
		In later election	Rule 60.2
		In power of attorney - consequences . . .	Rule 90.4(c)
		In the title	Rule 37
		Invitation to correct Article 14(1)(b) defects	Rule 26.3 ^{bis}
		Invitation to correct Article 3(4)(i) defects	Rule 26.3 ^{ter}
		Mentioned in IPER	Rule 90.12
		Noted by IB.	Rule 28
		Definition of PCT terms	Art. 2, 37 CFR 1.401
		Delays in meeting time limits, excuse of	Rule 82
			37 CFR 1.468

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Demand for international preliminary examination (IPE)	
Applicant entitled to make demand	Rule 54
Copy sent by IPEA to IB	Rule 61.1
Defects in	Rule 60.1
Evidence of right to file demand	A.I. 614
Filed with other than a competent IPEA, treatment of	Rule 59
In general	Art. 31, Rule 53
Not considered to have been made:	
Notification by IB to EOs	A.I. 418
Notice sent by IPEA re filing after 19 months from PD	A.I. 601
Publication of notice of demand filed prior to 19 months from PD	Rule 61.4
Recording by IB of changes:	Rule 92 ^{bis}
Notifications regarding this sent by IB	A.I. 422
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.480
Deposited microorganism	
Indications on separate sheet	Rule 13 ^{bis} , A.I. 209
Description	
Amendment before IPEA	Art. 34
Amendment before EO	Art. 41, Rule 78
Headings for parts of	A.I. 204
In general	Art. 5, Rule 5
Of nucleotide/amino acid sequence	Rule 5.2, Rule 13 ^{ter} , A.I. 801 - A.I. 806, 37 CFR 1.821
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.435
Design - not mentioned as subject matter for IA	Art. 2(i), A.I. 202
Designated Office (DO)	
Amendment of claims, description, and drawings before DO	Art. 28
Communication of IA, ISR, or declaration under Article 17(2)(a)	Art. 20, Rule 47
Not accepting sequence listings in computer readable form	A.I. 806
Notification by DO to IB of number of IAs that did not enter the national stage timely	A.I. 112
Opportunity to correct IA before DO	Art. 26
Review by	Art. 25
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.414
Designated states	
Possible loss of effect in	Art. 24
Withdrawal of/held withdrawn	Art. 24, Rule 29
Designation of States	
Cancellation, <i>ex officio</i> , by IB	A.I. 423
Cancellation of designations of noncontracting States by RO, <i>ex officio</i>	A.I. 318
Confirmation of precautionary, after expiration of 15 months from PD-considered withdrawn	Rule 4.9(b)
Confirmation of precautionary, before expiration of 15 months from PD	Rule 4.9(b), Rule 4.9(c), 37 CFR 1.432(c)
Confirmation of precautionary, notification by RO to IB and applicant	A.I. 315
Considered withdrawn	Rule 29.1(b)
Notice of designation sent by IB to DO	Rule 24.2(b), A.I. 426
Publication of notice of confirmation of precautionary designation	A.I. 427
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.432
Designation fee	Rule 15
U.S. regulation regarding payment of	37 CFR 1.432
Designation fee calculation	A.I. 210, Rule 96.1
Diagrams, considered as drawings	Rule 7.1
Disputes	Art. 59
Docket reference (applicant's IA file reference)	A.I. 109
Documents cited in ISR	A.I. 503
Documents filed with IA	
Manner of marking necessary annotations in checklist sent to IB by RO with RC of IA	A.I. 313
Drawing(s)	
Amendment of, before DO	Art. 34
Amendment of, before EO	Art. 41
Flowsheets and diagrams considered as	Rule 7.1
In general	Art. 7, Rule 7
Invitation by RO to correct informal drawings	Rule 26
Missing - RO procedure concerning	A.I. 310
Time set to file where not necessary to understanding of invention	Rule 7.2
Referred to, but not included in IA	Art. 14(2)
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.437
E	
Elected Office (EO)	
Notification to IB of number of applications filed after national stage deadline	A.I. 112
U.S. as	37 CFR 1.414
Election(s)	
Cancellation of <i>ex officio</i> by IB	A.I. 423(b)
Cancellation of <i>ex officio</i> by IPEA	A.I. 606
Later than demand	Rule 56
Defects in later elections	Rule 60.2
Not considered made	
Notification by IB to EO	A.I. 418
Indication of in demand by IPEA	A.I. 606 ^{bis}

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Errors

By RO or IB, rectification of Rule 82^{ter}
 Correction of obvious
 Authorization of by IPEA
 Ex officio by RO A.I. 325, A.I. 327
 Processing by IB A.I. 413, A.I. 607
 In documents Rule 91
 In request, *ex officio*, by RO A.I. 327
Ex Officio correction of request by RO A.I. 327
 Expenses of delegations Rule 84
 Expressions and language, not to be used Rule 9
 See also Language prohibited
 Correction of A.I. 501
 Extension of time
 Before IPEA Rule 58^{bis}
 to pay basic fee, search fee, designation
 fee, and transmittal fee - under Rules
 14, 15, and 16 Rule 16^{bis}

F

Fee(s) Rule 96.1
 Additional fees per invention where lack
 of unity is found by
 IPEA Art. 34(3), Rule 68
 ISA Art. 17(3), Rule 40
 Application of money received by RO in
 certain cases A.I. 321
 Associated with demand
 Handling fee Rule 57, Rule 96.1
 Late payment fees Rule 58^{bis}.2
 Time limit for
 payment Rule 57.3, Rule 58^{bis}.1
 Preliminary examination fee Rule 58
 ISA was not U.S. 37 CFR 1.482(a)(1)
 ISA was U.S. 37 CFR 1.482(a)(1)
 Late payment fees Rule 58^{bis}.2
 Time limit for
 payment Rule 57.3, Rule 58.1(b),
 Rule 58^{bis}.1
 (Where lack of unity of invention held by
 IPEA, there is a fee for each additional
 claimed invention). Art. 34(3), Rule 68,
 37 CFR 1.482(a)(2)
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.482
 Associated with request
 Extension of time to pay basic fee, search
 fee, designation fee, and transmittal
 fee - under Rules 14, 15, and 16 Rule 16^{bis}
 International fees Rule 15
 Basic fee Rule 15, Rule 96.1
 Additional component for sequence
 listing part in computer readable form A.I. 803

Basic component based on number
 of sheets A.I. 803
 Designation fee per country
 (maximum fee is six times single
 country designation fee). Rule 96,
 37 CFR 1.432
 PCT search fee Rule 16
 No prior U.S.
 application 37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)(ii)
 Prior U.S. national
 application 37 CFR 1.445 (a)(2)(i)
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.445
 (Where lack of unity of invention held
 by ISA, there is a fee for each
 additional claimed invention). Art. 17(3),
 Rule 40
 Transmittal fee Rule 14
 U.S. rule 37 CFR 1.445(a)(1)
 Confirmation of precautionary
 designation fee Rule 4.9(c), Rule 15.5,
 Rule 96, 37 CFR 1.445(a)(4)
 Designation fee Rule 15
 Calculation for national and regional
 patents A.I. 210
 Extension of time to pay Rule 16^{bis}
 U.S. regulation regarding payment
 of 37 CFR 1.432
 Invitation by RO to pay before date due. A.I. 304
 Invitation by RO to request search fee
 refund. A.I. 322
 Invitation to pay fees A.I. 320
 Invitation to request refund of fees
 before IPEA A.I. 613
 Lack of payment of Rule 27
 Late payment fee re basic fee, search fee,
 designation fee, and transmittal fee -
 under Rules 14, 15, and 16. Rule 16^{bis}.2
 National stage fee to DO. Art. 22
 U.S. statute regarding 35 U.S.C. 376
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.492
 National stage fee to EO. Art. 39
 U.S. statute regarding 35 U.S.C. 376
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.492
 PCT-EASY A.I. 102bis(c)
 Preliminary examination fee Rule 58
 Refund of IA filing and
 processing fees . . Rule 15.6, Rule 16.2, Rule 40.2(c)
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.446
 Schedule of fees Rule 96
 Special fees for publication, payable
 to the IB A.I. 113

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Surcharge for filing oath or declaration later than 20 months from PD under 37 CFR 1.494(c) or later than 30 months from PD under 37 CFR 1.495(c) 37 CFR 1.492(e)
 Transmittal fee Rule 14, 37 CFR 1.445(a)(1)
 File (IA) reference (IA docket no. of applicant) A.I. 109
 On IA sheets Rule 11.6(f)
 Filing date
 Certificate of U.S. Postal Service
 Express Mail Rule 20.1, 37 CFR 1.10
 Of IA Art. 11, 35 U.S.C. 363, 35 U.S.C. 371, 35 U.S.C. 102(e), 37 CFR 1.496
 Finances (budget) of union of PCT states Art. 57
 Flowsheets, considered as drawings Rule 7.1
 Form(s)
 Computer generated A.I. 102(h) & (i)
 Request Rule 3.7
 Demand Rule 53.1(a)
 PCT A.I. Annex A
 PCT, use of A.I. 102

G

Gazette, PCT . . Rule 86, A.I. 407, A.I. Annexes D and E
 Free copies of, to ISA, IPEA, national Office Rule 87

H

Handling fee for IPE (re demand) Rule 57
 Home Copy (HC) of IA, preparation of Rule 21, A.I. 305

I

Identification
 Of DO A.I. 107
 Of EO A.I. 107
 Of IA having two or more applicants A.I. 105
 Of IA file (docket reference by applicant) A.I. 109
 Of international authorities A.I. 107
 Indications (two letter codes identifying countries and other entities) A.I. 115
 Industrial applicability Art. 34(4), Art. 35(2), Rule 70.6(b), Rule 66.2
 Intellectual property protected under PCT Art. 2(i), A.I. 202
 International application (IA)
 Application no. A.I. 307
 Indelibly marked on each sheet of IA A.I. 308
 Arrangement of contents/elements A.I. 207

Availability of, to DO Art. 13
 Certain defects in Art. 14
 Checking by RO and correcting parts of before RO Rule 26
 Communicated (sent) to each DO by IB Art. 20, Rule 47
 Confidential nature of IA Rule 30
 Considered withdrawn . . . Rule 29, Rule 30, Rule 49
 Copy of IA sent from IB to IPEA A.I. 420
 Copy, translation and national fee to EO Art. 39
 Effect of IA designation of U.S 35 U.S.C. 364
 Filing date and effects of Art. 11
 Filing in electronic form Rule 89^{bis}, A.I. 102^{bis}, A.I. 335
 Sequence Listings A.I. 801 through A.I. 806
 In general Art. 3
 Ipub number of A.I. 404
 Language of Rule 12
 Numbering - three sets: one for request, another for description, and a third for drawings A.I. 207
 Numbering system of IA A.I. 307
 Copy of notification of IA number and IA filing and PD(s) sent to IB A.I. 324
 Marking each sheet of IA with A.I. 308
 Physical requirements of . . . Rule 11, 37 CFR 1.433
 Purported IA, notification of receipt of, by RO A.I. 301
 Requirements, U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.431
 Sheet numbering (separate sets for request, description, and drawings) A.I. 207
 For Ipub A.I. 410
 Sheet(s)
 Cancellation, substitution, addition, renumbering by RO A.I. 311
 Translation of IA sent by applicant to DO Art. 22
 Transmittal of IA to IB and ISA Art. 12, A.I. 335
 Treated as continuation or continuation-in-part Rule 4.14
 Withdrawn IA, U.S. statute regarding . 35 U.S.C. 366
 International Bureau (IB)
 In general Art. 55
 Patent information services provided by Art. 50
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.415
 International fee Rule 15
 International preliminary examination (IPE)
 Conduct of, in U.S. 37 CFR 1.484
 Confidential nature of Art. 38
 Copy, translation and fee for, furnished to EO Art. 39

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Delay to enter national stage	Art. 39(1)(a)
Demand for	Art. 31
Withdrawal of	Art. 37
In general	Art. 33
Inventive step	Rule 65, Art. 33(3)
IPEA	Art. 32
IPER	Art. 35, Rule 70
Communication of IPER	Rule 73
Guidelines for explanations in	A.I. 604
Method of identifying documents	
cited in	A.I. 611
Translation of	Rule 72
Translation of annexes and transmittal	Rule 74
Prior art for	Rule 64
Start of, and time limit for	Rule 69
Transmittal, translation, and communication	
of IPER to applicant and IB	Art. 36
	Rule 71
Use of same file for ISA and IPEA	A.I. 604
Written opinion by IPEA	Art. 34, Rule 66
Amendment of claims, description, and	
drawing under Article 34 in response to	Art. 34
International preliminary examination	
authority (IPEA)	
Competent IPEA	Rule 59
In general	Art. 32
Lack of unity determination	Rule 68
Minimum requirements for	Rule 63
Nonexaminable subject matter	Rule 67
Notification by IPEA of date of receipt	
of demand and of election to IB and	
applicant	Rule 61.1
Procedure before	Art. 34, Rule 66
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.416
U.S. statute regarding	35 U.S.C. 362
International publication	
By IB of IA	Art. 21, Rule 48,
	A.I. 406, A.I. 805
Copies of publications to ISA, IPEA,	
national offices	Rule 87
Effect of, in United States	35 U.S.C. 374
Number	A.I. 404
Of IA, effects of	Art. 29
Publication number (WO _____)	A.I. 404
International search (IS)	Art. 15
Time limit for accomplishing	Rule 42
International searching authority (ISA)	Art. 16
Competent	Rule 35
Minimum requirements	Rule 36
Procedure before	Art. 17
U.S. statute regarding	35 U.S.C. 362
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.413

International search fee	Rule 16
International search report (ISR)	
Communicated (sent) from	
IB to DO	Art. 20, Rule 47
Copy of IA provided by IB for ISA	A.I. 420
Indication of citations of relevance in	A.I. 505
Indications of special categories of	
documents cited in	A.I. 507
Indication of claims to which documents	
are relevant	A.I. 508
In general	Art. 18
Method of identifying documents cited in	A.I. 503
Subject matter not required to be searched	Rule 39
Time limit for establishing	Rule 42
Transmittal of, from ISA to IB	Rule 44
Translation of ISR	Rule 45
International-type search	Rule 41.1
Inventive step	Rule 65, Art. 33(3)
Inventions	
Protection available	
under PCT	Art. 43, Art. 44, A.I. 202
Indications of kinds of protection	Rule 4.12
Inventor(s)	
Correction of	Rule 92 ^{bis}
Deceased	37 CFR 1.422
Filing of IA designating U.S. by	
someone other than the inventor(s)	37 CFR 1.425
Incapacitated or insane	37 CFR 1.423
Joint	37 CFR 1.424

L

Lack of unity of invention	
Examples	A.I. Annex B
In IPE	Rule 68, 37 CFR 1.475, 37 CFR 1.488,
	37 CFR 1.489
In IS	Rule 40, 37 CFR 1.475, 37 CFR 1.476,
	37 CFR 1.477
In national stage	37 CFR 1.475, 37 CFR 1.499
Unity of invention in IA, in general	Rule 13
Examples	A.I. Annex B
Language	
Of correspondence by applicant to IB	
and RO	A.I. 104
Of demand for IPE	Rule 55
Of forms used by international authorities	A.I. 103
Of IA	Art. 11(1)(ii), Rule 12
Of Ipub of IA	Rule 48.3
Of IPER	Rule 72
Of ISA	Rule 43.4
Of translation of IA	Rule 12.3, Rule 49.2
Prohibited expressions	Rule 9
Correction of	A.I. 501

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Later elections (elections submitted after the demand)
 Defects in Rule 60.2
 In general Rule 56
 Publication of notice of later elections by IB in Gazette. A.I. 428
 Later indication of priority application number by RO to IB. A.I. 319
 Later submitted sheets, RO procedure A.I. 309
 Loss of effect of IA in designated states Art. 24
 (Same consequences as withdrawal of IA)

M

Mail service
 Irregularities in Rule 82
 Microbiological inventions
 See Biological material inventions
 Nucleotide/amino acid sequence listings
 Minimum documentation in ISA. Art. 15(4), Rule 34
 Missing drawings,
 RO procedure Art. 14(2), Rule 26.6, A.I. 310

N

National Office
 Right to practice before . . Art. 49, Rule 83, Rule 90.1
 National stage
 Amendment of claims, description, and drawings before DOs Art. 28, Rule 52
 Before EOs Art. 41, Rule 78
 Certain national requirements allowed under Article 27(1),(2),(6),(7) . . . Art. 27, Rule 51^{bis}
 Copy of IA, translation and fee to DO. Art. 22
 Delaying of national examination and other processing. Art. 23, Art. 40
 DO that does not accept sequence listings in computable readable form A.I. 806
 Protection available
 As well as patent protection Art. 44
 Other than patent protection. Art. 43
 Requirements Art. 27
 Results of national examination in different countries Art. 42
 United States
 Commencement in 35 U.S.C. 371
 Entering U.S. as DO 37 CFR 1.494
 Entering U.S. as EO 37 CFR 1.495
 Entry into U.S., time of. 37 CFR 1.491
 Examination in 37 CFR 1.496
 Improper applicant 35 U.S.C. 373
 National U.S. patent issued on IA, effect 35 U.S.C. 375

National security prescriptions Art. 27(8)
 Delay or prevention of transmittal of RC to IB A.I. 330
 Nationality
 Qualifications Rule 18.2
 In demand Rule 54.1
 Recording of changes to by the IB Rule 92^{bis}.1
 Nationality or residence of applicant, correction of A.I. 329, A.I. 614
 New (additional) matter
 In request, deletion of *ex officio* A.I. 303
 Nomenclature - See also Terminology and signs Rule 10
 Notification by IPEA of date of receipt of demand to IB and applicant Rule 61
 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listings Rule 13^{ter}
 Transmitted by RO to ISA A.I. 313(c)
 Number and numbering of claims Rule 6.1
 Number of (accorded to) IA Rule 20.1
 Number of copies of IA to be filed. Rule 11.1
 Numbering of amendments Rule 6.1, A.I. 205, A.I. 207, A.I. 31
 Numbering of lines on a page of IA Rule 11.8
 Numbering of sheets of IA Rule 11.7
 Numbering of sheets for Ipub. A.I. 410

O

Oath or declaration in U.S. national stage application. 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4), 37 CFR 1.497
 Obvious errors in documents Rule 91
 Rectification of A.I. 511
 Obviousness/nonobviousness. Art. 33(3), Rule 65
 See also Inventive step
 Opportunity to correct IA before DO Art. 26

P

Pamphlets (form of publishing the IA). Rule 48
 Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)
 Administrative provisions. Arts. 53 - 58
 Amendment of certain provisions. Art. 61
 Assembly of contracting states Art. 53
 Becoming a party to Art. 62
 Committee for technical cooperation Art. 56
 Denunciation. Art. 66
 Depositary functions. Art. 68
 Disputes Art. 59
 Entry into force of PCT Art. 63
 Executive committee of assembly Art. 54
 Final provisions (becoming party to treaty, entry into force of treaty, reservations, gradual appli-

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

cation, denunciation, signature and languages,		Benefit of filing date of a prior	
depository functions, notifications)	Art. 62	application	35 U.S.C. 365
Finances	Art. 57	Copy, translation, and fee furnished	
Gradual application of PCT in a state	Art. 65	to EO under Article 39(1)	Rule 76
International Bureau (IB)	Art. 55	Fee for certified copy of,	
Notifications to states/governments re		from USPTO	37 CFR 1.19(b)(1)
PCT issues	Art. 69	In proceedings before IPEA	Rule 66.7
Reservations by any state re Application		Invitation by IB to furnish	A.I. 421
of PCT provisions	Art. 64	Receipt of by IB	A.I. 411
Revision of PCT.	Art. 60	Translation and time limit to furnish	
Patent information services furnished by IB	Art. 50	to EO	Rule 76
PCT-EASY diskettes	A.I. 102 ^{bis}	Translation and time limit to furnish	
Reduced fees payable when using	A.I. 102 ^{bis} (c)	to IPEA	Rule 66.7
Transmittal of, to the IB by the RO		Transmittal by RO to IB	A.I. 323
with RC	A.I. 335	U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.451
Physical requirements of IA	Rule 11	Protection available	
Power of attorney		under PCT	Art. 43, Art. 44, Art. 45, A.I. 202
Definition	Rule 3.3a	Indications of kinds of protection	
General	Rule 90.5	in request	Rule 4.12
Practice before international authorities		Protest against payment of additional fees	
Right to do so	Art. 49,	re holding of lack of unity	Rule 68, Rule 40,
	Rule 83, Rule 90		A.I. 502, A.I. 403,
Precautionary designations	Rule 4.9(b), Rule 49(c)	Before U.S. IPEA	37 CFR 1.489
Fees for	Rule 15.5	Before U.S. ISA	37 CFR 1.477
Form (optional) for making		Publication - See International publication	
precautionary designations	PCT/DO Form 144		
Preliminary examination fee	Rule 58		
Prior art		Q	
Citation of (proper method)	A.I. 503	Quorum, absence of	
For IPE	Rule 64	Voting by correspondence	Rule 85
Indications	A.I. 505		
Of special categories of documents	A.I. 507	R	
Relevant to IS.	Rule 33.1	Receipt of IA by RO	Rule 20
Priority application number	A.I. 408	Notification of by RO to IB	Rule 20.5(b)
Later indication of	A.I. 319	Notification of by RO to applicant	A.I. 301
Priority claim in IA	Rule 4.10	Receiving Office (RO)	
Correction or cancellation		Competent	Rule 19
by RO	A.I. 314, Rule 26 ^{bis} .1	In general	Art. 10
Correction or cancellation		U.S. RO	35 U.S.C. 361, 37 CFR 1.412
by IB	A.I. 402, Rule 26 ^{bis} .1	Record copy (RC) (originally filed IA)	
Invitation to correct defects in	Rule 26 ^{bis} .2	Definition	Rule 20.5(b)
Not considered to have been		Transmittal to IB	
made	Rule 66.7, A.I. 302	by RO	Rule 22, A.I. 335, 37 CFR 1.461
Notice to that effect by IB, if not		Marking sheets of, by IB	A.I. 401
by RO	A.I. 409	Receipt by IB	Rule 24
U.S. regulation regarding	37 CFR 1.451	Rectification of obvious errors	Rule 91
Withdrawal of, by applicant	Rule 90 ^{bis} .3	Authorized by IPEA	A.I. 607
Priority, right of (in U.S.)	35 U.S.C. 365	Authorized or not by the ISA	A.I. 511
Benefit of filing date of a prior		Handling of, by RO	A.I. 325
application	35 U.S.C. 365	Limitations/restrictions	
Priority document	Rule 17	on	Rules 91.1(b) to (g ^{quater})

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Refund
 If search is based in part on earlier search . . . Rule 41
 Invitation by RO to request search fee
 refund A.I. 322
 Invitation to request refund of fees
 before IPEA A.I. 613
 Of handling fee Rule 57.6
 Of international fee Rule 15.6
 Of IPE fee Rule 58.3
 Of IS fee Rule 16
 Regional patent treaties Art. 45
 Regulations of the PCT Art. 58
 Representation/representative
 See also Common representative
 Appointment of Rule 90.4
 Notice by IB to ISA and IPEA A.I. 425
 Notice by IPEA to IB A.I. 608
 Notice by ISA to IB A.I. 512
 Notice by RO to IB A.I. 328
 Common (definition) Rule 2.2^{bis}
 General power of attorney Rule 90.5
 Limited recognition in patent
 cases 37 CFR Part 10, § 10.9
 Revocation and renunciation
 of representative Rule 90.6
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.455
 Request (part of IA)
 Contents Art. 4, Rule 4
 Declaration relating to national
 requirements Rule 4.17, Rule 51^{bis}.1(a)
 Deletion of additional material A.I. 303
 Form Rule 3
 In general Art. 4
 Recording of changes in, by IB Rule 92^{bis}
 Notification by IB A.I. 422
 Rectification of, including limitations
 on ability to rectify Rule 91.1
 U.S. regulation regarding 37 CFR 1.434
 Residence:
 Corrections to
 Invitation by RO A.I. 329
 In demand Rule 54.1
 Qualifications Rule 18
 Recording of changes to by the IB Rule 92^{bis}.1
 Restriction:
 See Lack of unity of invention
 See Unity of invention
 Results of national examination in EO Art. 42
 Revival of U.S. national stage
 application 37 CFR 1.137
 Review of RO determinations by other
 international authorities re

Declaration that an IA is to be
 withdrawn Art. 25
 Review by USPTO 35 U.S.C. 367
 Designation of a state considered
 withdrawn Art. 25
 Review by USPTO 35 U.S.C. 367
 Failure to accord an international
 filing date Art. 25
 Review by USPTO 35 U.S.C. 367
 Review by DOs of
 Declaration that an IA is withdrawn Art. 25
 IB decided the IA is withdrawn under
 Article 12(3) Art. 25
 Refusal to accord filing date to IA Art. 25
 Revision of PCT Art. 60
 See also Amendment of PCT provisions
 Right to practice before international
 authorities Rule 83, Art. 49

S

Search - See also international search report
 Search Copy (SC) of IA
 Preparation of by RO Rule 21
 Transmittal of to IB Rule 23
 Receipt of by ISA Rule 25.1
 Notification of lack of transmittal of
 SC by IB A.I. 412
 Search other than IS Rule 41
 Security measures of national Office delaying
 or preventing transmittal of RC to IB A.I. 330
 U.S. statute regarding 35 U.S.C. 368
 Sequence listings in computer
 readable form Rule 13^{ter}, A.I. 801 - A.I. 806
 Considered by ISA A.I. 513
 Transmittal of Rule 23, A.I. 804
 Sheets
 Deletion, addition, substitution, and
 renumbering of by RO A.I. 311
 Later submitted - RO handling of A.I. 309
 Size of IA Rule 11.5
 Signature
 By parties to the PCT Art. 62
 Notification by director general re Art. 69
 Defective, in IA Art. 14(1)
 IA lacking prescribed signature -
 RO procedure A.I. 316
 Definition (includes "seal") Rule 2.3
 Lacking, in demand Rule 60.1(d)
 Lacking, in later election Rule 60.2(d)
 National requirements Art. 27
 Of PCT in English and French Art. 67
 Requirements re correspondence Rule 92

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Requirements re demand	Rule 53.8
Requirements re later elections	Rule 56.1
Requirements re request	Rule 4.15
Requirements re withdrawals	Rule 90 ^{bis} .5
Signs (terminology)	Rule 10
Size of IA sheets	Rule 11.5
Subject matter that is proper in IA	Rule 67
Successor states	Rule 32
Surcharge - See also Fees: Late payment fee	

T

Technical Services

Patent information services furnished by IB ..	Art. 50
Relation to other PCT provisions	Art. 52
Technical assistance committee	Art. 51
Terminology and signs	Rule 10
Time limit	
Computation of	Rule 80
Delay in meeting certain	Art. 48
Delays due to mail service	Rule 82
Excuse by the designated or elected state of delays in meeting certain time limits	Rule 82 ^{bis}
Extended beyond or shortened with respect to Article 39 deadline for copy, translation, and fee filed with EO	Rule 77
Extensions of, for payment of fees	Rule 16 ^{bis}
For amendments before EO	Rule 78
For amendment of claims before the IB	Art. 19, Rule 46.1
For amendment of claims, description, and drawings before DO	Rule 52.1
For applicant to request IB to send files to any DO pursuant to Article 25(1)(c) so DO can review adverse holding by RO or IB	Rule 51.1
For check by RO of certain defects in the IA	Rule 26.1
For communication by the IB of IPER translation and annexes to each EO)	Rule 73.2
For considering IA withdrawn re Article 12(3)	Rule 22.3
For considering IA withdrawn re Article 14(4)	Rule 30
For correcting priority claim	Rule 4.10
For correction by applicant of certain defects found by and invited by RO to correct	Rule 26.2
For establishing the IS	Rule 42
For establishing the IPE	Rule 69.2

For paying national fee and furnishing translation before DO pursuant to Article 25(2)(a) so DO can review adverse holding by RO or IB	Rule 51.3
For presenting request by applicant for IB to send copies of IA to DO after receiving determination that IA is withdrawn	Rule 51
For start of, and establishment of, IPE	Rule 69
For submitting priority document	Rule 17
For translation of priority document before EO	Rule 76.4
For transmittal by applicant of translation of any replacement sheet referred to in Rule 70.16 that is attached to the IPER ..	Rule 74.1
In general	Art. 47
Meaning of term "Time Limit" in Article 48(2)	Rule 82 ^{bis}
Modification of time limit fixed in PCT	Rule 81
Of application processing based on PD	Rule 4.10
	37 CFR 1.465
Timing of IA processing based on priority date	37 CFR 1.465
To confirm precautionary designations	Rule 4.9
To furnish drawings which are not necessary for the understanding of the invention	Art. 7.2, Rule 7.2
To furnish IA copy, translation, and fee to DO beyond time limit allowed by Article 22	Rule 50
To pay fees before ISA in response to a holding of lack of unity of invention	Rule 40.3
To request review by DO of failure to accord international filing date	Art. 25
Utility models	Rule 6.5
Title of invention in IA	
Content	Rule 4.3
Missing or defective	Rule 37
Translation	
Availability of translations	Rule 95
By applicant, IS based on	Art. 15
Defective/incorrect of IA	Art. 46
Draft, of IA, prepared by ISA for publication, comments on by applicant ..	A.I. 506
For purpose of international search	Rule 12.3
Of certain words not in Latin alphabet, in request	Rule 4.16
Of IA, availability to IB	Rule 95
Of IA, transmittal by IB to DOs	Art. 22
Of IA, transmittal by IB to EOs	Art. 39
Of IA, requirement for verified or certified	Rule 51 ^{bis} .1(d)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Of IPER Art. 36, Rule 72
 Of IPER annexes, and transmittal of to
 EOs by applicant Rule 74
 Of Ipub, affecting protection of rights in
 any designated state Art. 29
 Of ISR Art. 18, Rule 45
 Of priority document before EO Rule 76
 Of priority document before IPEA Rule 66.7
 Transmitted to ISA Rule 23
 Transmittal
 Fee Rule 14
 In electronic form Rule 89^{bis}, Rule 89^{ter},
 A.I. 102^{bis}, A.I. 335
 Sequence Listings A.I. 801 through A.I. 806
 Of RC to IB by RO Rule 22, 37 CFR 1.461
 Of SC to ISA by RO Rule 23
 Delayed A.I. 306
 Treaty - See also Patent Cooperation Treaty

U

Unity of invention
 Compliance with Rule 13 A.I. 206
 During U.S. national stage 37 CFR 1.499
 Examples and guidelines A.I. Annex B
 In general Rule 13, 37 CFR 1.475
 Lack of unity before
 IPEA Art. 34(3), Rule 68, 37 CFR 1.488,
 37 CFR 1.489

Lack of unity before
 ISA Art. 17(3), Rule 40, 37 CFR 1.476,
 37 CFR 1.477
 Transmittal of protest to pay fees for additional
 claimed inventions
 Transmittal by IB A.I. 403
 Transmittal by IPEA A.I. 603
 Transmittal by ISA A.I. 502

W

WO - See also International publication number
 Withdrawals (by applicant),
 in general Rule 90^{bis}, A.I. 326
 Of demand or election Art. 37, Rule 90^{bis}.4
 Withdrawn
 Application, U.S. statute regarding ... 35 U.S.C. 366
 Determination by RO re IA or designation .. Rule 29
 Decision by RO not to hold withdrawn
 after notifying applicant of intent to
 so hold A.I. 312
 Notification to IPEA by IB A.I. 414
 Review of by DO Art. 25, Rule 51
 Determination by IB under Article 12(3)
 Review by DO Art. 25, Rule 51
 Written opinion by IPEA Art. 34, Rule 66
 Amendment of claims, description, and
 drawing under Article 34 in response to Art. 34

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

[The following text is extremely faint and illegible due to low contrast and blurring. It appears to be a list of items or a table of contents, but the specific details cannot be discerned.]

Appendix AI ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

(as in force from March 1, 2001)¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Part 1:	Instructions Relating to General Matters	Section 207	Arrangement of Elements and Numbering of Sheets of the International Application
		Section 208	Sequence Listings
		Section 209	Indications as to Deposited Biological Material on a Separate Sheet
Section 101	Abbreviated Expressions and Interpretation	Section 210	Calculation of Designation Fee for the Purposes of National and Regional Patents
Section 102	Use of the Forms	Section 211	Declaration as to the Identity of the Inventor
Section 102 ^{bis}	Filing of Request in PCT-EASY Format Together with PCT-EASY Diskette Containing Request Data and Abstract	Section 212	Declaration as to the Applicant's Entitlement to Apply for and Be Granted a Patent
Section 103	Languages of the Forms Used by International Authorities	Section 213	Declaration as to the Applicant's Entitlement to Claim Priority of Earlier Application
Section 104	Language of Correspondence in Cases Not Covered by Rule 92.2	Section 214	Declaration of Inventorship
Section 105	Identification of International Application with Two or More Applicants	Section 215	Declaration as to Non-Prejudicial Disclosures or Exceptions to Lack of Novelty
Section 106	Change of Common Representative	Section 216	Notice of Correction or Addition of a Declaration Under Rule 26 ^{ter}
Section 107	Identification of International Authorities and of Designated and Elected Offices		
Section 108	Correspondence Intended for the Applicant	Part 3:	Instructions Relating to the Receiving Office
Section 109	File Reference		
Section 110	Dates	Section 301	Notification of Receipt of Purported International Application
Section 111	[Deleted]	Section 302	Priority Claim Considered Not to Have Been Made
Section 112	Ceasing of Effect Under Articles 24(1)(iii) and 39(2), Review Under Article 25 (2) and Maintaining of Effect Under Articles 24(2) and 39(3)	Section 303	Deletion of Additional Matter in the Request
Section 113	Special Fees Payable to the International Bureau	Section 304	Invitation to Pay Fees Before Date on Which They Are Due
Section 114	Electronic Transmission of Notices	Section 305	Identifying the Copies of the International Application
Section 115	Indications of States, Territories, and Intergovernmental Organizations	Section 305 ^{bis}	Preparation, Identification and Transmittal of the Copies of the Translation of the International Application
Part 2:	Instructions Relating to the International Application	Section 306	Delayed Transmittal of Search Copy
		Section 307	System of Numbering International Applications
Section 201	Language of the International Application	Section 308	Marking of the Sheets of the International Application and of the Translation Thereof
Section 202	Kind of Protection	Section 309	Procedure in the Case of Later Submitted Sheets
Section 203	Different Applicants for Different Designated States	Section 310	Procedure in the Case of Missing Drawings
Section 204	Headings of the Parts of the Description		
Section 205	Numbering and Identification of Claims upon Amendment		
Section 206	Unity of Invention		

¹ Table of Contents added for the convenience of the reader; it is not part of the Administrative Instructions.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Section 311	Renumbering in the Case of Deletion, Substitution or Addition of Sheets of the International Application and of the Translation Thereof	Section 333	Transmittal of International Application to the International Bureau as Receiving Office
Section 312	Notification of Decision Not to Issue Declaration that the International Application Is Considered Withdrawn	Section 334	Notification to Applicant of Submission of Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from the Priority Date
Section 313	Documents Filed with the International Application; Manner of Marking the Necessary Annotations in the Check List	Section 335	Transmittal of PCT-EASY Diskette Containing Request Data and Abstract
Section 314	Correction or Addition of a Priority Claim under Rule 26 ^{bis}	Part 4:	Instructions Relating to the International Bureau
Section 315	Notification Concerning Confirmation of Designation	Section 401	Marking of the Sheets of the Record Copy
Section 316	Procedure in the Case Where the International Application Lacks the Prescribed Signature	Section 402	Correction or Addition of a Priority Claim Under Rule 26 ^{bis}
Section 317	Transmittal of a Notice of Correction or Addition of a Declaration Under Rule 26 ^{ter} .1	Section 403	Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where International Application Is Considered to Lack Unity of Invention
Section 318	Cancellation of Designations of Non-Contracting States	Section 404	International Publication Number of International Application
Section 319	[Deleted]	Section 405	Publication of Notifications of Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications
Section 320	Invitation to Pay Fees under Rule 16 ^{bis} .1(a) and (b)	Section 406	Pamphlets
Section 321	Application of Moneys Received by the Receiving Office in Certain Cases	Section 407	The Gazette
Section 322	Invitation to Submit a Request for Refund of the Search Fee	Section 408	Priority Application Number
Section 323	Transmittal of Priority Documents to International Bureau	Section 409	Priority Claim Considered Not to Have Been Made
Section 324	Copy of Notification of the International Application Number and the International Filing Date Under Rule 20.5 (c)	Section 410	Numbering of Sheets for the Purposes of International Publication; Procedure in Case of Missing Sheets or Drawings
Section 325	Corrections of Defects Under Rule 26.4 (a), Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1, and Corrections Under Rule 9.2	Section 411	Receipt of Priority Document
Section 326	Withdrawal by Applicant Under Rule 90 ^{bis} .1, 90 ^{bis} .2, or 90 ^{bis} .3	Section 412	Notification of Lack of Transmittal of Search Copy
Section 327	<i>Ex Officio</i> Correction of Request by the Receiving Office	Section 413	Corrections of Defects Under Rule 26.4 (a), Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1, and Corrections Under Rule 9.2
Section 328	Notifications Concerning Representation	Section 414	Notification to the International Preliminary Examining Authority Where the International Application or the Designations of All Elected States Are Considered Withdrawn
Section 329	Correction of Indications Concerning the Applicant's Residence or Nationality	Section 415	Notification of Withdrawal Under Rule 90 ^{bis} .1, 90 ^{bis} .2, 90 ^{bis} .3, or 90 ^{bis} .4
Section 330	Transmittal of Record Copy Prevented or Delayed by National Security Prescriptions	Section 416	Correction of Request in Record Copy
Section 331	Receipt of Confirmation Copy	Section 417	Processing of Amendments Under Article 19
Section 332	Notification of Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications	Section 418	Notifications to Elected Offices Where the Demand or an Election Is Considered Not to Have Been Submitted or Made

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 419	Processing of a Declaration Under Rule 26 ^{ter}	Section 508	International Search Report Manner of Indicating the Claims to Which the Documents Cited in the International Search Report Are Relevant
Section 420	Copy of International Application and International Search Report for the International Preliminary Examining Authority	Section 509	International Search on the Basis of a Translation of the International Application
Section 421	Invitation to Furnish a Copy of the Priority Document	Section 510	Refund of Search Fee in Case of Withdrawal of International Application
Section 422	Notifications Concerning Changes Recorded Under Rule 92 ^{bis} .1	Section 511	Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1
Section 423	Cancellation of Designations and Elections	Section 512	Notifications Concerning Representation
Section 424	[Deleted]	Section 513	Sequence Listings
Section 425	Notifications Concerning Representation	Section 514	Authorized Officer
Section 426	Notification of Designation under Rule 24.2(b)	Section 515	Amendment of Established Abstract in Response to Applicant's Comments
Section 427	Publication of Notice of Confirmation of Designation	Section 516	Notification to Applicant of Submission of Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from the Priority Date
Section 428	Publication of Notice of Later Election		
Section 429	Notice of Extension	Part 6:	Instructions Relating to the International Preliminary Examining Authority
Section 430	Notification of Designations under Rule 32 (Extensions)	Section 601	Notification to Applicant of Submission of Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from the Priority Date
Section 431	Publication of Notice of Submission of Demand	Section 602	Processing of Amendments by the International Preliminary Examining Authority
Section 432	Notification to Applicant of Submission of Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from the Priority Date	Section 603	Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where International Application Is Considered to Lack Unity of Invention
Part 5:	Instructions Relating to the International Searching Authority	Section 604	Guidelines for Explanations Contained in the International Preliminary Examination Report
Section 501	Corrections Submitted to the International Searching Authority Concerning Expressions, etc., Not To Be Used in the International Application	Section 605	File to Be Used for International Preliminary Examination
Section 502	Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where International Application Is Considered to Lack Unity of Invention	Section 606	Cancellation of Elections
Section 503	Method of Identifying Documents Cited in the International Search Report	Section 606 ^{bis}	Procedure Where Election of a State Considered Not to Have Been Made
Section 504	Classification of the Subject Matter of the International Application	Section 607	Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1
Section 505	Indication of Citations of Particular Relevance in the International Search Report	Section 608	Notifications Concerning Representation
Section 506	Comments on Draft Translation of the International Application	Section 609	Withdrawal by Applicant Under Rule 90 ^{bis} .1, 90 ^{bis} .2, or 90 ^{bis} .3
Section 507	Manner of Indicating Certain Special Categories of Documents Cited in the	Section 610	[Deleted]

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

<p>Section 611 Method of Identification of Documents in the International Preliminary Examination Report</p> <p>Section 612 Authorized Officer</p> <p>Section 613 Invitation to Submit a Request for Refund of Fees under Rule 57.6 or 58.3</p> <p>Section 614 Evidence of Right to File Demand</p> <p>Section 615 Invitation to Pay Fees Before Date on Which They Are Due</p> <p>Section 616 International Preliminary Examination on the Basis of a Translation of the International Application</p> <p>Part 8: Instructions Relating to International Applications Containing Large Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Listings</p> <p>Section 801 Filing of International Applications Containing Sequence Listings</p> <p>Section 802 Format and Identification Requirements Relating to International Applications Containing Sequence Listings</p> <p>Section 803 Calculation of Basic Fee for International Applications Containing Sequence Listings</p> <p>Section 804 Preparation, Identification and Transmittal of Copies of International Applications Containing Sequence Listings</p> <p>Section 805 Publication and Communication of International Applications Containing Sequence Copies; Priority Documents</p>	<p>Section 806 Sequence Listings for Designated Office</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Annexes</p> <p>Annex A Forms</p> <p>Part I: Forms Relating to the Receiving Office</p> <p>Part II: Forms Relating to the International Searching Authority</p> <p>Part III: Forms Relating to the International Bureau</p> <p>Part IV: Forms Relating to the International Preliminary Examining Authority</p> <p>Part V: Forms for Use by the Applicant</p> <p>Annex B Unity of Invention</p> <p>Part 1: Instructions Concerning Unity of Invention</p> <p>Part 2: Examples Concerning Unity of Invention</p> <p>Annex C Standard for the Presentation of Nucleotide and Amino Acid Sequence Listings in International Patent Applications Under the PCT</p> <p>Annex D Information from Pamphlet Front Page to Be Included in the Gazette under Rule 86.1(a)(i)</p> <p>Annex E Information to Be Published in the Gazette under Rule 86.1(a)(v)</p>
--	--

PART 1

INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO GENERAL MATTERS

Section 101

Abbreviated Expressions and Interpretation

(a) In these Administrative Instructions:

(i) "Treaty" means the Patent Cooperation Treaty;

(ii) "Regulations" means the Regulations under the Treaty;

(iii) "Article" means an Article of the Treaty;

(iv) "Rule" means a Rule of the Regulations;

(v) "International Bureau" means the International Bureau as defined in Article 2 (xix) of the Treaty;

(vi) "International Authorities" means the receiving Offices, the International Searching Authorities, the International Preliminary Examining Authorities, and the International Bureau;

(vii) "Annex" means an Annex to these Administrative Instructions, unless the contrary clearly follows from the wording or the nature of the provision, or the context in which the word is used;

(viii) "Form" means a Form contained in Annex A;²

(ix) "WIPO Standard" means a Standard established by the World Intellectual Property Organization;

(x) "Director General" means the Director General as defined in Article 2 (xx) of the Treaty.

(b) The Annexes are part of these Administrative Instructions.

Section 102

Use of the Forms

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) to (i) and Sections 103 and 114, the International Authorities shall use, or require the use of, the mandatory Forms specified below:

(i) Forms for use by the applicant:

PCT/RO/101 (request Form)

PCT/IPEA/401 (demand Form)

(ii) Forms for use by the receiving Offices:

PCT/RO/103 PCT/RO/115 PCT/RO/147

PCT/RO/104 PCT/RO/116 PCT/RO/150

PCT/RO/105 PCT/RO/117 PCT/RO/151

PCT/RO/106 PCT/RO/118 PCT/RO/152

PCT/RO/107 PCT/RO/123 PCT/RO/153

PCT/RO/109 PCT/RO/126 PCT/RO/154

PCT/RO/110 PCT/RO/133 PCT/RO/155

PCT/RO/111 PCT/RO/136 PCT/RO/156

PCT/RO/112 PCT/RO/139

PCT/RO/113 PCT/RO/143

(iii) Forms for use by the International Searching Authorities:

PCT/ISA/201 PCT/ISA/212 PCT/ISA/233

PCT/ISA/202 PCT/ISA/217 PCT/ISA/234

PCT/ISA/203 PCT/ISA/218 PCT/ISA/235

PCT/ISA/205 PCT/ISA/219 PCT/ISA/236

PCT/ISA/206 PCT/ISA/220

PCT/ISA/209 PCT/ISA/225

PCT/ISA/210 PCT/ISA/228

²Annex A is published separately by the World Intellectual Property Organization.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

(iv) Forms for use by the International Bureau:

PCT/IB/301	PCT/IB/323	PCT/IB/350
PCT/IB/302	PCT/IB/324	PCT/IB/351
PCT/IB/304	PCT/IB/325	PCT/IB/352
PCT/IB/305	PCT/IB/329	PCT/IB/353
PCT/IB/306	PCT/IB/331	PCT/IB/354
PCT/IB/307	PCT/IB/332	PCT/IB/355
PCT/IB/308	PCT/IB/333	PCT/IB/356
PCT/IB/310	PCT/IB/334	PCT/IB/357
PCT/IB/313	PCT/IB/335	PCT/IB/358
PCT/IB/314	PCT/IB/336	PCT/IB/359
PCT/IB/315	PCT/IB/337	PCT/IB/360
PCT/IB/316	PCT/IB/338	PCT/IB/361
PCT/IB/317	PCT/IB/339	PCT/IB/366
PCT/IB/318	PCT/IB/344	PCT/IB/367
PCT/IB/319	PCT/IB/345	PCT/IB/368
PCT/IB/320	PCT/IB/346	PCT/IB/369
PCT/IB/321	PCT/IB/349	PCT/IB/370
		PCT/IB/371

(v) Forms for use by the International Preliminary Examining Authorities:

PCT/IPEA/402	PCT/IPEA/414	PCT/IPEA/437
PCT/IPEA/404	PCT/IPEA/415	PCT/IPEA/439
PCT/IPEA/405	PCT/IPEA/416	PCT/IPEA/440
PCT/IPEA/407	PCT/IPEA/420	PCT/IPEA/441
PCT/IPEA/408	PCT/IPEA/425	PCT/IPEA/442
PCT/IPEA/409	PCT/IPEA/431	PCT/IPEA/443
PCT/IPEA/412	PCT/IPEA/436	PCT/IPEA/444

(b) Slight variations in layout necessary in view of the printing of the Forms referred to in paragraph (a) in various languages are permitted.

(c) Slight variations in layout in the Forms referred to in paragraph (a)(ii) to (v) are permitted to the extent necessary to meet the particular office requirements of the International Authorities, in particular in view of the production of the Forms by computer or of the use of window envelopes.

(d) Where the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority and/or the International Preliminary Examining Authority are each part of the same Office, the obligation to use the Forms referred to in paragraph (a) does not extend to communications within that same Office.

(e) The annexes to Forms PCT/RO/106, PCT/RO/118, PCT/ISA/201, PCT/ISA/205, PCT/ISA/206, PCT/ISA/210, PCT/ISA/219, PCT/IB/313, PCT/IB/336, PCT/IPEA/404, PCT/IPEA/405 and PCT/IPEA/415 may be omitted in cases where they are not used.

(f) The notes attached to Forms PCT/RO/101 (request Form) and PCT/IPEA/401 (demand Form) shall be distributed by the International Authorities concerned together with the printed versions of those Forms. The notes attached to Form PCT/ISA/220 shall accompany the Form when sent to the applicant.

(g) The use of Forms other than those referred to in paragraph (a) is optional.

(h) Where the request or the demand is presented as a computer print-out, such print-out shall be prepared as follows:

(i) the layout and contents of the request and the demand when presented as computer print-outs shall correspond to the format of Forms PCT/RO/101 (request Form) and PCT/IPEA/401 (demand Form) ("the printed Forms"), with the same information being presented on the corresponding pages;

(ii) all boxes shall be drawn by solid lines; double lines may be presented as single lines;

(iii) the box numbers and box titles shall be included even where no information is supplied therein;

(iv) the boxes for use by the International Authorities shall be at least as large as those on the printed Forms;

(v) all other boxes shall be within one cm in size of those on the printed Forms;

(vi) all text shall be 9 points or larger in size;

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

(vii) titles and other information shall be clearly distinguished;

(viii) explanatory notes presented in italics on the printed Forms may be omitted.

(i) Other formats permitted for the presentation of the request and the demand as computer print-outs may be determined by the Director General. Any such format shall be published in the Gazette.

Section 102^{bis}

Filing of Request in PCT-EASY Format Together with PCT-EASY Diskette Containing Request Data and Abstract

(a) Pursuant to Rule 89^{ter}, any receiving Office may, if it is prepared to do so, accept the filing with it of any international application containing the request presented as a computer print-out prepared using the PCT-EASY software made available by the International Bureau ("request in PCT-EASY format") together with a computer diskette, prepared using that software, containing a copy in electronic form of the data contained in the request and of the abstract ("PCT-EASY diskette").

(b) Any receiving Office which, under paragraph (a), accepts the filing of requests in PCT-EASY format together with PCT-EASY diskettes shall notify the International Bureau accordingly. The International Bureau shall promptly publish any such information in the Gazette.

(c) Item 4 of the Schedule of Fees annexed to the Regulations shall apply to reduce the fees payable in respect of an international application containing the request in PCT-EASY format filed, together with a PCT-EASY diskette, with a receiving Office which, under paragraph (a), accepts the filing of such international applications.

Section 103

Languages of the Forms Used by International Authorities

(a) The language of the Forms used by any receiving Office shall be the same as the language in which the international application is filed, provided that:

(i) where the international application is to be published in the language of a translation required

under Rule 12.3(a), the receiving Office shall use the Forms in such language;

(ii) the receiving Office may, in its communications to the applicant, use the Forms in any other language being one of its official languages.

(b) Subject to Section 104(b), the language or languages of the Forms to be used by any International Searching Authority shall be specified in the applicable agreement referred to in Article 16(3)(b).

(c) Subject to Section 104(b), the language or languages of the Forms to be used by any International Preliminary Examining Authority shall be specified in the applicable agreement referred to in Article 32(3).

(d) The language of any Form used by the International Bureau shall be English where the language of the international application is English, and it shall be French where the language of the international application is French. Where the language of the international application is neither English nor French, the language of any Form used by the International Bureau in its communications to any other International Authority shall be English or French according to the wishes of such Authority, and in its communications to the applicant it shall be English or French according to the wishes of the applicant.

Section 104

Language of Correspondence in Cases Not Covered by Rule 92.2

(a) The language of any letter from the applicant to the receiving Office shall be the same as the language of the international application to which such letter relates, provided that, where the international application is to be published in the language of a translation required under Rule 12.3(a), any letter shall be in such language. However, the receiving Office may expressly authorize the use of any other language.

(b) The language of any letter to the International Bureau shall be English where the language of the international application is English, and it shall be French where the language of the international application is French. Where the language of the international application is neither English nor French, the language of any letter to the International Bureau shall be English or French, provided that any copy, sent to the International Bureau as a notification

addressed to it, of a Form sent to the applicant by the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, does not require translation into English or French.

Section 105

Identification of International Application with Two or More Applicants

Where any international application indicates two or more applicants, it shall be sufficient, for the purpose of identifying that application, to indicate, in any Form or correspondence relating to such application, the name of the applicant first named in the request. The provisions of the first sentence of this Section do not apply to the demand or to a notice effecting later elections.

Section 106

Change of Common Representative

Where a change is recorded under Rule 92^{bis}.1(a) in the person of an applicant who was considered to be the common representative under Rule 90.2(b), the new applicant shall be considered to be the common representative under Rule 90.2(b) if he is entitled according to Rule 19.1 to file an international application with the receiving Office.

Section 107

Identification of International Authorities and of Designated and Elected Offices

(a) Whenever the nature of any communication from or to the applicant, from or to any International Authority or, before national processing or examination has started, from or to any designated or elected Office so permits, any International Authority or any designated or elected Office may be indicated in the communication by the two-letter code referred to in Section 115.

(b) The indication of a receiving Office, an International Searching Authority, an International Preliminary Examining Authority or a designated or elected Office shall be preceded by the letters "RO," "ISA," "IPEA," "DO," or "EO," respectively, followed by a slant (e.g., "RO/JP," "ISA/US," "IPEA/SE," "DO/EP," "EO/AU").

Section 108

Correspondence Intended for the Applicant

(a) For the purpose of this Section, where there are two or more agents whose appointments are in force, "first mentioned agent" means the agent first mentioned in the document containing the appointments or, where the appointments are contained in two or more documents, in that which was filed first.

(b) Where a sole applicant has appointed an agent or agents under Rule 90.1(a), correspondence intended for the applicant from the International Authorities shall, subject to paragraph (d), be addressed to the agent or, where applicable, to the first mentioned agent.

(c) Where there are two or more applicants, correspondence intended for the applicants from the International Authorities shall, subject to paragraph (d), be addressed:

(i) if no common agent has been appointed under Rule 90.1—to the common representative or, where applicable, to his agent or first mentioned agent; or

(ii) if the applicants have appointed a common agent or common agents under Rule 90.1(a)—to that common agent or, where applicable, to the first mentioned common agent.

(d) Where an agent has or agents have been appointed under Rule 90.1(b), (c) or (d)(ii), paragraphs (b) and (c) shall apply to correspondence intended for the applicant relating to the procedure before the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be, as if those paragraphs referred to the agent or agents so appointed.

Section 109

File Reference

(a) Where any document submitted by the applicant contains an indication of a file reference, that reference shall not exceed 12 characters in length and may be composed of either letters of the Latin alphabet or Arabic numerals, or both.

(b) Correspondence from International Authorities intended for the applicant shall indicate any such file reference.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 110

Dates

Any date in the international application, or used in any correspondence emanating from International Authorities relating to the international application, shall be indicated by the Arabic number of the day, by the name of the month, and by the Arabic number of the year. The receiving Office, where the applicant has not done so, or the International Bureau, where the applicant has not done so and the receiving Office fails to do so, shall, after, above, or below any date indicated by the applicant in the request, repeat the date, in parentheses, by indicating it by two-digit Arabic numerals each for the number of the day, for the number of the month and for the last two numbers of the year, in that order and with a period, slant or hyphen after the digit pairs of the day and of the month (for example, "05 March 1992 (05.03.92)," "05 March 1992 (05/03/92)," or "05 March 1992 (05-03-92)").

Section 111

[Deleted]

Section 112

Ceasing of Effect Under Articles 24(1)(iii) and 39(2), Review Under Article 25(2) and Maintaining of Effect Under Articles 24(2) and 39(3)

(a) Each national Office shall, in its capacity as designated Office, notify the International Bureau once a year of:

(i) the number of international applications in respect of which, during the preceding calendar year, the time limit applicable under Article 22 has expired;

(ii) the number of international applications in respect of which, during the preceding calendar year, the requirements provided for in Article 22 have not been complied with before the expiration of the time limit applicable under that Article, with the consequence that the effects of the international applications concerned have ceased under Article 24(1)(iii).

(b) Each national Office shall, in its capacity as elected Office, notify the International Bureau once a year of:

(i) the number of international applications in respect of which, during the preceding calendar year, the time limit applicable under Article 39(1) has expired;

(ii) the number of international applications in respect of which, during the preceding calendar year, the requirements provided for in Article 39(1) have not been complied with before the expiration of the time limit applicable under that Article, with the consequence that the effects of the international applications concerned have ceased under Article 39(3).

(c) Where, under Article 25(2), the designated Office decides that the refusal, declaration or finding referred to in Article 25(1) was not justified, it shall promptly notify the International Bureau that it will treat the international application as if the error or omission referred to in Article 25(2) had not occurred. The notification shall preferably contain the reasons for the decision of the designated Office.

(d) Where, under Article 24(2) or under Article 39(3), the designated or elected Office maintains the effect provided for in Article 11(3), it shall promptly notify the International Bureau accordingly. The notification shall preferably contain the reasons for the decision of the designated or elected Office.

Section 113

Special Fees Payable to the International Bureau

(a) The special publication fee provided for in Rule 48.4 shall be 200 Swiss francs.

(b) The special fee provided for in Rule 91.1(f) shall be payable to the International Bureau and shall be 50 Swiss francs plus 12 Swiss francs for each sheet in excess of one. Where that fee has not been paid before the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication, the request for rectification shall not be published. Where the last sentence of Rule 91.1(f) applies and the said fee has not been paid before the time of the communication of the international application under Article 20, a copy of the request for rectification shall not be included in that communication.

(c) The special fee provided for in Rule 26^{bis}.2(c) shall be payable to the International Bureau and shall be 50 Swiss francs plus 12 Swiss francs for each sheet in excess of one. Where that fee has not been paid before the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication,

the information concerning the priority claim which was considered not to have been made shall not be published. Where the last sentence of Rule 26^{bis}.2(c) applies and the said fee has not been paid before the time of the communication of the international application under Article 20, a copy of the information concerning the priority claim which was considered not to have been made shall not be included in that communication.

Section 114

Electronic Transmission of Notices

Where the Treaty, the Regulations, or these Administrative Instructions provide for a notification or other communication to be transmitted by one national Office or intergovernmental organization to another, that notification or communication, except

where otherwise provided, may, where so agreed by both the sender and the receiver, be transmitted by electronic means or in electronic form.

Section 115

Indications of States, Territories, and Intergovernmental Organizations

The indication of a State, territory, or intergovernmental organization shall be made either by its full name, by a generally accepted short title which, if the indications are in English or French, shall be as appears in WIPO Standard ST.3 (Recommended Standard Two-Letter Code for the Representation of Countries, and of Other Entities and International Organizations Issuing or Registering Industrial Property Titles), or by the two-letter code as appears in that Standard.³

³ Published in the *WIPO Handbook on Industrial Property Information and Documentation*.

PART 2

INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

Section 201

Language of the International Application

The language in which the international application is filed shall preferably be indicated in the request.

Section 202

Kind of Protection

(a) Where the applicant wishes his application to be treated in any designated State as an application not for a patent but for the grant of another kind of protection referred to in Article 43, he shall make the indication in the request referred to in Rule 4.12(a) by inserting the words "inventor's certificate," "utility certificate," "utility model" (or "petty patent" for Australia), "patent of addition," "certificate of addition," "inventor's certificate of addition" or "utility certificate of addition," or their equivalent in the language of the international application, immediately after the indication of the said State.

(b) Where, in respect of a designated State which provides for the granting of a patent and of a utility model, the applicant is seeking two kinds of protection under Article 44, he shall make the indication referred to in Rule 4.12(b) by inserting, immediately after the indication of that State and in the language of the international application, the words "and utility model."

Section 203

Different Applicants for Different Designated States

(a) Different applicants may be indicated for different States designated for a regional patent.

(b) Where a particular State has been designated for both a national patent and a regional patent, the same applicant or applicants shall be indicated for both designations.

Section 204

Headings of the Parts of the Description

The headings of the parts of the description should be as follows:

- (i) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(i), "Technical Field";
- (ii) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(ii), "Background Art";
- (iii) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(iii), "Disclosure of Invention";
- (iv) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(iv), "Brief Description of Drawings";
- (v) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(v), "Best Mode for Carrying Out the Invention," or, where appropriate, "Mode(s) for Carrying Out the Invention";
- (vi) for matter referred to in Rule 5.1(a)(vi), "Industrial Applicability";
- (vii) for matter referred to in Rule 5.2(a), "Sequence Listing";
- (viii) for matter referred to in Rule 5.2(b), "Sequence Listing Free Text."

Section 205

Numbering and Identification of Claims upon Amendment

(a) Amendments to the claims under Article 19 or Article 34(2)(b) may be made either by cancelling one or more entire claims, by adding one or more new claims or by amending the text of one or more of the claims as filed. All the claims appearing on a replacement sheet shall be numbered in Arabic numerals. Where a claim is cancelled, no renumbering of the other claims shall be required. In all cases where claims are renumbered, they shall be renumbered consecutively.

(b) The applicant shall, in the letter referred to in the second and third sentences of Rule 46.5(a) or in the second and fourth sentences of Rule 66.8(a), indicate the differences between the claims as filed and the claims as amended. He shall, in particular, indicate in the said letter, in connection with each claim appearing in the international application (it being understood that identical indications concerning several claims may be grouped), whether:

- (i) the claim is unchanged;
- (ii) the claim is cancelled;
- (iii) the claim is new;

(iv) the claim replaces one or more claims as filed;

(v) the claim is the result of the division of a claim as filed.

Section 206

Unity of Invention

The determination by the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority and the designated and elected Offices whether an international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention under Rule 13 shall be made in accordance with Annex B.

Section 207

Arrangement of Elements and Numbering of Sheets of the International Application

(a) In effecting the sequential numbering of the sheets of the international application in accordance with Rule 11.7, the elements of the international application shall be placed in the following order: the request, the description (other than any sequence listing part thereof), the claims, the abstract, the drawings, the sequence listing part of the description (where applicable).

(b) The sequential numbering of the sheets shall be effected by using the following separate series of numbering:

(i) the first series applying to the request only and commencing with the first sheet of the request,

(ii) the second series commencing with the first sheet of the description (other than any sequence listing part thereof) and continuing through the claims until the last sheet of the abstract,

(iii) if applicable, a further series applying to the sheets of the drawings only and commencing with the first sheet of the drawings; the number of each sheet of the drawings shall consist of two Arabic numerals separated by a slant, the first being the sheet number and the second being the total number of sheets of drawings (for example, 1/3, 2/3, 3/3), and

(iv) if applicable, preferably, a further series applying to the sequence listing part of the description commencing with the first sheet of that part.

Section 208

Sequence Listings

Any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing ("sequence listing") filed as part of the international application, or furnished together with the international application or subsequently (whether in printed form or computer readable form), shall comply with Annex C.

Section 209

Indications as to Deposited Biological Material on a Separate Sheet

(a) To the extent that any indication with respect to deposited biological material is not contained in the description, it may be given on a separate sheet. Where any such indication is so given, it shall preferably be on Form PCT/RO/134 and, if furnished at the time of filing, the said Form shall, subject to paragraph (b), preferably be attached to the request and referred to in the check list referred to in Rule 3.3 (a)(ii).

(b) For the purposes of the Japanese Patent Office when Japan is designated, paragraph (a) applies only to the extent that the said Form or sheet is included as one of the sheets of the description of the international application at the time of filing.

Section 210

Calculation of Designation Fee for the Purposes of National and Regional Patents

Where the request of the international application contains a designation of a Contracting State without an indication of the wish to obtain a regional patent and also a designation of the same Contracting State with an indication of the wish to obtain a regional patent and the national law of the Contracting State does not contain a provision referred to in Article 45 (2), the designation fees shall be calculated on the basis that a separate fee is payable in respect of the designation of the Contracting State in addition to the designation fee payable in respect of that Contracting State as a Contracting State or as one of a group of Contracting States for which a regional patent is sought.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 211

Declaration as to the Identity of the Inventor

(a) Any declaration as to the identity of the inventor, referred to in Rule 4.17(i), shall be worded as follows:

“Declaration as to the identity of the inventor (Rules 4.17(i) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(i)):

in relation to [this] international application [No. PCT/...],

(i) ... (*name*) of ... (*address*) is the inventor of the subject matter for which protection is sought by way of [the] [this] international application

(ii) this declaration is made for the purposes of (*include as applicable*):

(a) all designations [except the designation of the United States of America]

(b) the following designations for national and/or regional patents: ...”

(b) This declaration need not be made if the name and address of the inventor are otherwise indicated in the request.

(c) This declaration may, where applicable, be combined, in accordance with Section 212(b), with the declaration referred to in Section 212(a).

Section 212

Declaration as to the Applicant's Entitlement to Apply for and Be Granted a Patent

(a) Any declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to apply for and be granted a patent, referred to in Rule 4.17(ii), shall be worded as follows, with such inclusion, omission, repetition and re-ordering of the matters listed as items (i) to (viii) as is necessary to explain the applicant's entitlement:

“Declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to apply for and be granted a patent (Rules 4.17(ii) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(ii)), in a case where the declaration under Rule 4.17(iv) is not appropriate:

in relation to [this] international application [No. PCT/...],

... (*name*) is entitled to apply for and be granted a patent by virtue of the following:

(i) ... (*name*) of ... (*address*) ... is the inventor of the subject matter for which protection is sought by way of [the] [this] international application

(ii) ... (*name*) [is] [was] entitled as employer of the inventor, ... (*inventor's name*)

(iii) an agreement between ... (*name*) and ... (*name*), dated ...

(iv) an assignment from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*), dated ...

(v) consent from ... (*name*) in favor of ... (*name*), dated ...

(vi) a court order issued by ... (*name of court*), effecting a transfer from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*), dated ...

(vii) transfer of entitlement from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*) by way of ... (*specify kind of transfer*), dated ...

(viii) the applicant's name changed from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*) on ... (*date*)

(ix) this declaration is made for the purposes of (*include as applicable*):

(a) all designations [except the designation of the United States of America]

(b) the following designations for national and/or regional patents: ...”

(b) The declaration referred to in paragraph (a) may, where applicable, be combined with the declaration referred to in Section 211(a), in which case the introductory phrase shall be worded as follows and the remainder of the combined declaration shall be worded as prescribed in paragraph (a):

“Combined declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to apply for and be granted a patent (Rules 4.17(ii) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(ii)) and as to the identity of the inventor (Rules 4.17(i) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(i)), in a case where the declaration under Rule 4.17(iv) is not appropriate:”

Section 213

Declaration as to the Applicant's Entitlement to Claim Priority of Earlier Application

Any declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to claim priority of the earlier application, referred to in Rule 4.17(iii), shall be worded as follows, with such inclusion, omission, repetition and re-ordering of the matters listed as items (i) to (viii) as is necessary to explain the applicant's entitlement:

"Declaration as to the applicant's entitlement, as at the international filing date, to claim the priority of the earlier application specified below, where the applicant is not the applicant who filed the earlier application or where the applicant's name has changed since the filing of the earlier application (Rules 4.17(iii) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(iii)):

in relation to [this] international application [No. PCT/...],

... (*name*) is entitled to claim priority of earlier application No. ... by virtue of the following:

(i) the applicant is the inventor of the subject matter for which protection was sought by way of the earlier application

(ii) ... (*name*) [is] [was] entitled as employer of the inventor, ... (*inventor's name*)

(iii) an agreement between ... (*name*) and ... (*name*), dated ...

(iv) an assignment from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*), dated ...

(v) consent from ... (*name*) in favor of ... (*name*), dated ...

(vi) a court order, issued by ... (*name of court*), effecting a transfer from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*), dated ...

(vii) transfer of entitlement from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*) by way of ... (*specify kind of transfer*), dated ...

(viii) the applicant's name changed from ... (*name*) to ... (*name*) on ... (*date*)

(ix) this declaration is made for the purposes of (*include as applicable*):

(a) all designations

(b) the following designations for national and/or regional patents: ..."

Section 214

Declaration of Inventorship

(a) A declaration of inventorship, referred to in Rule 4.17(iv), that is made for the purposes of the designation of the United States of America shall be worded as follows:

"Declaration of inventorship (Rules 4.17(iv) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(iv)) for the purposes of the designation of the United States of America:

I hereby declare that I believe I am the original, first and sole (if only one inventor is listed below) or joint (if more than one inventor is listed below) inventor of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought.

This declaration is directed to the international application of which it forms a part (if filing declaration with application).

This declaration is directed to international application No. PCT/... (if furnishing declaration pursuant to Rule 26^{ter}).

I hereby declare that my residence, mailing address, and citizenship are as stated next to my name.

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified international application, including the claims of said application. I have identified in the request of said application, in compliance with PCT Rule 4.10, any claim to foreign priority, and I have identified below, under the heading "Prior Applications," by application number, country or Member of the World Trade Organization, day, month and year of filing, any application for a patent or inventor's certificate filed in a country other than the United States of America, including any PCT international application designating at least one country other than the United States of America, having a filing date before that of the application on which foreign priority is claimed.

I hereby acknowledge the duty to disclose information that is known by me to be material to patentability as defined by 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, including for continuation-in-part applications, material information which became available between the

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

filing date of the prior application and the PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Name: ...

Residence: ... (city and either US state, if applicable, or country)

Mailing Address: ...

Citizenship: ...

Prior Applications: ...

Inventor's Signature: ... (if not contained in the request, or if declaration is corrected or added under Rule 26^{ter} after the filing of the international application. The signature must be that of the inventor, not that of the agent)

Date: ... (of signature which is not contained in the request, or of the declaration that is corrected or added under Rule 26^{ter} after the filing of the international application)"

(b) Where there is more than one inventor and all inventors do not sign the same declaration referred to in paragraph (a), each declaration shall indicate the names of all the inventors.

(c) Any correction or addition under Rule 26^{ter}.1 of a declaration referred to in paragraph (a) shall take the form of a declaration referred to in that paragraph and be signed by the inventor. In addition, any such correction shall be entitled "Supplemental declaration of inventorship (Rules 4.17(iv) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(iv))".

Section 215

Declaration as to Non-Prejudicial Disclosures or Exceptions to Lack of Novelty

Any declaration as to non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty shall be worded as follows, with such inclusion, omission, repetition and re-ordering of the matters listed as items (i) to (iv) as is necessary:

"Declaration as to non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty (Rules 4.17(v) and 51^{bis}.1(a)(v)):

in relation to [this] international application [No. PCT/...],

... (*name*) declares that the subject matter claimed in [the] [this] international application was disclosed as follows:

(i) kind of disclosure (*include as applicable*):

(a) international exhibition

(b) publication

(c) abuse

(d) other: ...(*specify*)

(ii) date of disclosure: ...

(iii) title of disclosure (*if applicable*): ...

(iv) place of disclosure (*if applicable*): ...

(v) this declaration is made for the purposes of (*include as applicable*):

(a) all designations

(b) the following designations for national and/or regional patents: ..."

Section 216

Notice of Correction or Addition of a Declaration Under Rule 26^{ter}

Any notice referred to in Rule 26^{ter}.1 shall consist of a replacement sheet containing a corrected declaration, or of an additional sheet containing a declaration, and an accompanying letter explaining the correction or addition.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

[The remainder of the page contains extremely faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the document.]

PART 3

INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO THE RECEIVING OFFICE

Section 301

Notification of Receipt of Purported International Application

Before the determination under Article 11(1), the receiving Office may notify the applicant of the receipt of the purported international application. The notification should indicate the date of actual receipt and the international application number of the purported international application referred to in Section 307 as well as, where useful for purposes of identification, the title of the invention.

Section 302

Priority Claim Considered Not To Have Been Made

Where the receiving Office declares, under Rule 26^{bis}.2(b), that a priority claim is considered not to have been made, that Office shall enclose the priority claim concerned within square brackets, draw a line between the square brackets, while still leaving legible the indications concerned, and enter, in the margin, the words "NOT TO BE CONSIDERED FOR PCT PROCEDURE (RO)" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, and shall notify the applicant accordingly. If copies of the international application have already been sent to the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority, the receiving Office shall also notify that Bureau and that Authority.

Section 303

Deletion of Additional Matter in the Request

(a) Where, under Rule 4.18(b), the receiving Office deletes ex officio any matter contained in the request, it shall do so by enclosing such matter within square brackets and entering, in the margin, the words "DELETED BY RO" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, and shall notify the applicant accordingly. If copies of the international application have already been sent to the International Bureau and the International Search-

ing Authority, the receiving Office shall also notify that Bureau and that Authority.

(b) The receiving Office shall not delete ex officio any indication made in declarations referred to in Rule 4.17 which are contained in the request.

Section 304

Invitation to Pay Fees Before Date on Which They Are Due

(a) If the receiving Office finds, before the date on which they are due, that the transmittal fee, the basic fee (including any supplement per sheet over 30) or the search fee are lacking in whole or in part, it may invite the applicant to pay the missing amounts within one month from the date of receipt of the international application.

(b) If the receiving Office finds, before the date on which they are due, that the designation fees for designations made under Rule 4.9(a) are lacking in whole or in part, it may invite the applicant to pay the missing amount within the time limit applicable under Rule 15.4(b).

(c) If the receiving Office finds that the applicant filed a written notice under Rule 4.9(c)(i), but failed to pay the designation fees and/or the confirmation fee under Rule 4.9(c)(ii) or that the amount paid is not sufficient, it may invite the applicant to pay the missing amount within the time limit under Rule 4.9(b)(ii).

Section 305

Identifying the Copies of the International Application

(a) Where, under Rule 11.1(a), the international application has been filed in one copy, the receiving Office shall, after preparing under Rule 21.1(a) the additional copies required under Article 12(1), mark,

(i) the words "RECORD COPY" in the upper left-hand corner of the first page of the original copy,

(ii) in the same space on one additional copy, the words "SEARCH COPY", and

(iii) in the same space on the other such copy, the words "HOME COPY," or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application.

(b) Where, under Rule 11.1(b), the international application has been filed in more than one copy, the receiving Office shall choose the copy most suitable for reproduction purposes, and mark the words "RECORD COPY," or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, in the upper left-hand corner of its first page. After verifying the identity of any additional copies and, if applicable, preparing under Rule 21.1(b) the home copy, it shall mark, in the upper left-hand corner of the first page of one such copy, the words "SEARCH COPY," and, in the same space on the other such copy, the words "HOME COPY," or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application.

Section 305^{bis}

Preparation, Identification and Transmittal of the Copies of the Translation of the International Application

(a) Where a translation of the international application is furnished under Rule 12.3, the receiving Office shall:

(i) be responsible for the prompt preparation of any additional copies required where the translation is furnished in less than the number of copies required for the purposes of this Section, and shall have the right to fix a fee for performing that task and to collect such fee from the applicant;

(ii) mark the words "RECORD COPY-TRANSLATION (RULE 12.3)" in the upper left-hand corner of the first page of the original copy of the translation and transmit that copy to the International Bureau;

(iii) mark the words "SEARCH COPY-TRANSLATION (RULE 12.3)" in the same space on one additional copy of the translation which, together with a copy of the request marked "SEARCH COPY" under Section 305(a)(ii), is considered pursuant to Rule 23.1(b) to be the search copy, and transmit such search copy to the International Searching Authority; and

(iv) mark the words "HOME COPY-TRANSLATION (RULE 12.3)" in the same space on the other such copy of the translation, and keep that copy in its files.

(b) The receiving Office may, when marking the copies of the translation under paragraph (a), use, instead of the words referred to in that paragraph, the equivalent of those words in the language of publication of the international application.

Section 306

Delayed Transmittal of Search Copy

Where the search copy will be transmitted to the International Searching Authority after the date on which the record copy is transmitted to the International Bureau, the receiving Office shall notify the International Bureau. The notification may be made by marking a check-box provided for this purpose on the request.

Section 307

System of Numbering International Applications

(a) Papers purporting to be an international application under Rule 20.1(a) shall be marked with the international application number, consisting of the letters "PCT," a slant, the two-letter code referred to in Section 115, indicating the receiving Office, a two-digit indication of the last two numbers of the year in which such papers were first received, a slant, and a five-digit number, allotted in sequential order corresponding to the order in which the international applications are received (e.g., "PCT/SE78/00001"). Where the International Bureau acts, pursuant to Rule 19.1(b), as receiving Office for a national Office, the two-letter code indicating the national Office for which the International Bureau acts as receiving Office shall be used.

(b) If a negative determination is made under Rule 20.7 or a declaration is made under Article 14 (4), the letters "PCT" shall be deleted by the receiving Office from the indication of the international application number on any papers marked previously with that number, and the said number shall be used without such letters in any future correspondence relating to the purported international application.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 308

Marking of the Sheets of the International Application and of the Translation Thereof

The receiving Office shall indelibly mark the international application number referred to in Section 307 in the upper right-hand corner of each sheet of each copy of the purported international application and of any translation of the international application furnished under Rule 12.3.

Section 309

Procedure in the Case of Later Submitted Sheets

(a) The receiving Office shall indelibly mark any sheet received on a date later than the date on which sheets were first received with the date on which it received that sheet, inserted immediately below the international application number referred to in Section 307.

(b) The receiving Office shall, in the case of later submitted sheets received within the time limits referred to in Rule 20.2(a)(i) and (ii):

(i) effect the required correction of the international filing date, or, where no international filing date has yet been accorded, of the date of receipt of the purported international application;

(ii) notify the applicant of the correction effected under item (i), above;

(iii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have already been made, notify the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority of any correction effected under item (i), above, by transmitting a copy of the corrected first and last sheets of the request, and forward the later submitted sheets to the said Bureau and a copy thereof to the said Authority;

(iv) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have not yet been made, attach the later submitted sheets to the record copy and a copy thereof to the search copy.

(c) The receiving Office shall, in the case of later submitted sheets received after the expiration of the time limit referred to in Rule 20.2(a)(i):

(i) notify the applicant of that fact and of the date of receipt of the later submitted sheets;

(ii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have already been made, forward the later submitted sheets to the International Bureau with the indication

on the bottom of each sheet of the words: "NOT TO BE TAKEN INTO CONSIDERATION FOR THE PURPOSES OF INTERNATIONAL PROCESSING" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application;

(iii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have not yet been made, attach the later submitted sheets to the record copy with the indication referred to in item (ii).

(d) The receiving Office shall, in the case of later submitted sheets received after the expiration of the time limit referred to in Rule 20.2(a)(ii), proceed as provided in Rule 20.7, unless the applicant has, within the said time limit, complied with the invitation under Article 11 (2)(a) so that an international filing date can be accorded; in the latter case, the receiving Office shall proceed as provided in paragraph (c)(i) to (iii).

Section 310

Procedure in the Case of Missing Drawings

(a) Where the international application refers to drawings which in fact are not included in that application, the receiving Office shall make the indication referred to in Rule 26.6(a) by marking a check-box provided for this purpose on the request.

(b) Section 309(a) shall apply also in the case of drawings received by the receiving Office on a date later than the date on which sheets were first received by that Office.

(c) The receiving Office shall, in the case of missing drawings received within the time limit referred to in Rule 20.2(a)(iii):

(i) effect the required correction of the international filing date, or, where no international filing date has yet been accorded, of the date of receipt of the purported international application, and delete the indication made under paragraph (a), above;

(ii) notify the applicant of the correction effected under item (i), above;

(iii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have already been made, notify the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority of any correction effected under item (i), above, by transmitting a copy of the corrected first and last sheets of the request, and forward the later submitted drawings to the said Bureau and a copy thereof to the said Authority;

(iv) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have not yet been made, attach the later submitted drawings to the record copy and a copy thereof to the search copy.

(d) The receiving Office shall, in the case of missing drawings received after the expiration of the time limit referred to in Rule 20.2(a)(iii):

(i) notify the applicant of the fact and of the date of receipt of the later submitted drawings;

(ii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have already been made, forward the later submitted drawings to the International Bureau with the indication on the bottom of each drawing of the words: "NOT TO BE TAKEN INTO CONSIDERATION (PCT Art. 14(2), 2nd sentence)" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application;

(iii) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have not yet been made, attach the later submitted drawings to the record copy with the indication referred to in item (ii).

Section 311

Renumbering in the Case of Deletion, Substitution or Addition of Sheets of the International Application and of the Translation Thereof

(a) The receiving Office shall, subject to Section 207, sequentially renumber the sheets of the international application when necessitated by the addition of any new sheet, the deletion of entire sheets, a change in the order of the sheets or any other reason.

(b) The sheets of the international application shall be provisionally renumbered in the following manner:

(i) when a sheet is deleted, the receiving Office shall either include a blank sheet with the same number and with the word "DELETED," or its equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, below the number, or insert, in brackets, below the number of the following sheet, the number of the deleted sheet with the word "DELETED" or its equivalent in the language of publication of the international application;

(ii) when one or more sheets are added, each sheet shall be identified by the number of the preceding sheet followed by a slant and then by another Arabic numeral such that the additional sheets are

numbered consecutively, starting always with number one for the first sheet added after an unchanged sheet (e.g., 10/1, 15/1, 15/2, 15/3, etc.); when later additions of sheets to an existing series of added sheets are necessary, an extra numeral shall be used for identifying the further additions (e.g., 15/1, 15/1/1, 15/1/2, 15/2, etc.).

(c) In the cases mentioned in paragraph (b), it is recommended that the receiving Office should write, below the number of the last sheet, the total number of the sheets of the international application followed by the words "TOTAL OF SHEETS" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application. It is further recommended that, at the bottom of any last sheet added, the words "LAST ADDED SHEET" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application should be inserted.

(d) Paragraphs (a) to (c) shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to any translation of the international application furnished under Rule 12.3.

Section 312

Notification of Decision Not to Issue Declaration that the International Application Is Considered Withdrawn

Where the receiving Office, after having notified the applicant under Rule 29.4 of its intent to issue a declaration under Article 14(4), decides not to issue such a declaration, it shall notify the applicant accordingly.

Section 313

Documents Filed with the International Application; Manner of Marking the Necessary Annotations in the Check List

(a) Any power of attorney, any priority document, any fee calculation sheet and any separate sheet referred to in Section 209(a) containing indications as to deposited biological material, filed with the international application shall accompany the record copy; any other document referred to in Rule 3.3(a)(ii) shall be sent only at the specific request of the International Bureau. If any document which is indicated in the check list as accompanying the international application is not, in fact, filed at the latest by the time the record copy leaves the receiving Office, that Office

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

shall so note on the check list and the said indication shall be considered as if it had not been made.

(b) Where, under Rule 3.3(b), the receiving Office itself completes the check list, that Office shall enter, in the margin, the words "COMPLETED BY RO" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application. Where only some of the indications are completed by the receiving Office, the said words and each indication completed by that Office shall be identified by an asterisk.

(c) Any sequence listing in computer readable form furnished to the receiving Office, or any sequence listing in printed form furnished to the receiving Office subsequent to the filing of the international application, shall be transmitted to the International Searching Authority together with the search copy. Where such a sequence listing is received by the receiving Office after the transmittal of the search copy, that sequence listing shall be promptly transmitted to the International Searching Authority.

Section 314

Correction or Addition of a Priority Claim Under Rule 26^{bis}

(a) Where the applicant, in a notice submitted to the receiving Office, corrects or adds a priority claim under Rule 26^{bis}, that Office shall enter the correction or addition in the request, draw a line through, while still leaving legible, any indication deleted as a result of the correction, and enter, in the margin, the letters "RO."

(b) The applicant and, if copies of the international application have already been sent to the International Bureau and the International Searching Authority, that Bureau and that Authority shall be promptly notified by the receiving Office of any correction or addition of a priority claim under Rule 26^{bis} and of the date on which it received such correction or addition.

Section 315

Notification Concerning Confirmation of Designation

Where a designation made under Rule 4.9(b) has been confirmed under Rule 4.9(c), the receiving

Office shall promptly notify the applicant and the International Bureau.

Section 316

Procedure in the Case Where the International Application Lacks the Prescribed Signature

Where, under Article 14(1)(a)(i), the receiving Office finds that the international application is defective in that it lacks the prescribed signature, that Office shall send to the applicant, together with the invitation to correct under Article 14(1)(b), a copy of the relevant sheet of the request part of the international application. The applicant shall, within the prescribed time limit, return said copy after affixing thereto the prescribed signature.

Section 317

Transmittal of a Notice of Correction or Addition of a Declaration Under Rule 26^{ter}.1

If a notice under Rule 26^{ter}.1 is submitted by the applicant to the receiving Office, that Office shall mark the date of receipt on the notice and transmit it promptly to the International Bureau. The notice shall be considered to have been received by the International Bureau on the date marked.

Section 318

Cancellation of Designations of Non-Contracting States

The receiving Office shall cancel *ex officio* the designation of any State which is not a Contracting State, shall enclose that designation within square brackets, shall draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the designation legible, shall enter, in the margin, the words "CANCELLED EX OFFICIO BY RO" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, and shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly. If the record copy has already been sent to the International Bureau, the receiving Office shall also notify that Bureau.

Section 319

[Deleted]

Section 320

Invitation to Pay Fees under Rule 16^{bis}.1(a) and (b)

(a) If invitations to pay fees are required to be issued by the receiving Office under both paragraph (a) and paragraph (b) of Rule 16^{bis}.1, those invitations may be issued as separate invitations unless the due dates for the fees concerned are less than 15 days apart, in which case those invitations shall preferably be issued as a single invitation.

(b) Where the receiving Office requires the payment of the late payment fee under Rule 16^{bis}.2, it shall calculate the amount of that fee on the basis of the total amount of the fees due referred to in the invitation under paragraph (a).

(c) When issuing an invitation under paragraph (a), the receiving Office shall, if it received moneys from the applicant before the due date, inform the applicant of the fees to which those moneys have been applied.

Section 321

Application of Moneys Received by the Receiving Office in Certain Cases

(a) The receiving Office shall, to the extent that it has received instructions from the applicant as to the fees to which it shall apply moneys received by it from the applicant, apply those moneys accordingly.

(b) Where the receiving Office receives moneys from the applicant which, together with any other moneys so received, are not sufficient to cover in full the transmittal fee (if any), the international fee and the search fee (if any), the receiving Office shall, to the extent that it has not received instructions from the applicant as to the fees to which it shall apply the moneys which are available for the purpose, apply those moneys in payment, successively, of the fees set out below to the extent that they are due and unpaid and in the order in which they appear below:

- (i) the transmittal fee;
- (ii) the basic fee part of the international fee;
- (iii) the search fee;
- (iv) the designation fee part of the international fee for designations made under Rule 4.9(a).

(c) Where, pursuant to paragraph (b), the receiving Office allocates moneys in payment of the designation fees to cover designations made under Rule 4.9(a), it shall apply them to those fees as follows:

(i) where the applicant indicates to which designation or designations the amount is to be applied, it shall be applied accordingly but, if the amount received is insufficient to cover the designations indicated, it shall be applied in the order chosen by the applicant in indicating the designations;

(ii) to the extent that the applicant has not given the indications referred to in item (i), the amount, or the balance thereof, shall be applied to the designations in the order in which they appear in the request part of the international application;

(iii) where the designation of a State is for the purposes of a regional patent, and provided that the required designation fee is, under the preceding provisions, available for that designation, the designation of any further States for which the same regional patent is sought shall be considered as covered by that fee.

(d) Where the receiving Office receives moneys from the applicant in response to an invitation under Rule 16^{bis}.1 which are not sufficient to cover all the unpaid fees, including, where required, the late payment fee under Rule 16^{bis}.2, the moneys shall be applied in the order referred to in paragraphs (b) and (c) to as many of the fees due, including any late payment fee, as can be covered.

(e) Where, pursuant to Rule 15.5(b), the receiving Office allocates moneys in payment of fees under Rule 15.5(a) in respect of the confirmation under Rule 4.9(c) of designations made under Rule 4.9(b), the receiving Office shall apply those moneys as follows:

(i) where the applicant indicates to which designation or designations the amount is to be applied, it shall be applied accordingly, but, if the amount is insufficient to cover the designations indicated, it shall be applied to the designations in the order chosen by the applicant in indicating the designations;

(ii) to the extent that the applicant has not given the indications referred to in item (i), the amount, or the balance thereof, shall be applied to the designations in the order in which they appear in the notice containing the confirmation;

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

(iii) where the designation of a State is for the purposes of a regional patent, and provided that the required designation fee is, under the preceding provisions, available for that designation, the designation of any further States for which the same regional patent is sought shall be considered as covered by that fee.

(f) When allocating moneys as provided in paragraph (e), both the designation fee and the confirmation fee must be covered in respect of each designation.

(g) Where moneys have been applied by the receiving Office in accordance with indications given by the applicant as mentioned in paragraph (c)(i) or (e)(i), the receiving Office shall inform the International Bureau as to the effect of the said indications, preferably by sending the International Bureau a copy of any relevant written communication received from the applicant.

Section 322

Invitation to Submit a Request for Refund of the Search Fee

The receiving Office may, before making a refund of the search fee under Rule 16.2, first invite the applicant to submit a request for the refund.

Section 323

Transmittal of Priority Documents to International Bureau

(a) Any priority document which is submitted to the receiving Office under Rule 17.1(a) shall be transmitted by that Office to the International Bureau together with the record copy or, if received after the record copy has been sent to the International Bureau, promptly after having been received by that Office.

(b) Where the priority document is issued by the receiving Office and the applicant has, not later than 16 months after the priority date, requested the receiving Office under Rule 17.1(b) to prepare and transmit it to the International Bureau, the receiving Office shall, promptly after receipt of such request ("request for priority document") and, where applicable, the payment of the fee referred to in that Rule,

transmit the priority document to the International Bureau. Where such request for priority document has been made but the required fee has not been paid, the receiving Office shall promptly notify the applicant that the request for priority document will be considered not to have been made unless the fee is paid not later than 16 months after the priority date or, in the case referred to in Article 23(2), not later than at the time the processing or examination of the international application is requested.

(c) When transmitting a priority document, the receiving Office shall notify the International Bureau of the date on which it received the priority document or the request for priority document.

(d) Where a request for priority document has, under paragraph (b), been considered not to have been made, the receiving Office shall promptly notify the International Bureau. Where the receiving Office fails to notify the International Bureau accordingly within 17 months from the priority date, the receiving Office shall prepare and transmit the priority document to the International Bureau even though the required fee has not been paid by the applicant.

(e) Where a request for priority document has been received by the receiving Office later than 16 months after the priority date, or where such request has, under paragraph (b), been considered not to have been made, the receiving Office shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the requirements of Rule 17.1(a).

Section 324

Copy of Notification of the International Application Number and the International Filing Date Under Rule 20.5(c)

The copy, sent to the International Bureau, of the notification of the international application number and the international filing date under Rule 20.5(c) shall also include, if the priority of an earlier application is claimed in the international application, the date of filing—as indicated in the international application—of that earlier application. If the priority of several earlier applications is claimed, the earliest filing date shall be indicated.

Section 325

**Corrections of Defects Under Rule 26.4(a),
Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1,
and Corrections Under Rule 9.2**

(a) Where the receiving Office receives a correction of defects under Rule 26.4(a) or authorizes a rectification of an obvious error under Rule 91.1, it shall:

(i) indelibly mark, in the upper right-hand corner of each replacement sheet, the international application number and the date on which that sheet was received;

(ii) indelibly mark, in the middle of the bottom margin of each replacement sheet, the words "SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)" (where the replacement sheet contains a correction of defects under Rule 26) or "RECTIFIED SHEET (RULE 91.1)" (where the replacement sheet contains the rectification of an obvious error under Rule 91.1) or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application;

(iii) indelibly mark on the letter containing the correction or rectification, or accompanying any replacement sheet, the date on which that letter was received;

(iv) keep in its files a copy of the letter containing the correction or rectification or, when the correction or rectification is contained in a replacement sheet, the replaced sheet, a copy of the letter accompanying the replacement sheet, and a copy of the replacement sheet;

(v) subject to item (vi), promptly transmit any letter and any replacement sheet to the International Bureau, and a copy thereof to the International Searching Authority;

(vi) where transmittals under Article 12(1) have not yet been made, transmit any letter and any replacement sheet to the International Bureau together with the record copy and, except where the international application is considered withdrawn and Rule 29.1 (a)(iii) applies, a copy of the said letter or replacement sheet to the International Searching Authority together with the search copy. The record copy and the search copy shall contain any replaced sheet.

(b) Where the receiving Office refuses to authorize the rectification of an obvious error under Rule 91.1, it shall proceed as indicated under paragraph (a)(i), (iii) and (iv) and promptly transmit any letter and any proposed replacement sheet to the International Bureau. If the record copy has not yet been sent to the International Bureau, any letter and any proposed replacement sheet shall be transmitted together with the record copy.

(c) Where the receiving Office receives corrections aimed at complying with Rule 9.1, paragraphs (a) and (b) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*, provided that, where a sheet is marked as indicated in paragraph (a)(ii), the words "SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 9.2)" shall be used.

Section 326

**Withdrawal by Applicant Under Rule 90^{bis}.1,
90^{bis}.2 or 90^{bis}.3**

(a) The receiving Office shall promptly transmit to the International Bureau any notice from the applicant effecting withdrawal of the international application under Rule 90^{bis}.1, of a designation under Rule 90^{bis}.2 or of a priority claim under Rule 90^{bis}.3 which has been filed with it together with an indication of the date of receipt of the notice. If the record copy has not yet been sent to the International Bureau, the receiving Office shall transmit the said notice together with the record copy.

(b) If the search copy has already been sent to the International Searching Authority and the international application is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.1 or a priority claim is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.3, the receiving Office shall promptly transmit a copy of the notice effecting withdrawal to the International Searching Authority.

(c) If the search copy has not yet been sent to the International Searching Authority and the international application is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.1, the receiving Office shall not send the search copy to the International Searching Authority and shall, subject to Section 322, refund the search fee to the applicant unless it has already been transferred to the International Searching Authority. If the search fee has already been transferred to the International Searching Authority, the receiving Office shall send a copy of

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

the request and of the notice effecting withdrawal to that Authority.

(d) If the search copy has not yet been sent to the International Searching Authority and a priority claim is withdrawn under Rule 90^{bis}.3, the receiving Office shall transmit a copy of the notice effecting withdrawal to the International Searching Authority together with the search copy.

Section 327

Ex Officio Correction of Request by the Receiving Office

(a) Subject to paragraph (d), where the record copy has not yet been sent to the International Bureau and the request requires correction because it contains an inconsistency or a minor defect such as non-compliance with the requirement for indications under Section 115, the receiving Office may correct the request *ex officio*. If the receiving Office does so, it shall notify the applicant accordingly.

(b) When making a correction under paragraph (a), the receiving Office shall enter, in the margin, the letters "RO." Where any matter is to be deleted, the receiving Office shall enclose such matter within square brackets and shall draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the deleted matter legible. Where any matter is to be replaced, both the first and second sentences of this paragraph shall apply.

(c) The receiving Office shall check the number of characters of the file reference, if any, and shall delete any characters beyond the number permitted by Section 109.

(d) The receiving Office shall not make any *ex officio* correction to declarations referred to in Rule 4.17 which are contained in the request.

Section 328

Notifications Concerning Representation

(a) Where a power of attorney or a document containing the revocation or renunciation of an appointment is submitted to the receiving Office and the record and search copies have already been transmitted, the receiving Office shall immediately notify the International Bureau and the International Search-

ing Authority by sending them a copy of the power of attorney or document and request the International Bureau to record a change in the indications concerning the agent or common representative under Rule 92^{bis}.1(a)(ii).

(b) If the record copy and/or search copy have not yet been transmitted by the receiving Office, a copy of the power of attorney or document containing the revocation or renunciation of an appointment shall be transmitted by the receiving Office with the record copy and/or search copy.

Section 329

Correction of Indications Concerning the Applicant's Residence or Nationality

Where, in response to an invitation to correct a defect under Article 11 (1)(i), evidence is submitted indicating to the satisfaction of the receiving Office that, in fact, the applicant had, on the date on which the international application was actually received, the right to file an international application with that receiving Office, the invitation shall be considered to be an invitation to correct a defect under Article 14 (1)(a)(ii) and Rule 4.5 in the prescribed indications concerning the applicant's residence and/or nationality, and the applicant may correct those indications accordingly. If such correction is made, no defect shall be considered to exist under Article 11 (1)(i).

Section 330

Transmittal of Record Copy Prevented or Delayed by National Security Prescriptions

(a) Where prescriptions concerning national security prevent the transmittal of the record copy by the receiving Office to the International Bureau under Rule 22.1(a), the receiving Office shall notify the applicant and the International Bureau accordingly.

(b) The notifications under paragraph (a) shall be sent before the expiration of 13 months from the priority date. Where the receiving Office believes that national security clearance is imminent, it may postpone the sending of the notifications, but shall send them before the expiration of 17 months from the priority date if no clearance has been given by that time.

Section 331

Receipt of Confirmation Copy

Where, subject to Rule 92.4, the receiving Office receives an international application by facsimile machine transmission and subsequently receives the original of that international application, it shall mark such original with the words "CONFIRMATION COPY" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application on the bottom of the first page of the request and on the first page of the description. The marking under Section 325 is not required in such a case. The international application as received by facsimile machine transmission shall constitute the record copy. The confirmation copy shall be transmitted to the International Bureau in addition to the record copy.

Section 332

Notification of Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications

(a) Each receiving Office shall notify the International Bureau of the language or languages which, having regard to Rule 12.1(b), it is prepared to accept under Rule 12.1(a) for the filing of international applications.

(b) Each receiving Office shall notify the International Bureau of any change to the information notified under paragraph (a). If the change means that the receiving Office is no longer prepared to accept the filing of international applications in a language that it had previously notified the International Bureau that it was prepared to accept, the effective date of such change shall be two months after the date of publication of the notification of the change in the Gazette pursuant to Section 405 or such later date as may be determined by the receiving Office.

(c) Nothing in paragraph (a) or (b) prevents any receiving Office from accepting, in a particular case, the filing of an international application in a language that it has not notified the International Bureau that it is prepared to accept.

Section 333

Transmittal of International Application to the International Bureau as Receiving Office

(a) Where a national Office intends to proceed under Rule 19.4(b) having regard to Rule 19.4(a)(i) or (ii), it shall, if it requires payment of the fee referred to in Rule 19.4(b) and that fee has not already been paid, promptly invite the applicant to pay that fee within a time limit of 15 days from the date of the invitation.

(b) Where a national Office intends to proceed under Rule 19.4(b) having regard to Rule 19.4(a)(iii), it shall promptly request the International Bureau as receiving Office to agree to the transmittal of the international application. The International Bureau as receiving Office shall promptly respond to that request. If the International Bureau as receiving Office agrees to the transmittal, the national Office shall promptly invite the applicant:

(i) if the transmittal has not already been authorized by the applicant, to submit to that Office, within a time limit of 15 days from the date of the invitation, an authorization of the transmittal, and,

(ii) if the Office requires payment of the fee referred to in Rule 19.4(b) and that fee has not already been paid, to pay that fee within the time limit referred to in item (i).

(c) The national Office:

(i) need not proceed under Rule 19.4(b) having regard to Rule 19.4(a)(i) to (iii) if the Office requires payment of the fee referred to in Rule 19.4(b) and the applicant does not pay that fee;

(ii) shall not proceed under Rule 19.4(b) having regard to Rule 19.4(a)(iii) if the International Bureau as receiving Office does not agree to, or if the applicant does not authorize, the transmittal of the international application under Rule 19.4(a)(iii).

Section 334

Notification to Applicant of Submission of Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from the Priority Date

Where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date to a receiving Office, that Office shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the fact that the

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

time limit under Article 39 (1)(a) does not apply, and shall proceed under Rule 59.3.

Section 335

Transmittal of PCT-EASY Diskette Containing Request Data and Abstract

Any PCT-EASY diskette furnished to the receiving Office in accordance with Section 102^{bis} shall be transmitted by that Office to the International Bureau at the same time as the record copy.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

PART 4

INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO THE INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

Section 401

Marking of the Sheets of the Record Copy

(a) The International Bureau shall, upon receipt of the record copy, mark the date of receipt of the record copy in the appropriate space on the request.

(b) If the receiving Office has failed to mark any sheet as provided in Sections 311 and 325, the marking which has not been made may be inserted by the International Bureau.

Section 402

Correction or Addition of a Priority Claim Under Rule 26^{bis}

(a) Where the applicant, in a notice submitted to the International Bureau, corrects or adds a priority claim under Rule 26^{bis}, that Bureau shall enter the correction or addition in the request, draw a line through, while still leaving legible, any indication deleted as a result of the correction, and enter, in the margin, the letters "IB".

(b) [Deleted]

(c) The applicant, the receiving Office and the International Searching Authority shall be promptly notified by the International Bureau of any correction or addition of a priority claim under Rule 26^{bis} and of the date on which it received such correction or addition.

(d) Any designated Office which has been notified under Rule 24.2(b) of the receipt of the record copy shall be notified by the International Bureau of any correction or addition of a priority claim under Rule 26^{bis}.

Section 403

Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where International Application Is Considered to Lack Unity of Invention

Where, under Rules 40.2(c) or 68.3(c), the International Bureau receives a request from the applicant to

forward to any designated or elected Office the texts of both the protest against payment of an additional fee as provided for in Articles 17(3)(a) and 34(3)(a) where the international application is considered to lack unity of invention and the decision thereon by the International Searching Authority or the International Preliminary Examining Authority, as the case may be, it shall proceed according to such request.

Section 404

International Publication Number of International Application

The International Bureau shall assign to each published international application an international publication number which shall be different from the international application number. The international publication number shall be used on the pamphlet and in the Gazette entry. It shall consist of the two-letter code "WO" followed by a two-digit designation of the last two numbers of the year of publication, a slant, and a serial number consisting of five digits (e.g., "WO78/12345").

Section 405

Publication of Notifications of Languages Accepted for the Filing of International Applications

The International Bureau shall promptly publish in the Gazette any notification under Section 332(a) or (b).

Section 406

Pamphlets

(a) Pamphlets referred to in Rule 48.1 shall be published on a given day of the week.

(b) All pamphlets shall be of A4 size and shall be reproduced recto verso, except that drawings shall be reproduced recto only.

(c) The form and particulars of the front page of each pamphlet shall be decided by the Director General.

Section 407

The Gazette

(a) The Gazette in paper form referred to in Rule 86.1(b)(i) shall be of A4 size and shall be reproduced *recto verso*.

(b) The Gazette in electronic form referred to in Rule 86.1 (b)(ii) shall be made available on the Internet, on CD-ROM and by any other electronic means as determined by the Director General. Details concerning the availability of the Gazette in electronic form shall be published in the Gazette in paper form.

(c) In addition to the contents specified in Rule 86, the Gazette shall contain, in respect of each published international application, the data indicated in Annex D.

(d) The information referred to in Rule 86.1(a)(v) shall be that which is indicated in Annex E.

Section 408

Priority Application Number

(a) [Deleted]

(b) If the number of the earlier application referred to in Rule 4.10(a)(ii) ("priority application number") is furnished after the expiration of the prescribed time limit, the International Bureau shall inform the applicant and the designated Offices of the date on which the said number was furnished. It shall indicate the said date in the international publication by including on the front page of the pamphlet next to the priority application number the words "FURNISHED LATE ON... (date)," and the equivalent of such words in the language in which the international application is published if that language is other than English.

(c) If the priority application number has not been furnished at the time of the completion of the technical preparations for international publication, the International Bureau shall indicate that fact by including on the front page of the pamphlet in the space provided for the priority application number the words "NOT FURNISHED" and the equivalent of such words in the language in which the international application is published if that language is other than English.

Section 409

Priority Claim Considered Not to Have Been Made

Where the International Bureau declares, under Rule 26^{bis}.2(b), that a priority claim is considered not to have been made, that Bureau shall enclose the priority claim concerned within square brackets, draw a line between the square brackets, while still leaving legible the indications concerned, and enter, in the margin, the words "NOT TO BE CONSIDERED FOR PCT PROCEDURE (IB)" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application, and shall notify the applicant accordingly. The International Bureau shall also notify the receiving Office and the International Searching Authority.

Section 410

Numbering of Sheets for the Purposes of International Publication; Procedure in Case of Missing Sheets or Drawings

(a) In the course of preparing the international application for international publication, the International Bureau shall sequentially renumber the sheets to be published only when necessitated by the addition of any new sheet, the deletion of entire sheets or a change in the order of the sheets. Otherwise, the numbering provided under Section 207 shall be maintained.

(b) Where a sheet or a drawing has not been filed or is not to be taken into consideration for the purposes of international processing under Section 309(c) or Section 310(d), the International Bureau shall include an indication to that effect in the pamphlet.

Section 411

Receipt of Priority Document

(a) The International Bureau shall mark, on the first page of the priority document:

(i) the date on which the priority document has been received by it, and

(ii) the words "PRIORITY DOCUMENT—SUBMITTED OR TRANSMITTED IN COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 17.1(a) OR (b)" or the words "PRIORITY DOCUMENT — SUBMITTED OR TRANSMITTED BUT NOT IN COMPLIANCE

WITH RULE 17.1(a) OR (b),” as applicable, or their equivalent in French, and shall notify the applicant and, preferably together with the notification under Rule 47.1(a^{bis}), the designated Offices, accordingly.

(b) Where the priority document has been submitted or transmitted but not in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b), the International Bureau shall, in the notification under paragraph (a) of this Section, direct the attention of the applicant and the designated Offices to the provisions of Rule 17.1(c).

Section 412

Notification of Lack of Transmittal of Search Copy

If the International Bureau does not receive from the International Searching Authority a notification under Rule 25.1 within two months from the date of receipt of the record copy, the International Bureau shall remind the receiving Office to transmit the search copy to the International Searching Authority. A copy of the reminder shall be sent to the International Searching Authority.

Section 413

Corrections of Defects Under Rule 26.4(a), Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1, and Corrections Under Rule 9.2

(a) Where the International Bureau receives from the receiving Office a letter containing a correction of any defects under Rule 26.4(a), or a replacement sheet and the letter accompanying it, the International Bureau shall transfer the correction to the record copy, together with the indication of the date on which the receiving Office received the letter, or shall insert the replacement sheet in the record copy. Any letter and any replaced sheet shall be kept in the file of the international application.

(b) Paragraph (a) shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to rectifications of obvious errors authorized by the receiving Office or by the International Searching Authority under Rule 91.1 and to corrections submitted by the applicant to the receiving Office or the International Searching Authority aimed at complying with the prescription of Rule 9.1 concerning certain expressions, drawings, statements or other matter.

Section 414

Notification to the International Preliminary Examining Authority Where the International Application or the Designations of All Elected States Are Considered Withdrawn

If a demand has been submitted and the international application or the designations of all designated States which have been elected are considered withdrawn under Article 14(1), (3) or (4), the International Bureau shall promptly notify the International Preliminary Examining Authority, unless the international preliminary examination report has already issued.

Section 415

Notification of Withdrawal Under Rule 90^{bis}.1, 90^{bis}.2, 90^{bis}.3 or 90^{bis}.4

(a) The fact of withdrawal by the applicant of the international application under Rule 90^{bis}.1, of designations under Rule 90^{bis}.2, or of a priority claim under Rule 90^{bis}.3, together with the date on which the notice effecting withdrawal reached the International Bureau, the International Preliminary Examining Authority or the receiving Office, shall be recorded by the International Bureau and promptly notified by it to the receiving Office, the applicant, the designated Offices affected by the withdrawal if they have already been notified of their designation and, where the withdrawal concerns the international application or a priority claim and where the international search report or the declaration referred to in Article 17(2)(a) has not yet issued, the International Searching Authority. However, where the withdrawal concerns the international application and where the notice effecting withdrawal was filed with the receiving Office before the sending of the record copy to the International Bureau, that Bureau shall send the notifications referred to in the preceding sentence and in Rule 24.2(a) to the receiving Office and the applicant only.

(b) If, at the time of the withdrawal of the international application under Rule 90^{bis}.1, or of a priority claim under Rule 90^{bis}.3, a demand has already been submitted and the international preliminary examination report has not yet issued, the International Bureau shall, unless the notice effecting with-

drawal was submitted to the International Preliminary Examining Authority, promptly notify the fact of withdrawal to that Authority, together with the date on which the notice effecting withdrawal has reached the International Bureau or the receiving Office.

(c) The fact of withdrawal by the applicant of the demand or of one or more elections under Rule 90^{bis}.4, together with the date on which the notice effecting withdrawal was, or was considered to have been, submitted to the International Bureau, shall be promptly notified by that Bureau:

- (i) to the applicant,
- (ii) to each elected Office affected by the withdrawal, except where it has not yet been notified of its election, and
- (iii) in the case of withdrawal of the demand or of all elections, to the International Preliminary Examining Authority, unless the notice effecting withdrawal was submitted to that Authority.

Section 416

Correction of Request in Record Copy

(a) Where the request requires correction as a consequence of the withdrawal of a designation or of a change made under Rule 92^{bis}, the International Bureau shall make the necessary correction in the record copy and shall notify the applicant and the receiving Office accordingly.

(b) When making a correction under paragraph (a), the International Bureau shall enter, in the margin, the letters "IB." Where the correction involves the deletion or replacement of some matter, the International Bureau shall enclose such matter within square brackets and shall draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the deleted or replaced matter legible.

Section 417

Processing of Amendments Under Article 19

(a) The International Bureau shall record the date on which, under Rule 46.1, any amendment made under Article 19 was received, shall notify the applicant of that date and indicate it in any publication or copy issued by it.

(b) The International Bureau shall mark, in the upper right-hand corner of each replacement sheet submitted under Rule 46.5(a), the international appli-

cation number the date on which that sheet was received under Rule 46.1 and, in the middle of the bottom margin, the words "AMENDED SHEET (ARTICLE 19)." It shall keep in its files any replaced sheet, the letter accompanying the replacement sheet or sheets, and any letter referred to in the last sentence of Rule 46.5(a).

(c) The International Bureau shall insert any replacement sheet in the record copy and, in the case referred to in the last sentence of Rule 46.5(a), shall indicate the cancellations in the record copy.

(d) If, at the time when the demand is received by the International Bureau, the international search report has been established and no amendments under Article 19 have been made, the International Bureau shall inform the International Preliminary Examining Authority accordingly.

Section 418

Notifications to Elected Offices Where the Demand or an Election Is Considered Not to Have Been Submitted or Made

Where, after any elected Office has been notified of its election under Article 31(7), the demand or the election is considered not to have been submitted or made, the International Bureau shall notify the said Office accordingly.

Section 419

Processing of a Declaration Under Rule 26^{ter}

(a) Where any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17, or any correction thereof under Rule 26^{ter}.1, is submitted to the International Bureau within the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1, the International Bureau shall indicate the date on which it received the declaration or correction and insert the additional sheet or replacement sheet in the record copy.

(b) The International Bureau shall promptly notify the applicant, the receiving Office and the International Searching Authority of any declaration corrected or added under Rule 26^{ter}.1.

(c) The International Bureau shall not make any *ex officio* correction to declarations referred to in Rule 4.17 which are contained in the request.

(d) Where any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17, or any correction thereof under Rule 26^{ter}.1, is

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

submitted to the International Bureau after the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1, the International Bureau shall notify the applicant accordingly and inform the applicant that such a declaration or correction should be submitted directly to the designated Office or Offices concerned. Any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17(iv), signed as prescribed in Section 214, which is submitted to the International Bureau after the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1 shall be returned to the applicant.

Section 420

Copy of International Application and International Search Report for the International Preliminary Examining Authority

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority is not part of the same national Office or intergovernmental organization as the International Searching Authority, the International Bureau shall, promptly upon receipt of the international search report or, if the demand was received after the international search report, promptly upon receipt of the demand, send a copy of the international application and the international search report to the International Preliminary Examining Authority. In cases where, instead of the international search report, a declaration under Article 17(2)(a) was issued, references in the preceding sentence to the international search report shall be considered references to the said declaration.

Section 421

Invitation to Furnish a Copy of the Priority Document

Where a request for a copy of the application whose priority is claimed in the international application is made under Rule 66.7(a) by the International Preliminary Examining Authority before the International Bureau has received the priority document under Rule 17.1, the International Bureau shall, unless the applicable time limit referred to in Rule 17.1(a) has already expired, inform the applicant of such request and remind him of the requirements of Rule 17.1.

Section 422

Notifications Concerning Changes Recorded Under Rule 92^{bis}.1

(a) The International Bureau shall give notifications concerning changes recorded by it under Rule 92^{bis}.1(a), except changes which are the subject of notifications under Section 425:

(i) to the receiving Office;

(ii) as long as the international search report has not been established, to the International Searching Authority;

(iii) to the designated Offices, unless the change has been recorded after the expiration of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1) or unless the change can be duly reflected in the pamphlet used for the purposes of the communication of the international application under Article 20;

(iv) as long as the international preliminary examination report has not been established, to the International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(v) to the elected Offices, unless the change can be duly reflected in the pamphlet used for the purposes of the communication of the international application under Article 20;

(vi) to the applicant; where the change consists of a change in the person of the applicant, the notification shall be sent to the earlier applicant and the new applicant, provided that, where the earlier applicant and the new applicant are represented by the same agent, one notification only shall be sent to the said agent.

(b) Where Rule 92^{bis}.1(b) applies, the International Bureau shall notify the applicant accordingly and, if the change was requested by the receiving Office, that Office.

Section 423

Cancellation of Designations and Elections

(a) The International Bureau shall, if the receiving Office has failed to do so, cancel *ex officio* the designation of any State which is not a Contracting State, shall enclose that designation within square brackets, draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the designation legible, enter, in the margin, the words "CANCELLED EX OFFICIO BY

IB" or their equivalent in French, and notify the applicant and the receiving Office accordingly.

(b) The International Bureau shall cancel *ex officio*:

(i) the election, in the demand or in a notice effecting a later election, of any State which is not a designated State;

(ii) the election, in the demand, of any State not bound by Chapter II of the Treaty, if the International Preliminary Examining Authority has failed to do so;

(iii) the election, in a notice effecting a later election, of any State not bound by Chapter II of the Treaty.

(c) The International Bureau shall enclose the cancelled election within square brackets, draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the election legible, enter, in the margin, the words "CANCELLED EX OFFICIO BY IB" or their equivalent in French, and notify the applicant and, if the election is in the demand, the International Preliminary Examining Authority accordingly.

Section 424

[Deleted]

Section 425

Notifications Concerning Representation

Where a power of attorney or a document containing the revocation or renunciation of an appointment is submitted to the International Bureau, the International Bureau shall immediately notify the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority and the International Preliminary Examining Authority by sending them a copy of the power of attorney or document and shall record a change in the indications concerning the agent or common representative under Rule 92^{bis}. In the case of a renunciation of an appointment, the International Bureau shall also notify the applicant. Where the International Bureau receives a notification concerning representation under Section 328, it shall immediately notify the International Preliminary Examining Authority accordingly.

Section 426

Notification of Designation under Rule 24.2(b)

Each designated Office having notified the International Bureau under Rule 24.2(b) that it wishes to receive the notification under Rule 24.2(a) shall receive periodically, but at least once a month, a listing of the international applications containing the designation(s) of the State(s) for which that Office acts as a designated Office, including designations made under Rule 4.9(a) and those made under Rule 4.9(b) which have been confirmed under Rule 4.9(c). Such listing shall contain, in respect of each designation:

- (i) the international application number,
- (ii) the international filing date,
- (iii) the name of the applicant, and
- (iv) the earliest priority date claimed.

Section 427

Publication of Notice of Confirmation of Designation

Where an international application has been published under Article 21(2)(b) before the confirmation of a designation under Rule 4.9(c), a notice of that confirmation shall be published in the Gazette.

Section 428

Publication of Notice of Later Election

Where a later election is made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, a notice of that fact shall be published in the Gazette.

Section 429

Notice of Extension

Where a request for extension of the effects of an international application to a successor State, made in accordance with Rule 32.1(c), is received by the International Bureau after technical preparations for international publication have been completed, a notice of this fact shall be published in the Gazette.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 430

**Notification of Designations under Rule 32
(Extensions)**

Where the request for extension is made under Rule 32.1(c), the International Bureau shall promptly, but not before the international publication of the international application, effect the communication under Article 20 to the designated Office concerned, notify that Office under Rule 47.1(a^{bis}), and notify it of the date of the receipt of the request for extension.

Section 431

Publication of Notice of Submission of Demand

The publication in the Gazette of information on the demand and the elected States concerned, as referred to in Rule 61.4, shall consist of a notice indicating that a demand has been submitted prior to the expiration of 19 months from the priority date and, as applicable, indicating that all eligible States have been elected or, where not all eligible States have been

elected, indicating those eligible States which have not been elected.

Section 432

**Notification to Applicant of Submission of
Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months
from the Priority Date**

Where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date and subsequently transmitted to the International Bureau under Rule 59.3(a), or where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date to the International Bureau, the International Bureau shall, together with the notification sent to the applicant under Rule 59.3(c)(i) or the invitation sent to the applicant under Rule 59.3(c)(ii), as the case may be, promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the fact that the time limit under Article 39(1)(a) does not apply, and shall proceed under Rule 59.3.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

1. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

2. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

3. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

4. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

5. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

6. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

7. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

8. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

9. The examiner should examine the application as filed, and not as amended, unless the applicant has filed a request for amendment.

PART 5

**INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING
AUTHORITY**

Section 501

**Corrections Submitted to the International
Searching Authority Concerning Expressions, etc.,
Not To Be Used in the International Application**

Where the International Searching Authority receives corrections aimed at complying with Rule 9.1, Section 511 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*, provided that, where a sheet is marked as indicated in Section 511(a)(ii), the words "SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 9.2)" shall be used.

Section 502

**Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of
Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where
International Application Is Considered
to Lack Unity of Invention**

The International Searching Authority shall transmit to the applicant, preferably at the latest together with the international search report, any decision which it has taken under Rule 40.2(c) on the protest of the applicant against payment of an additional fee where the international application is considered to lack unity of invention. At the same time, it shall transmit to the International Bureau a copy of both the protest and the decision thereon, as well as any request by the applicant to forward the texts of both the protest and the decision thereon to the designated Offices.

Section 503

**Method of Identifying Documents Cited in the
International Search Report**

Identification of any document cited in the international search report shall be as provided in WIPO Standard ST.14 (Recommendation for the Inclusion of References Cited in Patent Documents).⁴

Section 504

**Classification of the Subject Matter
of the International Application**

(a) Where the subject matter of the international application is such that classification thereof requires more than one classification symbol according to the principles to be followed in the application of the International Patent Classification to any given patent document, the international search report shall indicate all such symbols.

(b) Where any national classification system is used, the international search report may indicate all the applicable classification symbols also according to that system.

(c) Where the subject matter of the international application is classified both according to the International Patent Classification and to any national classification system, the international search report shall, wherever possible, indicate the corresponding symbols of both classifications opposite each other.

(d) The version of the International Patent Classification applicable at the time the international application is published under Article 21 shall be used whenever feasible.

Section 505

**Indication of Citations of Particular Relevance
in the International Search Report**

(a) Where any document cited in the international search report is of particular relevance, the special indication required by Rule 43.5(c) shall consist of the letter(s) "X" and/or "Y" placed next to the citation of the said document.

(b) Category "X" is applicable where a document is such that when taken alone, a claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step.

(c) Category "Y" is applicable where a document is such that a claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the

⁴Editor's Note: Published in the *WIPO Handbook on Industrial Property Information and Documentation*.

document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

Section 506

Comments on Draft Translation of the International Application

(a) Where the applicant has made comments, within the time limits fixed by the International Searching Authority, on the draft translation prepared under the responsibility of the International Searching Authority as provided in Rule 48.3(b), that Authority shall notify the applicant whether it has changed the draft translation and, if so, of the changes it has made therein.

(b) Where the applicant submits comments on the draft translation prepared under the responsibility of the International Searching Authority after the expiration of the time limits fixed by the International Searching Authority, and that Authority changes the draft translation, it shall notify the applicant accordingly.

Section 507

Manner of Indicating Certain Special Categories of Documents Cited in the International Search Report

(a) Where any document cited in the international search report refers to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition, or other means referred to in Rule 33.1(b), the separate indication required by that Rule shall consist of the letter "O" placed next to the citation of the said document.

(b) Where any document cited in the international search report is a published application or patent as defined in Rule 33.1(c), the special mention required by that Rule shall consist of the letter "E" placed next to the citation of the said document.

(c) Where any document cited in the international search report is not considered to be of particular relevance requiring the use of categories "X" and/or "Y" as provided in Section 505 but defines the gen-

eral state of the art, it shall be indicated by the letter "A" placed next to the citation of the said document.⁵

(d) Where any document cited in the international search report is a document whose publication date occurred earlier than the international filing date of the international application, but later than the priority date claimed in that application, it shall be indicated by the letter "P" next to the citation of the said document.

(e) Where any document cited in the international search report is a document whose publication date occurred after the filing date or the priority date of the international application and is not in conflict with the said application, but is cited for the principle or theory underlying the invention, which may be useful for a better understanding of the invention, or is cited to show that the reasoning or the facts underlying the invention are incorrect, it shall be indicated by the letter "T" next to the citation of the document.

(f) Where in the international search report any document is cited for reasons other than those referred to in paragraphs (a) to (e), for example:

— a document which may throw doubt on a priority claim,⁶

— a document cited to establish the publication date of another citation,⁷

such document shall be indicated by the letter "L" next to the citation of the document and the reason for citing the document shall be given.

(g) Where a document is a member of a patent family,⁸ it shall, whenever feasible, be mentioned in the international search report in addition to the one cited belonging as well to this family and should be preceded by the sign ampersand (&). Members of a patent family may also be mentioned on a separate sheet, provided that the family to which they belong shall be clearly identified and that any text matter on that sheet, if not in the English language, shall also be furnished to the International Bureau in English translation.

(h) A document whose contents have not been verified by the search examiner but are believed to be

⁵See Chapter III, paragraph 3.14 of the PCT Search Guidelines.

⁶See Chapter VI, paragraph 4.3 of the PCT Search Guidelines.

⁷See Chapter VI, paragraph 6.2 of the PCT Search Guidelines.

⁸See Chapter IV, paragraph 3.2 of the PCT Search Guidelines.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

substantially identical with those of another document which the search examiner has inspected, may be cited in the international search report in the manner indicated for patent family members in the first sentence of paragraph (g).⁹

Section 508

Manner of Indicating the Claims to Which the Documents Cited in the International Search Report Are Relevant

(a) The claims to which cited documents are relevant shall be indicated by placing in the appropriate column of the international search report:

(i) where the cited document is relevant to one claim, the number of that claim; for example, "2" or "17";

(ii) where the cited document is relevant to two or more claims numbered in consecutive order, the number of the first and last claims of the series connected by a hyphen; for example, "1-15" or "2-3";

(iii) where the cited document is relevant to two or more claims that are not numbered in consecutive order, the number of each claim placed in ascending order and separated by a comma or commas; for example, "1, 6" or "1, 7, 10";

(iv) where the cited document is relevant to more than one series of claims under (ii), above, or to claims of both categories (ii) and (iii), above, the series or individual claim numbers and series placed in ascending order using commas to separate the several series, or to separate the numbers of individual claims and each series of claims; for example, "1-6, 9-10, 12-15" or "1, 3-4, 6, 9-11."

(b) Where different categories apply to the same document cited in an international search report in respect of different claims or groups of claims, each relevant claim or group of claims shall be listed separately opposite each indicated category of relevance. Each category and each relevant claim or group of claims may be separated by a line.

The following example illustrates the situation where a document is of particular relevance under Section 505(b) as to claims 1 to 3 and under Section 505(c) as to claim 4, and indicates the general state of the art under Section 507(c) as to claims 11 and 12:

Category	Citation	Relevant to claim No.
	GB, A 392,415 (JONES) 18 May 1933 (18.05.33)	
X	Fig.1	1-3
Y	page 3, lines 5-7	4
A	Fig.5, support 36	11-12

Section 509

International Search on the Basis of a Translation of the International Application

Where the International Searching Authority has carried out the international search on the basis of a translation of the international application transmitted to that Authority under Rule 23.1(b), the international search report shall so indicate.

Section 510

Refund of Search Fee in Case of Withdrawal of International Application

(a) Where the international application is withdrawn or is considered withdrawn before the International Searching Authority has started the international search, that Authority shall, subject to paragraphs (b) and (c), refund the search fee to the applicant.

(b) If the refund referred to in paragraph (a) is not compatible with the national law of the national Office acting as International Searching Authority and as long as it continues to be not compatible with that law, the International Searching Authority may abstain from refunding the search fee.

(c) The International Searching Authority may, before making a refund under paragraph (a), first invite the applicant to submit a request for the refund.

Section 511

Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1

(a) Where the International Searching Authority authorizes a rectification under Rule 91.1, it shall:

(i) indelibly mark, in the upper right-hand corner of each replacement sheet, the international

⁹See Chapter VI, paragraph 5.2 of the PCT Search Guidelines.

application number and the date on which that sheet was received;

(ii) indelibly mark, in the middle of the bottom margin of each replacement sheet, the words "RECTIFIED SHEET (RULE 91)" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application as well as an indication of the International Searching Authority as provided for in Section 107(b);

(iii) indelibly mark on the letter containing the rectification or accompanying any replacement sheet the date on which that letter was received;

(iv) keep in its files a copy of the letter containing the rectification or, when the rectification is contained in a replacement sheet, the replaced sheet, a copy of the letter accompanying the replacement sheet, and a copy of the replacement sheet;

(v) promptly transmit any letter and any replacement sheet to the International Bureau and a copy thereof to the receiving Office.

(b) Where the International Searching Authority refuses to authorize a rectification under Rule 91.1, it shall proceed as indicated under paragraph (a)(i), (iii), and (iv) and promptly transmit any letter and any proposed replacement sheet to the International Bureau.

Section 512

Notifications Concerning Representation

Where a power of attorney or a document containing the revocation or renunciation of an appointment is submitted to the International Searching Authority, that Authority shall immediately notify the International Bureau by sending it a copy of the power of attorney or document and request the International Bureau to record a change in the indications concerning the agent or common representative under Rule 92^{bis}.1 (a)(ii).

Section 513

Sequence Listings

(a) Where the International Searching Authority receives a correction of a defect under Rule 13^{ter}.1(d), it shall:

(i) indelibly mark, in the upper right-hand corner of each replacement sheet, the international application number and the date on which that sheet was received;

(ii) indelibly mark, in the middle of the bottom margin of each replacement sheet, the words "SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 13^{ter}.1(d))" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application;

(iii) indelibly mark on the letter containing the correction, or accompanying any replacement sheet, the date on which that letter was received;

(iv) keep in its files a copy of the letter containing the correction or, when the correction is contained in a replacement sheet, the replaced sheet, a copy of the letter accompanying the replacement sheet, and a copy of the replacement sheet;

(v) promptly transmit any letter and any replacement sheet to the International Bureau, and a copy thereof to the receiving Office.

(b) Where the international search report is based on a sequence listing that was not contained in the international application as filed but was furnished subsequently to the International Searching Authority, the international search report shall so indicate.

(c) Where a meaningful international search cannot be carried out because a sequence listing is not available to the International Searching Authority in the required form, that Authority shall so state in the international search report.

(d) The International Searching Authority shall indelibly mark, in the upper right-hand corner of the first sheet of any sequence listing in printed form which was not contained in the international application as filed but was furnished subsequently to that Authority, the words "SUBSEQUENTLY FURNISHED SEQUENCE LISTING" or their equivalent in the language of publication of the international application.

(e) The International Searching Authority shall keep in its files:

(i) any sequence listing in printed form which was not contained in the international application as filed but was furnished subsequently to that Authority; and

(ii) any sequence listing in computer readable form.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 514

Authorized Officer

The officer of the International Searching Authority responsible for the international search report, as referred to in Rule 43.8, means the person who actually performed the search work and prepared the search report or another person who was responsible for supervising the search.

Section 515

**Amendment of Established Abstract in
Response to Applicant's Comments**

The International Searching Authority shall inform the applicant and the International Bureau of any

amendments made under Rule 38.2(b) to an abstract established by it under Rule 38.2(a).

Section 516

**Notification to Applicant of Submission of
Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months
from the Priority Date**

Where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date to an International Searching Authority, that Authority shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the fact that the time limit under Article 39(1)(a) does not apply, and shall proceed under Rule 59.3.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

1. The purpose of this manual is to provide a guide for the Patent Examiner in the examination of patent applications. It is intended to be used in conjunction with the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, 1997 Edition, and the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, 1999 Edition.

2. The manual is organized into chapters, sections, and paragraphs. The chapters are: Chapter 1, Introduction; Chapter 2, Filing of Applications; Chapter 3, Examination of Applications; Chapter 4, Prosecution of Applications; Chapter 5, Appeals; Chapter 6, Reissues; Chapter 7, Patents; Chapter 8, Trademarks; Chapter 9, Design Patents; Chapter 10, Plant Patents; Chapter 11, Utility Patents; Chapter 12, Foreign Applications; Chapter 13, International Applications; Chapter 14, Miscellaneous.

3. The manual is intended to be used by Patent Examiners, Patent Attorneys, and Patent Agents. It is not intended to be used by the public.

4. The manual is subject to change without notice. The Patent Office reserves the right to modify or amend the manual at any time.

5. The manual is published by the Patent Office, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20540.

PART 6

**INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO THE INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY
EXAMINING AUTHORITY**

Section 601

**Notification to Applicant of Submission of
Demand After the Expiration of 19 Months from
the Priority Date**

(a) Where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the fact that the time limit under Article 39(1)(a) does not apply.

(b) Where the demand is submitted after the expiration of 19 months from the priority date to an International Preliminary Examining Authority which is not competent for the international preliminary examination of the international application, that Authority shall promptly notify the applicant accordingly, directing attention to the fact that the time limit under Article 39(1)(a) does not apply, and shall proceed under Rule 59.3.

Section 602

**Processing of Amendments by the International
Preliminary Examining Authority**

(a) The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall:

(i) indelibly mark, in the upper right-hand corner of each replacement sheet submitted under Rule 66.8, the international application number and the date on which that sheet was received;

(ii) indelibly mark, in the middle of the bottom margin of each replacement sheet, the words "AMENDED SHEET" or their equivalent in the language of the demand as well as an indication of the International Preliminary Examining Authority as provided for in Section 107(b);

(iii) keep in its files any replaced sheet, the letter accompanying any replacement sheet, and any superseded replacement sheet or any letter referred to in the last sentence of Rule 66.8(b) as well as a copy of any replacement sheet which is annexed to the international preliminary examination report;

(iv) annex to the copy of the international preliminary examination report which is transmitted to the International Bureau any replacement sheet as provided for under Rule 70.16;

(v) annex to the copy of the international preliminary examination report which is transmitted to the applicant a copy of each replacement sheet as provided for under Rule 70.16.

(b) Section 311(b)(ii) relating to the numbering of replacement sheets shall apply when one or more sheets are added under Rule 66.8.

(c) Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority receives from the applicant a copy of a purported amendment under Article 19 submitted after the time limit set forth in Rule 46.1, the International Preliminary Examining Authority may consider such an amendment as an amendment under Article 34 in which case it shall inform the applicant accordingly.

(d) Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority receives a copy of an amendment under Article 19, paragraphs (a) and (b) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

Section 603

**Transmittal of Protest Against Payment of
Additional Fee and Decision Thereon Where
International Application Is Considered to
Lack Unity of Invention**

The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall transmit to the applicant, preferably at the latest together with the international preliminary examination report, any decision which it has taken under Rule 68.3(c) on the protest of the applicant against payment of an additional fee where the international application is considered to lack unity of invention. At the same time, it shall transmit to the International Bureau a copy of both the protest and the decision thereon, as well as any request by the applicant to forward the texts of both the protest and the decision thereon to the elected Offices.

Section 604

Guidelines for Explanations Contained in the International Preliminary Examination Report

(a) Explanations under Rule 70.8 shall clearly point out to which of the three criteria of novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness) and industrial applicability referred to in Article 35(2), taken separately, any cited document is applicable and shall clearly describe, with reference to the cited documents, the reasons supporting the conclusion that any of the said criteria is or is not satisfied.

(b) Explanations under Article 35(2) shall be concise and preferably in the form of short sentences.

Section 605

File to Be Used for International Preliminary Examination

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority is part of the same national Office or inter-governmental organization as the International Searching Authority, the same file shall serve the purposes of international search and international preliminary examination.

Section 606

Cancellation of Elections

The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall, if the election is in the demand, cancel *ex officio* the election of any State which is not bound by Chapter II of the Treaty, shall enclose that election within square brackets, shall draw a line between the square brackets while still leaving the election legible and shall enter, in the margin, the words "CANCELLED EX OFFICIO BY IPEA" or their equivalent in the language of the demand, and shall notify the applicant accordingly.

Section 606^{bis}

Procedure Where Election of a State Considered Not to Have Been Made

Where under Rule 60.1(d), the election of a State is to be considered as if it had not been made, the Inter-

national Preliminary Examining Authority shall indicate that fact in the demand by enclosing the election of that State within square brackets, drawing a line between the square brackets while still leaving the election legible, and entering in the margin the words "CONSIDERED NOT TO HAVE BEEN MADE" or their equivalent in the language of the demand.

Section 607

Rectifications of Obvious Errors Under Rule 91.1

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority authorizes a rectification of an obvious error under Rule 91.1, Rule 70.16 and Section 602(a) and (b) shall apply *mutatis mutandis*, provided that, where a sheet is marked as indicated in Section 602, the words "RECTIFIED SHEET (RULE 91)" shall be used.

Section 608

Notifications Concerning Representation

Where a power of attorney or a document containing the revocation or renunciation of an appointment is submitted to the International Preliminary Examining Authority, that Authority shall immediately notify the International Bureau by sending it a copy of the power of attorney or document and request the International Bureau to record a change in the indications concerning the agent or common representative under Rule 92^{bis}.1(a)(ii).

Section 609

Withdrawal by Applicant Under Rule 90^{bis}. 1, 90^{bis}. 2, or 90^{bis}. 3

The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall promptly transmit to the International Bureau any notice from the applicant effecting withdrawal of the international application under Rule 90^{bis}.1(b), of a designation under Rule 90^{bis}.2(d), or of a priority claim under Rule 90^{bis}.3(c) which has been filed with it. The International Preliminary Examining Authority shall mark the notice with the date on which it was received.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Section 610

[Deleted]

Section 611

Method of Identification of Documents in the International Preliminary Examination Report

Any document cited in the international preliminary examination report which was not cited in the international search report shall be cited in the same form as required under Section 503 for international search reports. Any document cited in the international preliminary examination report which was previously cited in the international search report may be cited in a shortened form, provided that the reference to the document is unambiguous.

Section 612

Authorized Officer

The officer of the International Preliminary Examining Authority responsible for the international preliminary examination report, as referred to in Rule 70.14, means the person who actually performed the examination work and prepared the international preliminary examination report or another person who was responsible for supervising the examination.

Section 613

Invitation to Submit a Request for Refund of Fees under Rule 57.6 or 58.3

The International Preliminary Examining Authority may, before making a refund under Rule 57.6 or 58.3, first invite the applicant to submit a request for the refund.

Section 614

Evidence of Right to File Demand

Where a demand is considered as not having been made under Rule 61.1(b) by the International Prelimi-

nary Examining Authority because the applicant appeared, on the basis of the indication made in the demand, not to have the right to file a demand with that Authority under Rule 54 but evidence is submitted indicating to the satisfaction of the International Preliminary Examining Authority that in fact, an applicant had, on the date on which the demand was received, the right to file the demand with that Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority shall regard the requirements under Article 31 (2)(a) as having been fulfilled on the date of actual receipt of the demand.

Section 615

Invitation to Pay Fees Before Date on Which They Are Due

If the International Preliminary Examining Authority finds, before the date on which they are due, that the handling fee or the international preliminary examination fee are lacking in whole or in part, it may invite the applicant to pay the missing amounts within the time limit under Rule 57.3 or 58.1(b), as the case may be.

Section 616

International Preliminary Examination on the Basis of a Translation of the International Application

Where the International Preliminary Examining Authority has carried out international preliminary examination on the basis of a translation of the international application furnished to that Authority under Rule 55.2(a) or, in the case referred to in Rule 55.2 (b), transmitted, under Rule 23.1(b), to the national Office or intergovernmental organization of which that Authority is part, the international preliminary examination report shall so indicate.

PART 8

INSTRUCTIONS RELATING TO INTERNATIONAL APPLICATIONS CONTAINING LARGE NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCE LISTINGS

Section 801

Filing of International Applications Containing Sequence Listings

(a) Pursuant to Rules 89^{bis} and 89^{ter}, where an international application contains disclosure of one or more nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listings ("sequence listings"), the receiving Office may, if it is prepared to do so, accept that the sequence listing part of the description, as referred to in Rule 5.2(a), be filed, at the option of the applicant:

(i) only on an electronic medium in the computer readable form referred to in Annex C; or

(ii) both on an electronic medium in that computer readable form and on paper in the written form referred to in Annex C;

provided that the other elements of the international application are filed as otherwise provided for under the Regulations and these Instructions.

(b) Any receiving Office which is prepared to accept the filing in computer readable form of the sequence listing part of international applications under paragraph (a) shall notify the International Bureau accordingly. The notification shall specify the electronic media on which the receiving Office will accept such filings. The International Bureau shall promptly publish any such information in the Gazette.

(c) A receiving Office which has not made a notification under paragraph (b) may nevertheless decide in a particular case to accept an international application the sequence listing part of which is filed with it under paragraph (a).

(d) Where the sequence listing part is filed in computer readable form under paragraph (a) but not on an electronic medium specified by the receiving Office under paragraph (b), that Office shall, under Article 14(1)(a)(v), invite the applicant to furnish to it a replacement sequence listing part on an electronic medium specified under paragraph (b).

(e) Where an international application containing a sequence listing part in computer readable form is filed under paragraph (a) with a receiving Office

which is not prepared, under paragraph (b) or (c), to accept such filings, Section 333(b) and (c) shall apply.

Section 802

Format and Identification Requirements Relating to International Applications Containing Sequence Listings

(a) Paragraphs 40 to 45 of Annex C shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to the sequence listing part of an international application filed in computer readable form. In addition, the label provided for in paragraph 44 of Annex C shall also include, as the case may be, the following indications:

(i) that the sequence listing part is filed under Section 801(a);

(ii) where the sequence listing part in computer readable form is contained on more than one electronic carrier, the numbering of each such carrier (for example, "DISK 1/3," "DISK 2/3," "DISK 3/3");

(iii) where more than one copy of the sequence listing part in computer readable form has been filed, the numbering of each copy (for example, "COPY 1," "COPY 2," "COPY 3").

(b) Where any correction under Rule 26.3, any rectification of an obvious error under Rule 91, or any amendment under Article 34 is submitted in respect of the sequence listing part of an international application filed, under Section 801(a)(i) or (ii), in computer readable form, a replacement sequence listing part in computer readable form containing the entire sequence listing part with the relevant correction, rectification or amendment shall be furnished and the label referred to in paragraph (a) shall be marked accordingly (for example, "SUBMITTED FOR CORRECTION," "SUBMITTED FOR RECTIFICATION," "SUBMITTED FOR AMENDMENT"). Where the sequence listing part was filed both in computer readable form and in written form under Section 801(a)(ii), replacement sheets containing the correction, rectification or amendment in question shall also be submitted in written form.

Section 803

Calculation of Basic Fee for International Applications Containing Sequence Listings

Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed in electronic form under Section 801(a), the basic fee payable in respect of that application shall comprise the following two components:

(i) a basic component calculated as provided in the Schedule of Fees in respect of all pages filed on paper (that is, all pages of the request, description (excluding the sequence listing part if also filed on paper), claims, abstract and drawings), and

(ii) an additional component, in respect of the sequence listing part, equal to 400 times the fee per sheet as referred to in item 1(b) of the Schedule of Fees, regardless of the actual length of the sequence listing part filed in computer readable form and regardless of the fact that the sequence listing part may have been filed both in written form and in computer readable form.

Section 804

Preparation, Identification and Transmittal of Copies of International Applications Containing Sequence Listings

(a) Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed only in computer readable form under Section 801(a)(i), the record copy for the purposes of Article 12 shall consist of those elements of the international application filed on paper together with the sequence listing part filed in computer readable form.

(b) Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed both in computer readable form and in written form under Section 801(a)(ii), the record copy for the purposes of Article 12 shall consist of all the elements of the international application filed on paper, including the sequence listing part in written form.

(c) Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed in computer readable form under Section 801(a)(i) or (ii) in less than the number of copies required for the purposes of this Section, the receiving Office shall either:

(i) promptly prepare any additional copies required, in which case it shall have the right to fix a

fee for performing that task and to collect such fee from the applicant; or

(ii) invite the applicant to promptly furnish the additional number of copies required, accompanied by a statement that the sequence listing part in computer readable form contained in those copies is identical to the sequence listing part in computer readable form as filed;

provided that, where that sequence listing part was also filed in written form under Section 801(a)(ii), the receiving Office shall not, notwithstanding Rule 11.1(b), require the applicant to file additional copies of the sequence listing part in written form.

(d) Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed under Section 801(a)(i), the receiving Office shall, in addition to proceeding under Section 305 with respect to the parts of the international application filed on paper:

(i) mark the words "RECORD COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on the original electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and transmit that part of the record copy to the International Bureau together with the paper part of the record copy;

(ii) mark the words "SEARCH COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on one additional copy of the electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and transmit that part of the search copy to the International Searching Authority, for the purposes of Rule 13^{ter}.1, together with the paper part of the search copy;

(iii) mark the words "HOME COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on the other such copy of the electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and keep that part of the home copy in its files together with the paper part of the home copy.

(e) Where the sequence listing part of an international application is filed under Section 801(a)(ii), the receiving Office shall, in addition to proceeding under Section 305 with respect to the parts of the international application filed on paper:

(i) mark the words "RECORD COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" in the upper left-hand corner of the first page of the sequence listing part in written form and transmit that part of the record copy to the International Bureau together with the paper

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

part of the record copy; it shall also mark the words "COPY FOR INTERNATIONAL BUREAU—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on one copy of the electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and transmit that copy with the record copy;

(ii) mark the words "SEARCH COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on one additional copy of the electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and transmit that part of the search copy to the International Searching Authority, for the purposes of Rule 13^{ter}.1, together with the paper part of the search copy;

(iii) mark the words "HOME COPY—SEQUENCE LISTING PART" on the other such copy of the electronic medium containing the sequence listing part in computer readable form and keep that part of the home copy in its files together with the paper part of the home copy.

(f) The receiving Office may, when marking the copies referred to in paragraphs (d) and (e), use, instead of the words referred to in those paragraphs, the equivalent of those words in the language of publication of the international application.

Section 805

Publication and Communication of International Applications Containing Sequence Listings; Copies; Priority Documents

(a) Notwithstanding Section 406, an international application containing a sequence listing part

may be published under Article 21, in whole or in part, in electronic form as determined by the Director General.

(b) Paragraph (a) shall apply *mutatis mutandis* in relation to:

(i) the communication of an international application under Article 20;

(ii) the furnishing of copies of an international application under Rules 87 and 94.1;

(iii) the furnishing under Rule 17.1, as a priority document, of a copy of an international application containing a sequence listing part filed under Section 801(a);

(iv) the furnishing under Rules 17.2 and 66.7 of copies of a priority document.

Section 806

Sequence Listings for Designated Office

Where the sequence listing part of an international application was filed only in computer readable form under Section 801(a)(i), any designated Office which does not accept the filing of sequence listings in computer readable form may require that the applicant furnish to it, for the purposes of the national phase, a copy of such sequence listing part on paper in written form complying with Annex C and accompanied by a statement that the sequence listing part in written form is identical to the sequence listing part in computer readable form.

[Annexes follow]

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

The Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP) is a comprehensive guide for patent examiners and applicants. It provides detailed instructions on the procedures for examining patent applications, including the requirements for patentability, the process of prior art searches, and the criteria for granting patents. The MPEP is published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) and is updated periodically to reflect changes in patent law and practice.

The MPEP is organized into several sections, each covering a different aspect of the patent examining process. The sections include:

- Section 1: General Principles and Procedures
- Section 2: Patentability Requirements
- Section 3: Prior Art Searches
- Section 4: Examination Procedures
- Section 5: Appeals and Revisions
- Section 6: Patent Grant and Issuance

The MPEP is a valuable resource for patent examiners, applicants, and the public. It provides a clear and concise explanation of the patent examining process, and is essential for anyone involved in the patent system.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

ANNEX A

FORMS

[This Annex, which is not reproduced here, contains Forms for use by applicants and by the International Authorities, including those referred to in Section 102 of the Administrative Instructions. It consists of five Parts, which are available separately from WIPO, as follows:

Part I: Forms Relating to the Receiving Office (document PCT/FORMS/RO/1);

Part II: Forms Relating to the International Searching Authority (document PCT/FORMS/ISA/1);

Part III: Forms Relating to the International Bureau (document PCT/FORMS/IB/1);

Part IV: Forms Relating to the International Preliminary Examining Authority (document PCT/FORMS/IPEA/1);

Part V: Forms for Use by the Applicant (document PCT/FORMS/APPL/1).]

[Annex B follows]

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

ANNEX B

UNITY OF INVENTION

PART 1

INSTRUCTIONS CONCERNING UNITY OF INVENTION

(a) **Unity of Invention.** Rule 13.1 deals with the requirement of unity of invention and states the principle that an international application should relate to only one invention or, if there is more than one invention, that the inclusion of those inventions in one international application is only permitted if all inventions are so linked as to form a single general inventive concept.

(b) **Technical Relationship.** Rule 13.2 defines the method for determining whether the requirement of unity of invention is satisfied in respect of a group of inventions claimed in an international application. Unity of invention exists only when there is a technical relationship among the claimed inventions involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features. The expression "special technical features" is defined in Rule 13.2 as meaning those technical features that define a contribution which each of the inventions, considered as a whole, makes over the prior art. The determination is made on the contents of the claims as interpreted in light of the description and drawings (if any).

(c) **Independent and Dependent Claims.** Unity of invention has to be considered in the first place only in relation to the independent claims in an international application and not the dependent claims. By "dependent" claim is meant a claim which contains all the features of another claim and is in the same category of claim as that other claim (the expression "category of claim" referring to the classification of claims according to the subject matter of the invention claimed for example, product, process, use or apparatus or means, etc.).

(i) If the independent claims avoid the prior art and satisfy the requirement of unity of invention, no problem of lack of unity arises in respect of any claims that depend on the independent claims. In particular, it does not matter if a dependent claim itself contains a further invention. Equally, no problem arises in the case of a genus/species situation where the genus claim avoids the prior art. Moreover, no

problem arises in the case of a combination/subcombination situation where the subcombination claim avoids the prior art and the combination claim includes all the features of the subcombination.

(ii) If, however, an independent claim does not avoid the prior art, then the question whether there is still an inventive link between all the claims dependent on that claim needs to be carefully considered. If there is no link remaining, an objection of lack of unity *a posteriori* (that is, arising only after assessment of the prior art) may be raised. Similar considerations apply in the case of a genus/species or combination/subcombination situation.

(iii) This method for determining whether unity of invention exists is intended to be applied even before the commencement of the international search. Where a search of the prior art is made, an initial determination of unity of invention, based on the assumption that the claims avoid the prior art, may be reconsidered on the basis of the results of the search of the prior art.

(d) **Illustrations of Particular Situations.** There are three particular situations for which the method for determining unity of invention contained in Rule 13.2 is explained in greater detail:

(i) combinations of different categories of claims;

(ii) so-called "Markush practice"; and

(iii) intermediate and final products.

Principles for the interpretation of the method contained in Rule 13.2, in the context of each of those situations are set out below. It is understood that the principles set out below are, in all instances, interpretations of and not exceptions to the requirements of Rule 13.2.

Examples to assist in understanding the interpretation on the three areas of special concern referred to in the preceding paragraph are set out below.

(e) **Combinations of Different Categories of Claims.** The method for determining unity of invention under Rule 13 shall be construed as permitting, in

particular, the inclusion of any one of the following combinations of claims of different categories in the same international application:

(i) in addition to an independent claim for a given product, an independent claim for a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and an independent claim for a use of the said product, or

(ii) in addition to an independent claim for a given process, an independent claim for an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process, or

(iii) in addition to an independent claim for a given product, an independent claim for a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product and an independent claim for an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process, it being understood that a process is specially adapted for the manufacture of a product if it inherently results in the product and that an apparatus or means is specifically designed for carrying out a process if the contribution over the prior art of the apparatus or means corresponds to the contribution the process makes over the prior art.

Thus, a process shall be considered to be specially adapted for the manufacture of a product if the claimed process inherently results in the claimed product with the technical relationship being present between the claimed product and claimed process. The words "specially adapted" are not intended to imply that the product could not also be manufactured by a different process.

Also an apparatus or means shall be considered to be "specifically designed for carrying out" a claimed process if the contribution over the prior art of the apparatus or means corresponds to the contribution the process makes over the prior art. Consequently, it would not be sufficient that the apparatus or means is merely capable of being used in carrying out the claimed process. However, the expression "specifically designed" does not imply that the apparatus or means could not be used for carrying out another process, nor that the process could not be carried out using an alternative apparatus or means.

(f) **"Markush Practice."** The situation involving the so-called "Markush practice" wherein a single claim defines alternatives (chemical or non-chemical)

is also governed by Rule 13.2. In this special situation, the requirement of a technical interrelationship and the same or corresponding special technical features as defined in Rule 13.2, shall be considered to be met when the alternatives are of a similar nature.

(i) When the Markush grouping is for alternatives of chemical compounds, they shall be regarded as being of a similar nature where the following criteria are fulfilled:

(A) all alternatives have a common property or activity, and

(B)(1) a common structure is present, i.e., a significant structural element is shared by all of the alternatives, or

(B)(2) in cases where the common structure cannot be the unifying criteria, all alternatives belong to a recognized class of chemical compounds in the art to which the invention pertains.

(ii) In paragraph (f)(i)(B)(1), above, the words "significant structural element is shared by all of the alternatives" refer to cases where the compounds share a common chemical structure which occupies a large portion of their structures, or in case the compounds have in common only a small portion of their structures, the commonly shared structure constitutes a structurally distinctive portion in view of existing prior art. The structural element may be a single component or a combination of individual components linked together.

(iii) In paragraph (f)(i)(B)(2), above, the words "recognized class of chemical compounds" mean that there is an expectation from the knowledge in the art that members of the class will behave in the same way in the context of the claimed invention. In other words, each member could be substituted one for the other, with the expectation that the same intended result would be achieved.

(iv) The fact that the alternatives of a Markush grouping can be differently classified shall not, taken alone, be considered to be justification for a finding of a lack of unity of invention.

(v) When dealing with alternatives, if it can be shown that at least one Markush alternative is not novel over the prior art, the question of unity of invention shall be reconsidered by the examiner. Reconsideration does not necessarily imply that an objection of lack of unity shall be raised.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

(g) **Intermediate and Final Products.** The situation involving intermediate and final products is also governed by Rule 13.2.

(i) The term "intermediate" is intended to mean intermediate or starting products. Such products have the ability to be used to produce final products through a physical or chemical change in which the intermediate loses its identity.

(ii) Unity of invention shall be considered to be present in the context of intermediate and final products where the following two conditions are fulfilled:

(A) the intermediate and final products have the same essential structural element, in that:

(1) the basic chemical structures of the intermediate and the final products are the same, or

(2) the chemical structures of the two products are technically closely interrelated, the intermediate incorporating an essential structural element into the final product, and

(B) the intermediate and final products are technically interrelated, this meaning that the final product is manufactured directly from the intermediate or is separated from it by a small number of intermediates all containing the same essential structural element.

(iii) Unity of invention may also be considered to be present between intermediate and final products of which the structures are not known—for example, as between an intermediate having a known structure and a final product the structure of which is not known, or as between an intermediate of unknown structure and a final product of unknown structure. In order to satisfy unity in such cases, there shall be sufficient evidence to lead one to conclude that the intermediate and final products are technically closely interrelated as, for example, when the intermediate contains the same essential element as the final product or incorporates an essential element into the final product.

(iv) It is possible to accept in a single international application different intermediate products used in different processes for the preparation of the final product, provided that they have the same essential structural element.

(v) The intermediate and final products shall not be separated, in the process leading from one to the other, by an intermediate which is not new.

(vi) If the same international application claims different intermediates for different structural parts of the final product, unity shall not be regarded as being present between the intermediates.

(vii) If the intermediate and final products are families of compounds, each intermediate compound shall correspond to a compound claimed in the family of the final products. However, some of the final products may have no corresponding compound in the family of the intermediate products so that the two families need not be absolutely congruent.

(h) As long as unity of invention can be recognized applying the above interpretations, the fact that, besides the ability to be used to produce final products, the intermediates also exhibit other possible effects or activities shall not affect the decision on unity of invention.

(i) Rule 13.3 requires that the determination of the existence of unity of invention be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

(j) Rule 13.3 is not intended to constitute an encouragement to the use of alternatives within a single claim, but is intended to clarify that the criterion for the determination of unity of invention (namely, the method contained in Rule 13.2) remains the same regardless of the form of claim used.

(k) Rule 13.3 does not prevent an International Searching or Preliminary Examining Authority or an Office from objecting to alternatives being contained within a single claim on the basis of considerations such as clarity, the conciseness of claims or the claims fee system applicable in that Authority or Office.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

The Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP) is a comprehensive guide for patent examiners and applicants. It provides detailed instructions on the patent process, including the examination of patent applications, the granting of patents, and the enforcement of patent rights. The MPEP is published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) and is updated regularly to reflect changes in patent law and practice.

The MPEP is organized into several sections, each covering a different aspect of the patent process. The sections include:

- 1. Introduction to the Patent Process
- 2. Filing a Patent Application
- 3. Examination of a Patent Application
- 4. Granting a Patent
- 5. Enforcement of Patent Rights
- 6. International Patent Cooperation
- 7. Patent Law and Practice

The MPEP is a valuable resource for patent examiners, applicants, and the public. It provides a clear and concise explanation of the patent process, and it is essential reading for anyone involved in the patent system.

[ANNEX B, CONTINUED]

PART 2

EXAMPLES CONCERNING UNITY OF INVENTION

The application of the principles of unity of invention is illustrated by the following examples for guidance in particular cases.

I. CLAIMS IN DIFFERENT CATEGORIES

Example 1

Claim 1: A method of manufacturing chemical substance X.

Claim 2: Substance X.

Claim 3: The use of substance X as an insecticide.

Unity exists between claims 1, 2 and 3. The special technical feature common to all the claims is substance X.

Example 2

Claim 1: A process of manufacture comprising steps A and B.

Claim 2: Apparatus specifically designed for carrying out step A.

Claim 3: Apparatus specifically designed for carrying out step B.

Unity exists between claims 1 and 2 or between claims 1 and 3. There is no unity between claims 2 and 3 since there exists no common special technical feature between the two claims.

Example 3

Claim 1: A process for painting an article in which the paint contains a new rust inhibiting substance X including the steps of atomizing the paint using compressed air, electrostatically charging the atomized paint using a novel electrode arrangement A and directing the paint to the article.

Claim 2: A paint containing substance X.

Claim 3: An apparatus including electrode arrangement A.

Unity exists between claims 1 and 2 where the common special technical feature is the paint containing substance X or between claims 1 and 3 where the common special technical feature is the electrode arrangement A.

However, unity is lacking between claims 2 and 3 since there exists no common special technical feature between them.

Example 4

Claim 1: Use of a family of compounds X as insecticides.

Claim 2: Compound X₁ belonging to family X.

Provided X₁ has the insecticidal activity and the special technical feature in claim 1 is the insecticidal use, unity is present.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Example 5

- Claim 1: A process for treating textiles comprising spraying the material with a particular coating composition under special conditions (e.g., as to temperature, irradiation).
- Claim 2: A textile material coated according to the process of claim 1.
- Claim 3: A spraying machine for use in the process of claim 1 and characterized by a new nozzle arrangement providing a better distribution of the composition being sprayed.

The process according to claim 1 imparts unexpected properties to the product of claim 2.

The special technical feature in claim 1 is the use of special process conditions corresponding to what is made necessary by the choice of the particular coating. Unity exists between claims 1 and 2.

The spraying machine in claim 3 does not correspond to the above identified special technical feature. Unity does not exist between claim 3 and claims 1 and 2.

Example 6

- Claim 1: A fuel burner with tangential fuel inlets into a mixing chamber.
- Claim 2: A process for making a fuel burner including the step of forming tangential fuel inlets into a mixing chamber.
- Claim 3: A process for making a fuel burner including casting step A.
- Claim 4: An apparatus for carrying out a process for making a fuel burner including feature X resulting in the formation of tangential fuel inlets.
- Claim 5: An apparatus for carrying out a process for making a fuel burner including a protective housing B.
- Claim 6: A process of manufacturing carbon black including the step of tangentially introducing fuel into a mixing chamber of a fuel burner.

Unity exists between claims 1, 2, 4, and 6. The special technical feature common to all the claims is the tangential fuel inlets. Claims 3 and 5 lack unity with claims 1, 2, 4, and 6 since claims 3 and 5 do not include the same or corresponding special technical feature as set forth in claims 1, 2, 4, and 6. Claims 3 and 5 would also lack unity with one another.

Example 7

- Claim 1: A high corrosion resistant and high strength ferritic stainless steel strip consisting essentially of, in percent by weight: Ni=2.0-5.0; Cr=15-19; Mo=1-2; and the balance Fe having a thickness of between 0.5 and 2.0 mm and a 0.2% yield strength in excess of 50 kg/mm squared.
- Claim 2: A method of producing a high corrosion resistant and high strength ferritic stainless steel strip consisting essentially of, in percent by weight: Ni=2.0-5.0; Cr=15-19; Mo=1-2; and the balance Fe, comprising the steps of: hot rolling to a thickness between 2.0 and 5.0 mm; annealing the hot rolled strip at 800-1000°C under substantially no oxidizing conditions; cold rolling the strip to a thickness of between 0.5 and 2.0 mm; and final annealing the cold rolled strip at between 1120 and 1200°C for a period of 2-5 minutes.

Unity exists between product claim 1 and process claim 2. The special technical feature in the product claim is the 0.2% yield strength in excess of 50 kg/mm squared. The process steps in claim 2 inherently produce a ferritic stainless steel strip with a 0.2% yield strength in excess of 50 kg/mm squared. Even if this feature is

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

not apparent from the wording of claim 2, it is clearly disclosed in the description. Therefore said process steps are the special technical feature which correspond to the limitation in the product claim directed to the same ferritic stainless steel with the claimed strength characteristics.

II. CLAIMS IN THE SAME CATEGORY

Example 8

Claim 1: Plug characterized by feature A.

Claim 2: Socket characterized by corresponding feature A.

Feature A is a special technical feature which is included in both claims 1 and 2 and therefore unity is present.

Example 9

Claim 1: Transmitter provided with time axis expander for video signals.

Claim 2: Receiver provided with time axis compressor for video signals received.

Claim 3: Transmission equipment for video signals comprising a transmitter provided with time axis expander for video signals and a receiver provided with time axis compressor for video signals received.

The special technical features are in claim 1 the time axis expander, and in claim 2 the time axis compressor, which are corresponding technical features. Unity exists between claims 1 and 2. Claim 3 includes both special technical features and has unity with claims 1 and 2. The requirement for unity would still be met in the absence of the combination claim (claim 3).

Example 10

Claim 1: Conveyor belt with feature A.

Claim 2: Conveyor belt with feature B.

Claim 3: Conveyor belt with features A + B.

Feature A is a special technical feature and feature B is another unrelated special technical feature. Unity exists between claims 1 and 3 or between claims 2 and 3, but not between claims 1 and 2.

Example 11

Claim 1: Control circuit A for a d.c. motor.

Claim 2: Control circuit B for a d.c. motor.

Claim 3: An apparatus including a d.c. motor with control circuit A.

Claim 4: An apparatus including a d.c. motor with control circuit B.

Control circuit A is a special technical feature and control circuit B is another unrelated special technical feature. Unity exists between claims 1 and 3 or between claims 2 and 4, but not between claims 1 and 2 or 3 and 4.

Example 12

Claim 1: A display with features A + B.

Claim 2: A display according to claim 1 with additional feature C.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Claim 3: A display with features A + B with additional feature D.

Unity exists between claims 1, 2, and 3. The special technical feature common to all the claims is features A + B.

Example 13

Claim 1: Filament A for a lamp.

Claim 2: Lamp B having filament A.

Claim 3: Searchlight provided with lamp B having filament A and a swivel arrangement C.

Unity exists between claims 1, 2, and 3. The special technical feature common to all the claims is the filament A.

Example 14

Claim 1: A marking device for marking animals, comprising a disc-shaped element with a stem extending normally therefrom, the tip of which is designed to be driven through the skin of the animal to be marked, and a securing disk element to be fastened to the protruding tip of the stem on the other side of skin.

Claim 2: An apparatus for applying the marking device of claim 1, constructed as a pneumatically actuated gun for driving the stem of the disc-shaped element through the skin, and provided with a supporting surface adapted for taking up a securing disc element, to be placed at the other side of the body portion in question of the animal to be marked.

The special technical feature in claim 1 is the marking device having a disc-shaped element with a stem and a securing disc element to be fastened to the tip of the stem. The corresponding special technical feature in claim 2 is the pneumatically actuated gun for driving the marking device and having a supporting surface for the securing disc element. Unity exists between claims 1 and 2.

Example 15

Claim 1: Compound A.

Claim 2: An insecticide composition comprising compound A and a carrier.

Unity exists between claims 1 and 2. The special technical feature common to all the claims is compound A.

Example 16

Claim 1: An insecticide composition comprising compound A (consisting of a 1, a 2...) and a carrier.

Claim 2: Compound a₁.

All compounds A are not claimed in the product claim 2 for reasons of lack of novelty of some of them for instance. There is nevertheless still unity between the subject matter of claims 1 and 2 provided a 1 has the insecticidal activity which is also the special technical feature for compound A in claim 1.

Example 17

Claim 1: Protein X

Claim 2: DNA sequence encoding protein X.

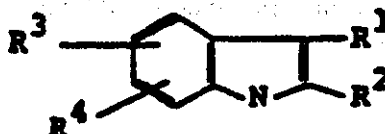
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Expression of the DNA sequence in a host results in the production of a protein which is determined by the DNA sequence. The protein and the DNA sequence exhibit corresponding special technical features. Unity between claims 1 and 2 is accepted.

III. MARKUSH PRACTICE

Example 18— common structure:

Claim 1: A compound of the formula:

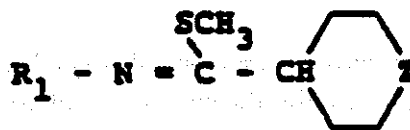


wherein R^1 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, triazinyl, alkylthio, alkoxy, and methyl; R^2 - R^4 are methyl, benzyl, or phenyl. The compounds are useful as pharmaceuticals for the purpose of enhancing the capacity of the blood to absorb oxygen.

In this case the indolyl moiety is the significant structural element which is shared by all of the alternatives. Since all the claimed compounds are alleged to possess the same utility, unity is present.

Example 19— common structure:

Claim 1: A compound of the formula:

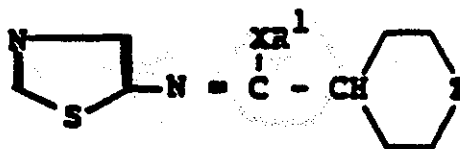


wherein R_1 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, triazinyl, alkylthio, alkoxy, and methyl; Z is selected from the group consisting of oxygen (O), sulfur (S), imino (NH), and methylene ($-CH_2-$). The compounds are alleged to be useful as pharmaceuticals for relieving lower back pain.

In this particular case the iminothioether group $-N=C-SCH_3$ linked to a six atom ring is the significant structural element which is shared by all the alternatives. Thus, since all the claimed compounds are alleged to possess the same use, unity would be present. A six membered heterocyclic ring would not have been of sufficient similarity to allow a Markush grouping exhibiting unity, absent some teaching of equivalence in the prior art.

Example 20— common structure

Claim 1: A compound of the formula:

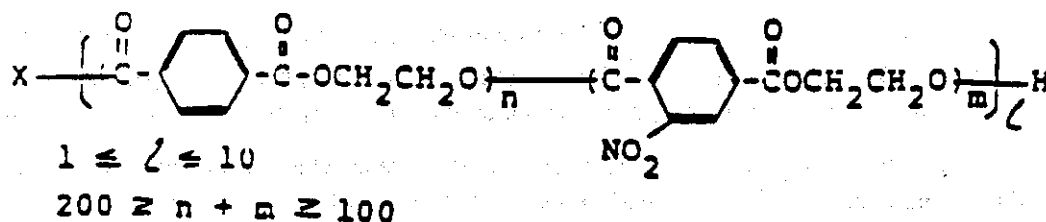


wherein R¹ is methyl or phenyl, X and Z are selected from oxygen (O) and sulfur (S).

The compounds are useful as pharmaceuticals and contain the 1,3-thiazolyl substituent which provides greater penetrability of mammalian tissue which fact makes the compounds useful as relievers for headaches and as topical anti-inflammatory agents.

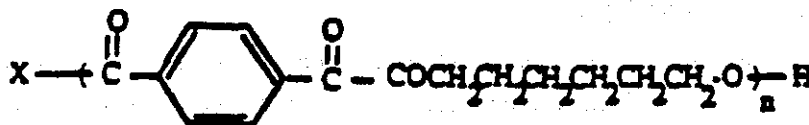
All compounds share a common chemical structure, the thiazole ring and the six atom heterocyclic compound bound to an imino group, which occupy a large portion of their structure. A six membered heterocyclic ring would not have been of sufficient similarity to allow a Markush grouping exhibiting unity, absent some teaching of equivalence in the prior art.

Example 21— common structure:



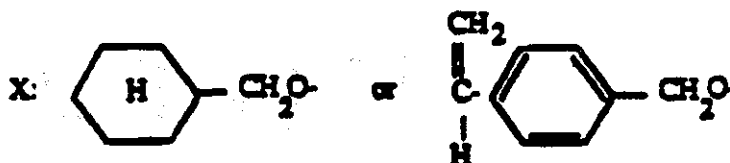
All of the above copolymers have in common a thermal degradation resistance property, due to the reduced number of free COOH radicals by esterification with X of the end COOH radicals which cause thermal degradation. The chemical structures of the alternatives are considered to be technically closely interrelated to one another. A grouping in one claim is therefore allowed.

Example 22— common structure:



(polyhexamethyleneterephthalate)

100 ≥ n ≥ 50



ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

The compound obtained by esterifying the end COOH radical of known polyhexamethyleneterephthalate with $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ - has a thermal degradation resistant property, due to the reduced number of free COOH radicals which cause thermal degradation. In contrast, the compound obtained by esterifying the end COOH radical of known polyhexamethyleneterephthalate with a vinyl compound containing a $\text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ - moiety serves as a raw material for a setting resin when mixed with unsaturated monomer and cured (addition reaction).

All esters covered by the claim do not have a property or activity in common. For example, the product obtained through esterification with the " $\text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}$ " vinyl compound does not have a thermal degradation resistant property. The grouping in a single application is not allowed.

Example 23— No common structure:

Claim 1: A herbicidal composition consisting essentially of an effective amount of the mixture of A 2,4-D(2,4-dichlorophenoxy acetic acid) and B a second herbicide selected from the group consisting of copper sulfate, sodium chlorate, ammonium sulfamate, sodium trichloroacetate, dichloropropionic acid, 3-amino-2,5-dichlorobenzoic acid, diphenamid (an amide), ioxynil (nitrile), dinoseb (phenol), trifluralin (dinitroaniline), EPTC (thiocarbamate), and simazine (triazine) along with an inert carrier or diluent.

The different components under B must be members of a recognized class of compounds. Consequently in the present case a unity objection would be raised because the members of B are not recognized as a class of compounds, but, in fact, represent a plurality of classes which may be identified as follows:

- a) **inorganic salts:**
 - copper sulfate
 - sodium chlorate
 - ammonium sulfamate
- b) **organic salts and carboxylic acids:**
 - sodium trichloroacetate
 - dichloropropionic acid
 - 3-amino-2,5-dichlorobenzoic acid
- c) **amides:**
 - diphenamid
- d) **nitriles:**
 - ioxynil
- e) **phenols:**
 - dinoseb
- f) **amines:**
 - trifluralin

g) **heterocyclic:**

simazine

Example 24

Claim 1: Catalyst for vapor phase oxidation of hydrocarbons, which consists of (X) or (X + a).

In this example (X) oxidizes RCH_3 into RCH_2OH and (X+a) oxidizes RCH_3 further into $RCOOH$.

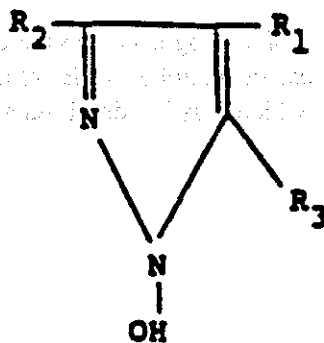
Both catalysts share a common component and a common activity as oxidation catalyst for RCH_3 . With (X+a) the oxidation is more complete and goes until the carboxylic acid is formed but the activity still remains the same.

A Markush grouping is acceptable.

IV. INTERMEDIATE/FINAL PRODUCTS

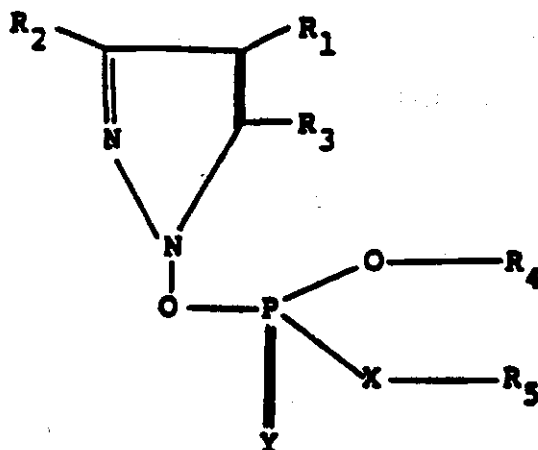
Example 25

Claim 1:



(intermediate)

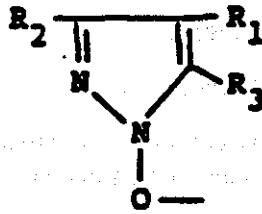
Claim 2:



(final product)

The chemical structures of the intermediate and final product are technically closely interrelated. The essential structural element incorporated into the final product is:

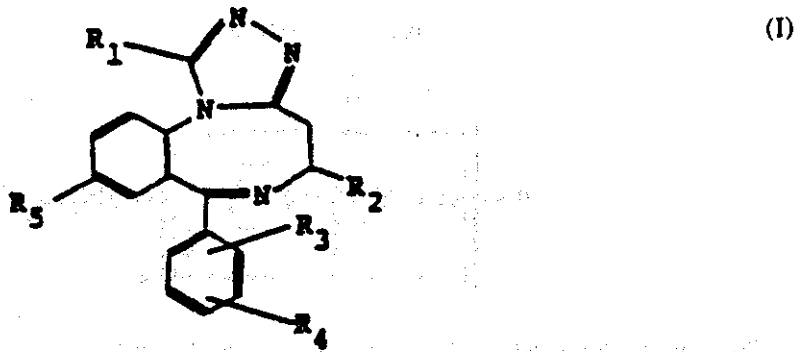
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT



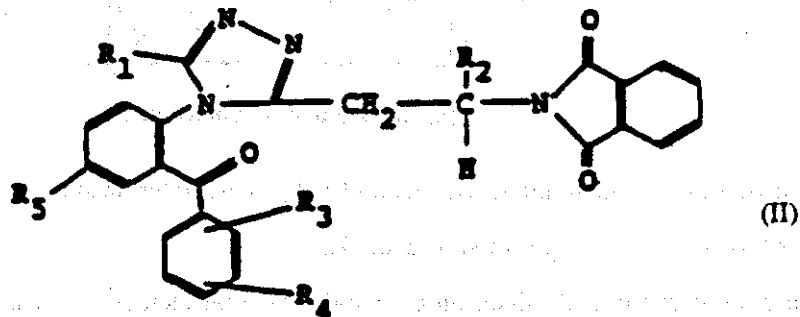
Therefore, unity exists between claims 1 and 2.

Example 26

Claim 1:



Claim 2:



(II) is described as an intermediate to make (I). The closure mechanism is one well known in the art. Though the basic structures of compound (I) (final product) and compound (II) (intermediate) differ considerably, compound (II) is an open ring precursor to compound (I). Both compounds share a common essential structural element which is the linkage comprising the two phenyl rings and the triazole ring. The chemical structures of the two compounds are therefore considered to be technically closely interrelated.

The example therefore satisfies the requirement for unity of invention.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Example 27

Claim 1: Amorphous polymer A (intermediate).

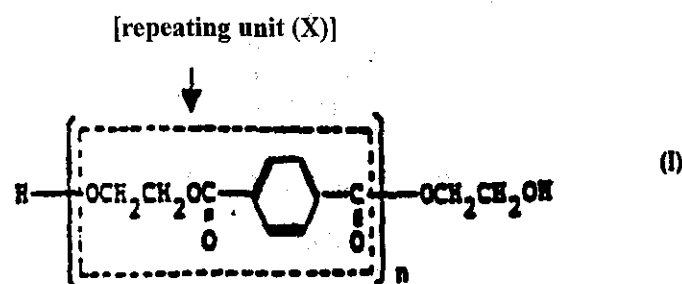
Claim 2: Crystalline polymer A (final product).

In this example a film of the amorphous polymer A is stretched to make it crystalline. Here unity exists because there is an intermediate final product relation in that amorphous polymer A is used as a starting product to prepare crystalline polymer A.

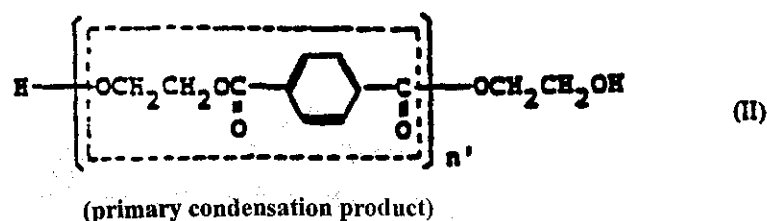
For purposes of further illustration, assume that the polymer A in this example is polyisoprene. Here the intermediate, amorphous polyisoprene, and the final product, crystalline polyisoprene, have the same chemical structure.

Example 28

Claim 1: Polymeric compound useful as fiber material identified by the following general formula:



Claim 2: Compound identified by the following general formula: (useful as intermediate for polymeric compound I)



The two inventions are in an intermediate and final product relationship.

Substance (II) is a raw material for substance (I).

Meanwhile, both compounds share an essential structural element (repeating unit (X)) and are technically closely interrelated. The intermediate and final products therefore satisfy the requirements for unity.

Example 29

Claim 1: Novel compound having structure A (Intermediate).

Claim 2: Product prepared by reacting A with a substance X (Final Product).

Example 30

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Claim 1: Reaction product of A and B (Intermediate).

Claim 2: Product prepared by reacting the reaction product of A and B with substances X and Y (Final Product).

In examples 29 and 30 the chemical structure(s) of the intermediate and/or the final product is not known. In (29) the structure of the product of claim 2 (the final product) is not known. In (30) the structures of the products of claim 1 (the intermediate) and claim 2 (the final product) are unknown. Unity exists if there is evidence which would lead one to conclude that the characteristic of the final product which is the inventive feature in the case is due to the intermediate. For example, the purpose for using the intermediates in (29) or (30) is to modify certain properties of the final product. The evidence may be in the form of test data in the specification showing the effect of the intermediate on the final product. If no such evidence exists then there is no unity on the basis of an intermediate-final product relationship.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]

ANNEX C

STANDARD FOR THE PRESENTATION OF NUCLEOTIDE AND AMINO ACID SEQUENCE LISTINGS IN INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATIONS UNDER THE PCT

Introduction

1. This Standard has been elaborated so as to provide standardization of the presentation of nucleotide and amino acid sequence listings in international patent applications. The Standard is intended to allow the applicant to draw up a single sequence listing which is acceptable to all receiving Offices, International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities for the purposes of the international phase, and to all designated and elected Offices for the purposes of the national phase. It is intended to enhance the accuracy and quality of presentations of nucleotide and amino acid sequences given in international applications, to make for easier presentation and dissemination of sequences for the benefit of applicants, the public and examiners, to facilitate searching of sequence data and to allow the exchange of sequence data in electronic form and the introduction of sequence data onto computerized databases.

Definitions

2. For the purposes of this Standard:

(i) the expression "sequence listing" means a part of the description of the application as filed or a document filed subsequently to the application, which gives a detailed disclosure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and other available information;

(ii) sequences which are included are any unbranched sequences of four or more amino acids or unbranched sequences of ten or more nucleotides. Branched sequences, sequences with fewer than four specifically defined nucleotides or amino acids as well as sequences comprising nucleotides or amino acids other than those listed in Appendix 2, Tables 1, 2, 3 and 4, are specifically excluded from this definition;

(iii) "nucleotides" embrace only those nucleotides that can be represented using the symbols set forth in Appendix 2, Table 1. Modifications, for example, methylated bases, may be described as set forth in Appendix 2, Table 2, but shall not be shown explicitly in the nucleotide sequence;

(iv) "amino acids" are those L-amino acids commonly found in naturally occurring proteins and are listed in Appendix 2, Table 3. Those amino acid sequences containing at least one D-amino acid are not intended to be embraced by this definition. Any amino acid sequence that contains post-translationally modified amino acids may be described as the amino acid sequence that is initially translated using the symbols shown in Appendix 2, Table 3, with the modified positions, for example, hydroxylations or glycosylations, being described as set forth in Appendix 2, Table 4, but these modifications shall not be shown explicitly in the amino acid sequence. Any peptide or protein that can be expressed as a sequence using the symbols in Appendix 2, Table 3, in conjunction with a description elsewhere to describe, for example, abnormal linkages, cross-links (for example, disulfide bridge) and end caps, non-peptidyl bonds, etc., is embraced by this definition;

(v) "sequence identifier" is a unique integer that corresponds to the SEQ ID NO assigned to each sequence in the listing;

(vi) "numeric identifier" is a three-digit number which represents a specific data element;

(vii) "language-neutral vocabulary" is a controlled vocabulary used in the sequence listing that represents scientific terms as prescribed by sequence database providers (including scientific names, qualifiers and their controlled-vocabulary values, the symbols appearing in Appendix 2, Tables 1, 2, 3 and 4, and the feature keys appearing in Appendix 2, Tables 5 and 6;

(viii) "competent Authority" is the International Searching Authority that is to carry out the international search on the international application, or the International Preliminary Examining Authority that is to carry out

the international preliminary examination on the international application, or the designated/elected Office before which the processing of the international application has started.

Sequence Listing

3. The sequence listing as defined in paragraph 2(i) shall, where it is filed together with the application, be placed at the end of the application. This part shall be entitled "Sequence Listing", begin on a new page and preferably have independent page numbering. The sequence listing forms an integral part of the description; it is therefore unnecessary, subject to paragraph 36, to describe the sequences elsewhere in the description.

4. Where the sequence listing as defined in paragraph 2(i) is not contained in the application as filed but is a separate document furnished subsequently to the filing of the application (see paragraph 37), it shall be entitled "Sequence Listing" and shall have independent page numbering. The original numbering of the sequences (see paragraph 5) in the application as filed shall be maintained in the subsequently furnished sequence listing.

5. Each sequence shall be assigned a separate sequence identifier. The sequence identifiers shall begin with 1 and increase sequentially by integers. If no sequence is present for a sequence identifier, the code 000 should appear under numeric identifier <400>, beginning on the next line following the SEQ ID NO. The response for numeric identifier <160> shall include the total number of SEQ ID NOs, whether followed by a sequence or by the code 000.

6. In the description, claims or drawings of the application, the sequences represented in the sequence listing shall be referred to by the sequence identifier and preceded by "SEQ ID NO:".

7. Nucleotide and amino acid sequences should be represented by at least one of the following three possibilities:

- (i) a pure nucleotide sequence;
- (ii) a pure amino acid sequence;
- (iii) a nucleotide sequence together with its corresponding amino acid sequence.

For those sequences disclosed in the format specified in option (iii), above, the amino acid sequence must be disclosed separately in the sequence listing as a pure amino acid sequence with a separate integer sequence identifier.

Nucleotide Sequences

Symbols to Be Used

8. A nucleotide sequence shall be presented only by a single strand, in the 5'-end to 3'-end direction from left to right. The terms 3' and 5' shall not be represented in the sequence.

9. The bases of a nucleotide sequence shall be represented using the one-letter code for nucleotide sequence characters. Only lower case letters in conformity with the list given in Appendix 2, Table 1, shall be used.

10. Modified bases shall be represented as the corresponding unmodified bases or as "n" in the sequence itself if the modified base is one of those listed in Appendix 2, Table 2, and the modification shall be further described in the feature section of the sequence listing, using the codes given in Appendix 2, Table 2. These codes may be used in the description or the feature section of the sequence listing but not in the sequence itself (see also paragraph 32). The symbol "n" is the equivalent of only one unknown or modified nucleotide.

Format to Be Used

11. A nucleotide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 60 bases per line, with a space between each group of 10 bases.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

12. The bases of a nucleotide sequence (including introns) shall be listed in groups of 10 bases, except in the coding parts of the sequence. Leftover bases, fewer than 10 in number at the end of non-coding parts of a sequence, should be grouped together and separated from adjacent groups by a space.

13. The bases of the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be listed as triplets (codons).

14. The enumeration of the nucleotide shall start at the first base of the sequence with number 1. It shall be continuous through the whole sequence in the direction 5' to 3'. It shall be marked in the right margin, next to the line containing the one-letter codes for the bases, and giving the number of the last base of that line. The enumeration method for nucleotide sequences set forth above remains applicable to nucleotide sequences that are circular in configuration, with the exception that the designation of the first nucleotide of the sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

15. A nucleotide sequence that is made up of one or more non-contiguous segments of a larger sequence or of segments from different sequences shall be numbered as a separate sequence, with a separate sequence identifier. A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be numbered as a plurality of separate sequences with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data.

Amino Acid Sequences

Symbols to Be Used

16. The amino acids in a protein or peptide sequence shall be listed in the amino to carboxy direction from left to right. The amino and carboxy groups shall not be represented in the sequence.

17. The amino acids shall be represented using the three-letter code with the first letter as a capital and shall conform to the list given in Appendix 2, Table 3. An amino acid sequence that contains a blank or internal terminator symbols (for example, "Ter" or "*" or ".") may not be represented as a single amino acid sequence, but shall be presented as separate amino acid sequences (see paragraph 22).

18. Modified and unusual amino acids shall be represented as the corresponding unmodified amino acids or as "Xaa" in the sequence itself if the modified amino acid is one of those listed in Appendix 2, Table 4, and the modification shall be further described in the feature section of the sequence listing, using the codes given in Appendix 2, Table 4. These codes may be used in the description or the feature section of the sequence listing but not in the sequence itself (see also paragraph 32). The symbol "Xaa" is the equivalent of only one unknown or modified amino acid.

Format to Be Used

19. A protein or peptide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 amino acids per line, with a space provided between each amino acid.

20. Amino acids corresponding to the codons in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be placed immediately under the corresponding codons. Where a codon is split by an intron, the amino acid symbol should be given below the portion of the codon containing two nucleotides.

21. The enumeration of amino acids shall start at the first amino acid of the sequence, with number 1. Optionally, the amino acids preceding the mature protein, for example pre-sequences, pro-sequences, pre-pro-sequences and signal sequences, when present, may have negative numbers, counting backwards starting with the amino acid next to number 1. Zero (0) is not used when the numbering of amino acids uses negative numbers to distinguish the mature protein. It shall be marked under the sequence every five amino acids. The enumeration method for amino acid sequences set forth above remains applicable for amino acid sequences that are circular in

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

configuration, with the exception that the designation of the first amino acid of the sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

22. An amino acid sequence that is made up of one or more non-contiguous segments of a larger sequence or of segments from different sequences shall be numbered as a separate sequence, with a separate sequence identifier. A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be numbered as a plurality of separate sequences with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data.

Other Available Information in the Sequence Listing

23. The order of the items of information in the sequence listings shall follow the order in which those items are listed in the list of numeric identifiers of data elements as defined in Appendix 1.

24. Only numeric identifiers of data elements as defined in Appendix 1 shall be used for the presentation of the items of information in the sequence listing. The corresponding numeric identifier descriptions shall not be used. The provided information shall follow immediately after the numeric identifier while only those numeric identifiers for which information is given need appear on the sequence listing. Two exceptions to this requirement are numeric identifiers <220> and <300>, which serve as headers for "Feature" and "Publication Information," respectively, and are associated with information in numeric identifiers <221> to <223> and <301> to <313>, respectively. When feature and publication information is provided in the sequence listing under those numeric identifiers, numeric identifiers <220> and <300>, respectively, should be included, but left blank. Generally, a blank line shall be inserted between numeric identifiers when the digit in the first or second position of the numeric identifier changes. An exception to this general rule is that no blank line should appear preceding numeric identifier <310>. Additionally, a blank line shall precede any repeated numeric identifier.

Mandatory Data Elements

25. The sequence listing shall include, in addition to and immediately preceding the actual nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence, the following items of information defined in Appendix 1 (mandatory data elements):

<110>	Applicant name
<120>	Title of invention
<160>	Number of SEQ ID NOs
<210>	SEQ ID NO: x
<211>	Length
<212>	Type
<213>	Organism
<400>	Sequence

Where the name of the applicant (numeric identifier <110>) is written in characters other than those of the Latin alphabet, it shall also be indicated in characters of the Latin alphabet either as a mere transliteration or through translation into English.

The data elements, except those under numeric identifiers <110>, <120> and <160>, shall be repeated for each sequence included in the sequence listing. Only the data elements under numeric identifiers <120> and <400>

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

are mandatory if no sequence is present for a sequence identifier (see paragraph 5, above, and SEQ ID NO: 4 in the example depicted in Appendix 3 of this Standard).

26. In addition to the data elements identified in paragraph 25, above, when a sequence listing is filed at the same time as the application to which it pertains or at any time prior to the assignment of an application number, the following data element shall be included in the sequence listing:

<130>	File reference
-------	----------------

27. In addition to the data elements identified in paragraph 25, above, when a sequence listing is filed in response to a request from a competent Authority or at any time following the assignment of an application number, the following data elements shall be included in the sequence listing:

<140>	Current patent application
<141>	Current filing date

28. In addition to the data elements identified in paragraph 25, above, when a sequence listing is filed relating to an application which claims the priority of an earlier application, the following data elements shall be included in the sequence listing:

<150>	Earlier patent application
<151>	Earlier application filing date

29. If "n" or "Xaa" or a modified base or modified/unusual L-amino acid is used in the sequence, the following data elements are mandatory:

<220>	Feature
<221>	Name/key
<222>	Location
<223>	Other information

30. If the organism (numeric identifier <213>) is "Artificial Sequence" or "Unknown," the following data elements are mandatory:

<220>	Feature
<223>	Other information

Optional Data Elements

31. All data elements defined in Appendix 1, not mentioned in paragraphs 25 to 30, above, are optional (optional data elements).

Presentation of Features

32. When features of sequences are presented (that is, numeric identifier <220>), they shall be described by the "feature keys" set out in Appendix 2, Tables 5 and 6.¹⁰

Free Text

33. "Free text" is a wording describing characteristics of the sequence under numeric identifier <223> (Other information) which does not use language-neutral vocabulary as referred to in paragraph 2(vii).

34. The use of free text shall be limited to a few short terms indispensable for the understanding of the sequence. It shall not exceed four lines with a maximum of 65 characters per line for each given data element, when written in English. Any further information shall be included in the main part of the description in the language thereof.

35. Any free text should preferably be in the English language.

36. Where the sequence listing part of the description contains free text, any such free text shall be repeated in the main part of the description in the language thereof. It is recommended that the free text in the language of the main part of the description be put in a specific section of the description called "Sequence Listing Free Text."

Subsequently Furnished Sequence Listing

37. Any sequence listing which is not contained in the application as filed but which is furnished subsequently shall not go beyond the disclosure in the application as filed and shall be accompanied by a statement to that effect. This means that a sequence listing furnished subsequently to the filing of the application shall contain only those sequences that were disclosed in the application as filed.

38. Any sequence listing not contained in the application as filed does not form part of the application. However, the provisions of PCT Rules 13^{ter}, 26.3, and 91 and PCT Article 34 would apply, so that it may be possible, subject to the applicable provisions, for a sequence listing contained in the application as filed to be corrected under PCT Rules 13^{ter} or 26.3, rectified under PCT Rule 91 (in the case of an obvious error), or amended under PCT Article 34, or for a sequence listing to be submitted under PCT Article 34 as an amendment to the application.

Computer Readable Form of the Sequence Listing

39. A copy of the sequence listing shall also be submitted in computer readable form, in addition to the sequence listing as contained in the application, whenever this is required by the competent Authority.

40. Any sequence listing in computer readable form submitted in addition to the written sequence listing shall be identical to the written sequence listing and shall be accompanied by a statement that "the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing."

41. The entire printable copy of the sequence listing shall be contained within one electronic file preferably on a single diskette or any other electronic medium that is acceptable to the competent Authority. The file recorded on the diskette or any other electronic medium that is acceptable to the competent Authority shall be encoded using IBM¹¹ Code Page 437, IBM Code Page 932¹² or a compatible code page. A compatible code page, as would be

¹⁰*Editor's Note:* These tables contain extracts from the DDBJ/EMBL/GenBank Feature Table (nucleotide sequences) and the SWISS PROT Feature Table (amino acid sequences).

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

required for, for example, Japanese, Chinese, Cyrillic, Arabic, Greek or Hebrew characters, is one that assigns the Roman alphabet and numerals to the same hexadecimal positions as do the specified code pages.

42. The computer readable form shall preferably be created by dedicated software such as PatentIn or other custom computer programs; it may be created by any means, as long as the sequence listing on a submitted diskette or any other electronic medium that is acceptable to the competent Authority is readable under a Personal Computer Operating system that is acceptable to the competent Authority.

43. File compression is acceptable when using diskette media, so long as the compressed file is in a self-extracting format that will decompress on a Personal Computer Operating system that is acceptable to the competent Authority.

44. The diskette or any other electronic medium that is acceptable to the competent Authority shall have a label permanently affixed thereto on which has been hand-printed, in block capitals or typed, the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, a reference number, the date on which the data were recorded, the computer operating system and the name of the competent Authority.

45. If the diskette or any other electronic medium that is acceptable to the competent Authority is submitted after the date of filing of an application, the labels shall also include the filing date of the application and the application number.

46. Any correction of the written sequence listing which is submitted under PCT Rules 13^{ter}.1(a)(i) or 26.3, any rectification of an obvious error in the written sequence listing which is submitted under PCT Rule 91, or any amendment which includes a written sequence listing and which is submitted under PCT Article 34, shall be accompanied by a computer readable form of the sequence listing including any such correction, rectification or amendment.

Appendices

Appendix 1: Numeric Identifiers

Appendix 2: Nucleotide and Amino Acid Symbols and Feature Table

Table 1:	List of Nucleotides
Table 2:	List of Modified Nucleotides
Table 3:	List of Amino Acids
Table 4:	List of Modified and Unusual Amino Acids
Table 5:	List of Feature Keys Related to Nucleotide Sequences
Table 6:	List of Feature Keys Related to Protein Sequences

Appendix 3: Specimen Sequence Listing

¹¹*Editor's Note:* IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machine Corporation, United States of America.

¹²*Editor's Note:* The specified code pages are de facto standards for personal computers.

**Annex C, Appendix 1
Numeric Identifiers**

Only numeric identifiers as defined below may be used in sequence listings submitted in applications. The text of the data element headings given below shall not be included in the sequence listings.

Numeric identifiers of mandatory data elements, that is, data elements which must be included in all sequence listings (see paragraph 25 of this Standard: items 110, 120, 160, 210, 211, 212, 213 and 400) and numeric identifiers of data elements which must be included in circumstances specified in this Standard (see paragraphs 26, 27, 28, 29 and 30 of this Standard: items 130, 140, 141, 150 and 151, and 220 to 223) are marked by the symbol "M."

Numeric identifiers of optional data elements (see paragraph 31 of this Standard) are marked by the symbol "O."

Numeric Identifier	Numeric Identifier Description	Mandatory (M) or Optional (O)	Comment
<110>	Applicant name	M	where the name of the applicant is written in characters other than those of the Latin alphabet, the same shall also be indicated in characters of the Latin alphabet either as a mere transliteration or through translation into English
<120>	Title of Invention	M	
<130>	File Reference	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 26 of this Standard	see paragraph 26 of this Standard
<140>	Current patent application	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 27 of this Standard	see paragraph 27 of this Standard; the current patent application shall be identified, in the following order, by the two-letter code indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.3 and the application number (in the format used by the industrial property Office with which the current patent application is filed) or, for an international application, by the international application number
<141>	Current filing date	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 27 of this Standard	see paragraph 27 of this Standard; the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)
<150>	Earlier patent application	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 28 of this Standard	see paragraph 28 of this Standard; the earlier patent application shall be identified, in the following order, by the two-letter code indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.3 and the application number (in the format used by the industrial property Office with which the earlier patent application was filed) or, for an international application, by the international application number

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Numeric Identifier	Numeric Identifier Description	Mandatory (M) or Optional (O)	Comment
<151>	Earlier application filing date	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 28 of this Standard	see paragraph 28 of this Standard; the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)
<160>	Number of SEQ ID NOs	M	
<170>	Software	O	
<210>	Information for SEQ ID NO: x	M	response shall be an integer representing the SEQ ID NO shown
<211>	Length	M	sequence length expressed in number of base pairs or amino acids
<212>	Type	M	type of molecule sequenced in SEQ ID NO: x, either DNA, RNA or PRT; if a nucleotide sequence contains both DNA and RNA fragments, the value shall be "DNA"; in addition, the combined DNA/RNA molecule shall be further described in the <220> to <223> feature section
<213>	Organism	M	Genus Species (that is, scientific name) or "Artificial Sequence" or "Unknown"
<220>	Feature	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 29 and 30 of this Standard	leave blank; see paragraphs 29 and 30 of this Standard; description of points of biological significance in the sequence in SEQ ID NO: x) (may be repeated depending on the number of features indicated)
<221>	Name/key	M in the circumstances specified in paragraph 29 of this Standard	see paragraph 29 of this Standard; only those keys as described in Table 5 or 6 of Appendix 2 shall be used
<222>	Location	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraph 29 of this Standard	see paragraph 29 of this Standard; - from (number of first base/amino acid in the feature) - to (number of last base/amino acid in the feature) - base pairs (numbers refer to positions of base pairs in a nucleotide sequence) - amino acids (numbers refer to positions of amino acid residues in an amino acid sequence) - whether feature is located on the complementary strand to that filed in the sequence listing

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Numeric Identifier	Numeric Identifier Description	Mandatory (M) or Optional (O)	Comment
<223>	Other information:	M, in the circumstances specified in paragraphs 29 and 30 of this Standard	see paragraphs 29 and 30 of this Standard; any other relevant information, using language neutral vocabulary, or free text (preferably in English); any free text is to be repeated in the main part of the description in the language thereof (see paragraph 36 of this Standard); where any modified base or modified/unusual L-amino acid appearing in Appendix 2, Tables 2 and 4, is in the sequence, the symbol associated with that base or amino acid from Appendix 2, Tables 2 and 4, should be used
<300>	Publication information	O	leave blank; repeat section for each relevant publication
<301>	Authors	O	
<302>	Title	O	title of publication
<303>	Journal	O	journal name in which data published
<304>	Volume	O	journal volume in which data published
<305>	Issue	O	journal issue number in which data published
<306>	Pages	O	journal page numbers on which data published
<307>	Date	O	journal date on which data published; if possible, the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)
<308>	Database accession number	O	accession number assigned by database including database name
<309>	Database entry date	O	date of entry in database; the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)
<310>	Document number	O	document number, for patent type citations only; the full document shall specify, in the following order, the two-letter code indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.3, the publication number indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.6, and the kind-of-document code indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.16
<311>	Filing date	O	document filing date, for patent-type citations only; the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Numeric Identifier	Numeric Identifier Description	Mandatory (M) or Optional (O)	Comment
<312>	Publication date	O	document publication date; for patent-type citations only; the date shall be indicated in accordance with WIPO Standard ST.2 (CCYY MM DD)
<313>	Relevant residues in SEQ ID NO: x: from to	O	
<400>	Sequence	M	SEQ ID NO: x should follow the numeric identifier and should appear on the line preceding the sequence (see Appendix 3)

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Annex C, Appendix 2
Nucleotide and Amino Acid Symbols and Feature Table

Table 1: List of Nucleotides

Symbol	Meaning	Origin of designation
a	a	adenine
g	g	guanine
c	c	cytosine
t	t	thymine
u	u	uracil
r	g or a	purine
y	t/u or c	pyrimidine
m	a or c	amino
k	g or t/u	keto
s	g or c	strong interactions 3H-bonds
w	a or t/u	weak interactions 2H-bonds
b	g or c or t/u	not a
d	a or g or t/u	not c
h	a or c or t/u	not g
v	a or g or c	not t, not u
n	a or g or c or t/u, unknown, or other	any

Table 2: List of Modified Nucleotides

Symbol	Meaning
ac4c	4-acetylcytidine
chm5u	5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl)uridine
cm	2'-O-methylcytidine
cmm5s2u	5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine
cmm5u	5-carboxymethylaminomethyluridine
d	dihydrouridine
fm	2'-O-methylpseudouridine
gal q	beta, D-galactosylqueosine

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Symbol	Meaning
gm	2'-O-methylguanosine
i	inosine
i6a	N6-isopentenyladenosine
m1a	1-methyladenosine
m1f	1-methylpseudouridine
m1g	1-methylguanosine
m1i	1-methylinosine
m22g	2,2-dimethylguanosine
m2a	2-methyladenosine
m2g	2-methylguanosine
m3c	3-methylcytidine
m5c	5-methylcytidine
m6a	N6-methyladenosine
m7g	7-methylguanosine
mam5u	5-methylaminomethyluridine
mam5s2u	5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouridine
man q	beta, D-mannosylqueuosine
mcm5s2u	5-methoxycarbonylmethyl-2-thiouridine
mcm5u	5-methoxycarbonylmethyluridine
mo5u	5-methoxyuridine
ms2i6a	2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenosine
ms2t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosyl-2-methylthiopurine-6-yl)carbamoyl)threonine
mt6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosylpurine-6-yl)N-methylcarbamoyl)threonine
mv	uridine-5-oxyacetic acid-methylester
o5u	uridine-5-oxyacetic acid
osyw	wybutoxosine
p	pseudouridine
q	queuosine
s2c	2-thiocytidine
s2t	5-methyl-2-thiouridine

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Symbol	Meaning
s2u	2-thiouridine
s4u	4-thiouridine
t	5-methyluridine
t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosylpurine-6-yl)-carbamoyl)threonine
tm	2'-O-methyl-5-methyluridine
um	2'-O-methyluridine
yw	wybutosine
x	3-(3-amino-3-carboxy-propyl)uridine, (acp3)u

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Table 3: List of Amino Acids

Symbol	Meaning
Ala	Alanine
Cys	Cysteine
Asp	Aspartic Acid
Glu	Glutamic Acid
Phe	Phenylalanine
Gly	Glycine
His	Histidine
Ile	Isoleucine
Lys	Lysine
Leu	Leucine
Met	Methionine
Asn	Asparagine
Pro	Proline
Gln	Glutamine
Arg	Arginine
Ser	Serine
Thr	Threonine
Val	Valine
Trp	Tryptophan
Tyr	Tyrosine
Asx	Asp or Asn
Glx	Glu or Gln
Xaa	unknown or other

Table 4: List of Modified and Unusual Amino Acids

Symbol	Meaning
Aad	2-Aminoadipic acid
bAad	3-Aminoadipic acid
bAla	beta-Alanine, beta-Aminopropionic acid

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Symbol	Meaning
Abu	2-Aminobutyric acid
4Abu	4-Aminobutyric acid, piperidinic acid
Acp	6-Aminocaproic acid
Ahe	2-Aminoheptanoic acid
Aib	2-Aminoisobutyric acid
bAib	3-Aminoisobutyric acid
Apm	2-Aminopimelic acid
Dbu	2,4 Diaminobutyric acid
Des	Desmosine
Dpm	2,2' -Diaminopimelic acid
Dpr	2,3-Diaminopropionic acid
EtGly	N-Ethylglycine
EtAsn	N-Ethylasparagine
Hyl	Hydroxylysine
aHyl	allo-Hydroxylysine
3Hyp	3-Hydroxyproline
4Hyp	4-Hydroxyproline
Ide	Isodesmosine
alle	allo-Isoleucine
MeGly	N-Methylglycine, sarcosine
MeIle	N-Methylisoleucine
MeLys	6-N-Methyllysine
MeVal	N-Methylvaline
Nva	Norvaline
Nle	Norleucine
Orn	Ornithine

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Table 5: List of Feature Keys Related to Nucleotide Sequences

Key	Description
allele	a related individual or strain contains stable, alternative forms of the same gene which differs from the presented sequence at this location (and perhaps others)
attenuator	(1) region of DNA at which regulation of termination of transcription occurs, which controls the expression of some bacterial operons; (2) sequence segment located between the promoter and the first structural gene that causes partial termination of transcription
C_region	constant region of immunoglobulin light and heavy chains, and T-cell receptor alpha, beta, and gamma chains; includes one or more exons depending on the particular chain
CAAT_signal	CAAT box; part of a conserved sequence located about 75 bp up-stream of the start point of eukaryotic transcription units which may be involved in RNA polymerase binding; consensus=GG (C or T) CAATCT
CDS	coding sequence; sequence of nucleotides that corresponds with the sequence of amino acids in a protein (location includes stop codon); feature includes amino acid conceptual translation
conflict	independent determinations of the "same" sequence differ at this site or region
D-loop	displacement loop; a region within mitochondrial DNA in which a short stretch of RNA is paired with one strand of DNA, displacing the original partner DNA strand in this region; also used to describe the displacement of a region of one strand of duplex DNA by a single stranded invader in the reaction catalyzed by RecA protein
D-segment	diversity segment of immunoglobulin heavy chain, and T-cell receptor beta chain
enhancer	a cis-acting sequence that increases the utilization of (some) eukaryotic promoters, and can function in either orientation and in any location (upstream or downstream) relative to the promoter
exon	region of genome that codes for portion of spliced mRNA; may contain 5'UTR all CDSs, and 3'UTR
GC_signal	GC box; a conserved GC-rich region located upstream of the start point of eukaryotic transcription units which may occur in multiple copies or in either orientation; consensus=GGGCGG
gene	region of biological interest identified as a gene and for which a name has been assigned
iDNA	intervening DNA; DNA which is eliminated through any of several kinds of recombination
intron	a segment of DNA that is transcribed, but removed from within the transcript by splicing together the sequences (exons) on either side of it
J_segment	joining segment of immunoglobulin light and heavy chains, and T-cell receptor alpha, beta, and gamma chains
LTR	long terminal repeat, a sequence directly repeated at both ends of a defined sequence, of the sort typically found in retroviruses

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Key	Description
mat_peptide	mature peptide or protein coding sequence; coding sequence for the mature or final peptide or protein product following post-translational modification; the location does not include the stop codon (unlike the corresponding CDS)
misc_binding	site in nucleic acid which covalently or non-covalently binds another moiety that cannot be described by any other Binding key (primer_bind or protein_bind)
misc_difference	feature sequence is different from that presented in the entry and cannot be described by any other Difference key (conflict, unsure, old_sequence, mutation, variation, allele, or modified_base)
misc_feature	region of biological interest which cannot be described by any other feature key; a new or rare feature
misc_recomb	site of any generalized, site-specific or replicative recombination event where there is a breakage and reunion of duplex DNA that cannot be described by other recombination keys (iDNA and virion) or qualifiers of source key (/insertion_seq, /transposon, /proviral)
misc_RNA	any transcript or RNA product that cannot be defined by other RNA keys (prim_transcript, precursor_RNA, mRNA, 5' clip, 3' clip, 5'UTR, 3'UTR, exon, CDS, sig_peptide, transit_peptide, mat_peptide, intron, polyA_site, rRNA, tRNA, scRNA, and snRNA)
misc_signal	any region containing a signal controlling or altering gene function or expression that cannot be described by other Signal keys (promoter, CAAT_signal, TATA_signal, -35_signal, -10_signal, GC_signal, RBS, polyA_signal, enhancer, attenuator, terminator, and rep_origin)
misc_structure	any secondary or tertiary structure or conformation that cannot be described by other Structure keys (stem_loop and D-loop)
modified_base	the indicated nucleotide is a modified nucleotide and should be substituted for by the indicated molecule (given in the mod_base qualifier value)
mRNA	messenger RNA; includes 5' untranslated region (5'UTR), coding sequences (CDS, exon) and 3' untranslated region (3'UTR)
mutation	a related strain has an abrupt, inheritable change in the sequence at this location
N_region	extra nucleotides inserted between rearranged immunoglobulin segments
old_sequence	the presented sequence revises a previous version of the sequence at this location
polyA_signal	recognition region necessary for endonuclease cleavage of an RNA transcript that is followed by polyadenylation; consensus=AATAAA
polyA_site	site on an RNA transcript to which will be added adenine residues by post-transcriptional polyadenylation
precursor_RNA	any RNA species that is not yet the mature RNA product; may include 5' clipped region (5' clip), 5' untranslated region (5'UTR), coding sequences (CDS, exon), intervening sequences (intron), 3' untranslated region (3'UTR), and 3' clipped region (3'clip)

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Key	Description
prim_transcript	primary (initial, unprocessed) transcript; includes 5' clipped region (5' clip), 5' untranslated region (5'UTR), coding sequences (CDS, exon), intervening sequences (intron), 3' untranslated region (3'UTR), and 3' clipped region (3' clip)
primer_bind	non-covalent primer binding site for initiation of replication, transcription, or reverse transcription; includes site(s) for synthetic, for example, PCR primer elements
promoter	region on a DNA molecule involved in RNA polymerase binding to initiate transcription
protein_bind	non-covalent protein binding site on nucleic acid
RBS	ribosome binding site
repeat_region	region of genome containing repeating units
repeat_unit	single repeat element
rep_origin	origin of replication; starting site for duplication of nucleic acid to give two identical copies
rRNA	mature ribosomal RNA; the RNA component of the ribonucleoprotein particle (ribosome) which assembles amino acids into proteins
S_region	switch region of immunoglobulin heavy chains; involved in the rearrangement of heavy chain DNA leading to the expression of a different immunoglobulin class from the same B-cell
satellite	many tandem repeats (identical or related) of a short basic repeating unit; many have a base composition or other property different from the genome average that allows them to be separated from the bulk (main band) genomic DNA
scRNA	small cytoplasmic RNA; any one of several small cytoplasmic RNA molecules present in the cytoplasm and (sometimes) nucleus of a eukaryote
sig_peptide	signal peptide coding sequence; coding sequence for an N-terminal domain of a secreted protein; this domain is involved in attaching nascent polypeptide to the membrane; leader sequence
snRNA	small nuclear RNA; any one of many small RNA species confined to the nucleus; several of the snRNAs are involved in splicing or other RNA processing reactions
source	identifies the biological source of the specified span of the sequence; this key is mandatory; every entry will have, as a minimum, a single source key spanning the entire sequence; more than one source key per sequence is permissible
stem_loop	hairpin; a double-helical region formed by base-pairing between adjacent (inverted) complementary sequences in a single strand of RNA or DNA
STS	Sequence Tagged Site; short, single-copy DNA sequence that characterizes a mapping landmark on the genome and can be detected by PCR; a region of the genome can be mapped by determining the order of a series of STSs

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Key	Description
TATA_signal	TATA box; Goldberg-Hogness box; a conserved AT-rich septamer found about 25 bp before the start point of each eukaryotic RNA polymerase II transcript unit which may be involved in positioning the enzyme for correct initiation; consensus=TATA(A or T)A(A or T)
terminator	sequence of DNA located either at the end of the transcript or adjacent to a promoter region that causes RNA polymerase to terminate transcription; may also be site of binding of repressor protein
transit_peptide	transit peptide coding sequence; coding sequence for an N-terminal domain of a nuclear-encoded organellar protein; this domain is involved in post-translational import of the protein into the organelle
tRNA	mature transfer RNA, a small RNA molecule (75-85 bases long) that mediates the translation of a nucleic acid sequence into an amino acid sequence
unsure	author is unsure of exact sequence in this region
V_region	variable region of immunoglobulin light and heavy chains, and T-cell receptor alpha, beta, and gamma chains; codes for the variable amino terminal portion; can be made up from V_segments, D_segments, N_regions, and J_segments
V_segment	variable segment of immunoglobulin light and heavy chains, and T-cell receptor alpha, beta, and gamma chains; codes for most of the variable region (V_region) and the last few amino acids of the leader peptide
variation	a related strain contains stable mutations from the same gene (for example, RFLPs, polymorphisms, etc.) which differ from the presented sequence at this location (and possibly others)
3'clip	3'-most region of a precursor transcript that is clipped off during processing
3'UTR	region at the 3' end of a mature transcript (following the stop codon) that is not translated into a protein
5'clip	5'-most region of a precursor transcript that is clipped off during processing
5'YTP	region at the 5' end of a mature transcript (preceding the initiation codon) that is not translated into a protein
-10_signal	pribnow box; a conserved region about 10 bp upstream of the start point of bacterial transcription units which may be involved in binding RNA polymerase; consensus=TATAaT
-35_signal	a conserved hexamer about 35 bp upstream of the start point of bacterial transcription units; consensus=TTGACa [] or TGTTGACA []

Table 6: List of Feature Keys Related to Protein Sequences

Key	Description
CONFLICT	different papers report differing sequences
VARIANT	authors report that sequence variants exist

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Key	Description
VARSP LIC	description of sequence variants produced by alternative splicing
MUTAGEN	site which has been experimentally altered
MOD_RES	post-translational modification of a residue
ACETYLATION	N-terminal or other
AMIDATION	generally at the C-terminal of a mature active peptide
BLOCKED	undetermined N- or C-terminal blocking group
FORMYLATION	of the N-terminal methionine
GAMMA-CARBOXYGLUTAMIC ACID HYDROXYLATION	of asparagine, aspartic acid, proline or lysine
METHYLATION	generally of lysine or arginine
PHOSPHORYLATION	of serine, threonine, tyrosine, aspartic acid or histidine
PYRROLIDONE CARBOXYLIC ACID	N-terminal glutamate which has formed an internal cyclic lactam
SULFATATION	generally of tyrosine
LIPID	covalent binding of a lipidic moiety
MYRISTATE	myristate group attached through an amide bond to the N-terminal glycine residue of the mature form of a protein or to an internal lysine residue
PALMITATE	palmitate group attached through a thioether bond to a cysteine residue or through an ester bond to a serine or threonine residue
FARNESYL	farnesyl group attached through a thioether bond to a cysteine residue
GERANYL-GERANYL	geranyl-geranyl group attached through a thioether bond to a cysteine residue
GPI-ANCHOR	glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol (GPI) group linked to the alpha-carboxyl group of the C-terminal residue of the mature form of a protein
N-ACYL DIGLYCERIDE	N-terminal cysteine of the mature form of a prokaryotic lipoprotein with an amide-linked fatty acid and a glyceryl group to which two fatty acids are linked by ester linkages
DISULFID	disulfide bond; the FROM and TO endpoints represent the two residues which are linked by an intra-chain disulfide bond; if the FROM and TO endpoints are identical, the disulfide bond is an interchain one and the description field indicates the nature of the cross-link

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Key	Description
THIOLEST	thiolester bond; the 'FROM' and 'TO' endpoints represent the two residues which are linked by the thiolester bond
THIOETH	thioether bond; the 'FROM' and 'TO' endpoints represent the two residues which are linked by the thioether bond
CARBOHYD	glycosylation site; the nature of the carbohydrate (if known) is given in the description field
METAL	binding site for a metal ion; the description field indicates the nature of the metal
BINDING	binding site for any chemical group (co-enzyme, prosthetic group, etc.); the chemical nature of the group is given in the description field
SIGNAL	extent of a signal sequence (prepeptide)
TRANSIT	extent of a transit peptide (mitochondrial, chloroplastic, or for a microbody)
PROPEP	extent of a propeptide
CHAIN	extent of a polypeptide chain in the mature protein
PEPTIDE	extent of a released active peptide
DOMAIN	extent of a domain of interest on the sequence; the nature of that domain is given in the description field
CA_BIND	extent of a calcium-binding region
DNA_BIND	extent of a DNA-binding region
NP_BIND	extent of a nucleotide phosphate binding region; the nature of the nucleotide phosphate is indicated in the description field
TRANSMEM	extent of a transmembrane region
ZN_FING	extent of a zinc finger region
SIMILAR	extent of a similarity with another protein sequence; precise information, relative to that sequence is given in the description field
REPEAT	extent of an internal sequence repetition
HELIX	secondary structure: Helices, for example, Alpha-helix, 3(10) helix, or Pi-helix
STRAND	secondary structure: Beta-strand, for example, Hydrogen bonded beta-strand, or Residue in an isolated beta-bridge
TURN	secondary structure Turns, for example, H-bonded turn (3-turn, 4-turn or 5-turn)

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

Key	Description
ACT_SITE	amino acid(s) involved in the activity of an enzyme
SITE	any other interesting site on the sequence
INIT_MET	the sequence is known to start with an initiator methionine
NON_TER	the residue at an extremity of the sequence is not the terminal residue; if applied to position 1, this signifies that the first position is not the N-terminus of the complete molecule; if applied to the last position, it signifies that this position is not the C-terminus of the complete molecule; there is no description field for this key
NON_CONS	non consecutive residues; indicates that two residues in a sequence are not consecutive and that there are a number of unsequenced residues between them
UNSURE	uncertainties in the sequence; used to describe region(s) of a sequence for which the authors are unsure about the sequence assignment

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Annex C, Appendix 3
Specimen Sequence Listing

<110> Smith, John; Smithgene Inc.
<120> Example of a Sequence Listing
<130> 01-00001
<140> PCT/EP98/00001
<141> 1998-12-31
<150> US 08/999,999
<151> 1997-10-15
<160> 4
<170> PatentIn version 2.0
<210> 1
<211> 389
<212> DNA
<213> Paramecium sp.
<220>
<221> CDS
<222> (279)...(389)
<300>
<301> Doe, Richard
<302> Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a
Protease from Paramecium sp.
<303> Journal of Genes
<304> 1
<305> 4
<306> 1-7
<307> 1988-06-31
<308> 123456
<309> 1988-06-31
<400> 1
agctgtagtc attcctgtgt cctcttctct ctgggcttct caccttgcta atcagatctc 60
agggagagtg tcttgaccct cctctgcctt tgcagcttca caggcaggca ggcaggcagc 120
tgatgtggca attgctggca gtgccacagg ctttccagcc aggcttaggg tgggttccgc 180
cgcggcgegg cgccccctct cgcgctctc tegegctct ctctcgctct cctctcgctc 240
ggacctgatt aggtgagcag gaggaggggg cagtttagc atg gtt tca atg ttc agc 296
Met Val Ser Met Phe Ser
1 5
ttg tct ttc aaa tgg cct gga ttt tgt ttg ttt gtt tgt ttg ttc caa 344
Leu Ser Phe Lys Trp Pro Gly Phe Cys Leu Phe Val Cys Leu Phe Gln
10 15 20
tgt ccc aaa gtc ctc ccc tgt cac tca tca ctg cag ccg aat ctt 389
Cys Pro Lys Val Leu Pro Cys His Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Asn Leu
25 30 35
<210> 2
<211> 37
<212> PRT
<213> Paramecium sp.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

<400> 2
Met Val Ser Met Phe Ser Leu Ser Phe Lys Trp Pro Gly Phe Cys Leu
1 5 10 15
Phe Val Cys Leu Phe Gln Cys Pro Lys Val Leu Pro Cys His Ser Ser
20 25 30
Leu Gln Pro Asn Leu
35

<210> 3
<211> 11
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Designed peptide based on size and polarity to act as a
linker between the alpha and beta chains of Protein XYZ.

<400> 3
Met Val Asn Leu Glu Pro Met His Thr Glu Ile
1 5 10

<210> 4
<400> 4

000

[Annex D follows]

ANNEX D

**INFORMATION FROM PAMPHLET FRONT PAGE TO BE INCLUDED IN THE
GAZETTE UNDER RULE 86.1(a)(i)**

The following information shall be extracted from the front page of the pamphlet of each published international application and shall, in accordance with Rule 86.1(a)(i), appear in the corresponding entry of the Gazette:

1. as to the international publication:
 - 1.1 the international publication number
 - 1.2 the date of the international publication
 - 1.3 an indication whether the following items were published in the pamphlet:
 - 1.31 international search report
 - 1.32 declaration under Article 17 (2)
 - 1.33 claims amended under Article 19(1)
 - 1.33 statement under Article 19(1)
 - 1.33 the essence of the comments by the applicant on the translation of the international application as referred to in Rule 48.3(b)
 - 1.33 request for rectification under the third sentence of Rule 91.1(f)
 - 1.33 information concerning a priority claim which was considered not to have been made, published upon request made under Rule 26^{bis}.2(c)
 - 1.4 the language in which the international application was filed
 - 1.5 the language of publication of the international application
2. as to the international application:
 - 2.1 the title of the invention
 - 2.2 the symbol(s) of the International Patent Classification (IPC)
 - 2.3 the international application number
 - 2.4 the international filing date
3. as to any priority claim:
 - 3.1 the application number of the earlier application
 - 3.2 the date on which the earlier application was filed
 - 3.3 where the earlier application is:
 - 3.31 a national application: the country in which the earlier application was filed
 - 3.32 a regional application: the authority entrusted with the granting of regional patents under the applicable regional patent treaty and, in the case referred to in Rule 4.1 0(b)(ii), a country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property for which that earlier application was filed
 - 3.33 an international application: the receiving Office with which it was filed
4. as to the applicant, inventor and agent:
 - 4.1 their name(s)
 - 4.2 their mailing address(es)
5. as to the designated States:
 - 5.1 their names
 - 5.2 the indication of any wish for a regional patent
 - 5.3 the indication of kind of protection sought, unless a patent is sought

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS UNDER THE PCT

6. as to a statement concerning non-prejudicial disclosure or exception to lack of novelty:
 - 6.1 the date of the disclosure
 - 6.2 the place of the disclosure
 - 6.3 the kind of the disclosure (e.g., exhibition, scientific publication, conference reports, etc.)
 - 6.4 the title of the exhibition, publication or conference
7. as to any indication in relation to deposited biological material furnished under Rule 13^{bis} separately from the description:
 - 7.1 the fact that such indication is published
 - 7.2 the date on which the International Bureau received such indication
8. as to any declaration referred to in Rule 4.17 which was received by the International Bureau before the expiration of the time limit under Rule 26^{ter}.1:
 - 8.1 the fact that such a declaration was made and a reference to the applicable item in Rule 4.17 under which it was made
 - 8.2 an indication of those designations for the purposes of which such declaration was made.

[Annex B follows]

ANNEX E

INFORMATION TO BE PUBLISHED IN THE GAZETTE UNDER RULE 86.1(a)(v)

1. The time limits applicable under Articles 22 and 39 in respect of each Contracting State.
2. The list of the non-patent literature agreed upon by the International Searching Authorities for inclusion in the minimum documentation.
3. The names of the national Offices which do not wish to receive copies under Article 13(2)(c).
4. The provisions of the national laws of Contracting States concerning international-type search.
5. The text of the agreements entered into between the International Bureau and the International Searching Authorities or the International Preliminary Examining Authorities.
6. The names of the national Offices which entirely or in part waived their rights to any communication under Article 20.
7. The names of the Contracting States which are bound by Chapter II of the PCT.
8. Index of concordance of international application numbers and international publication numbers, listed according to international application numbers.
9. Index of applicants' names giving, for each name, the corresponding international publication number(s).
10. Index of international publication numbers, grouped according to the International Patent Classification symbols.
11. Indication of any subject matter that will not be searched or examined by the various International Searching and Preliminary Examining Authorities under Rules 39 and 67.
12. Requirements of designated and elected Offices under Rules 49.5 and 76.5 in relation to the furnishing of translations.
13. The names of those designated Offices wishing to receive notifications under Rule 24.2 (b).
14. The dates defining the period referred to in Rule 32.1(b) during which the international application, whose effects may be extended to a successor State under Rule 32.1, must have been filed.

[End of Annex]

Appendix P Paris Convention

Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property

of March 20, 1883

as revised

at Brussels on December 14, 1900, at Washington on June 2, 1911, at The Hague on November 6, 1925, at London on June 2, 1934, at Lisbon on October 31, 1958, and at Stockholm on July 14, 1967, and as amended on October 2, 1979. [Articles have been given titles to facilitate their identification. There are no titles in the signed (French) text.]

Article 1

[Establishment of the Union; Scope of Industrial Property]

(1) The countries to which this Convention applies constitute a Union for the protection of industrial property.

(2) The protection of industrial property has as its object patents, utility models, industrial designs, trademarks, service marks, trade names, indications of source or appellations of origin, and the repression of unfair competition.

(3) Industrial property shall be understood in the broadest sense and shall apply not only to industry and commerce proper, but likewise to agricultural and extractive industries and to all manufactured or natural products, for example, wines, grain, tobacco leaf, fruit, cattle, minerals, mineral waters, beer, flowers, and flour.

(4) Patents shall include the various kinds of industrial patents recognized by the laws of the countries of the Union, such as patents of importation, patents of improvement, patents and certificates of addition, etc.

Article 2

[National Treatment for Nationals of Countries of the Union]

(1) Nationals of any country of the Union shall, as regards the protection of industrial property, enjoy

in all the other countries of the Union the advantages that their respective laws now grant, or may hereafter grant, to nationals; all without prejudice to the rights specially provided for by this Convention. Consequently, they shall have the same protection as the latter, and the same legal remedy against any infringement of their rights, provided that the conditions and formalities imposed upon nationals are complied with.

(2) However, no requirement as to domicile or establishment in the country where protection is claimed may be imposed upon nationals of countries of the Union for the enjoyment of any industrial property rights.

(3) The provisions of the laws of each of the countries of the Union relating to judicial and administrative procedure and to jurisdiction, and to the designation of an address for service or the appointment of an agent, which may be required by the laws on industrial property are expressly reserved.

Article 3

[Same Treatment for Certain Categories of Persons as for Nationals of Countries of the Union]

Nationals of countries outside the Union who are domiciled or who have real and effective industrial or commercial establishments in the territory of one of the countries of the Union shall be treated in the same manner as nationals of the countries of the Union.

Article 4

[A. to I. Patents, Utility Models, Industrial Designs, Marks, Inventors Certificates; Right of Priority. — G. Patents: Division of the Application]

A. — (1) Any person who has duly filed an application for a patent, or for the registration of a utility model, or of an industrial design, or of a trademark, in one of the countries of the Union, or his successor in title, shall enjoy, for the purpose of filing in the other countries, a right of priority during the periods hereinafter fixed.

(2) Any filing that is equivalent to a regular national filing under the domestic legislation of any country of the Union or under bilateral or multilateral treaties concluded between countries of the Union shall be recognized as giving rise to the right of priority.

(3) By a regular national filing is meant any filing that is adequate to establish the date on which

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

the application was filed in the country concerned, whatever may be the subsequent fate of the application.

B. — Consequently, any subsequent filing in any of the other countries of the Union before the expiration of the periods referred to above shall not be invalidated by reason of any acts accomplished in the interval, in particular, another filing, the publication or exploitation of the invention, the putting on sale of copies of the design, or the use of the mark, and such acts cannot give rise to any third-party right or any right of personal possession. Rights acquired by third parties before the date of the first application that serves as the basis for the right of priority are reserved in accordance with the domestic legislation of each country of the Union.

C. — (1) The periods of priority referred to above shall be twelve months for patents and utility models, and six months for industrial designs and trademarks.

(2) These periods shall start from the date of filing of the first application; the day of filing shall not be included in the period.

(3) If the last day of the period is an official holiday, or a day when the Office is not open for the filing of applications in the country where protection is claimed, the period shall be extended until the first following working day.

(4) A subsequent application concerning the same subject as a previous first application within the meaning of paragraph (2), above, filed in the same country of the Union, shall be considered as the first application, of which the filing date shall be the starting point of the period of priority, if, at the time of filing the subsequent application, the said previous application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or refused, without having been laid open to public inspection and without leaving any rights outstanding, and if it has not yet served as a basis for claiming a right of priority. The previous application may not thereafter serve as a basis for claiming a right of priority.

D. — (1) Any person desiring to take advantage of the priority of a previous filing shall be required to make a declaration indicating the date of such filing and the country in which it was made. Each country shall determine the latest date on which such declaration must be made.

(2) These particulars shall be mentioned in the publications issued by the competent authority, and in particular in the patents and the specifications relating thereto.

(3) The countries of the Union may require any person making a declaration of priority to produce a copy of the application (description, drawings, etc.) previously filed. The copy, certified as correct by the authority which received such application, shall not require any authentication, and may in any case be filed, without fee, at any time within three months of the filing of the subsequent application. They may require it to be accompanied by a certificate from the same authority showing the date of filing, and by a translation.

(4) No other formalities may be required for the declaration of priority at the time of filing the application. Each country of the Union shall determine the consequences of failure to comply with the formalities prescribed by this Article, but such consequences shall in no case go beyond the loss of the right of priority.

(5) Subsequently, further proof may be required.

Any person who avails himself of the priority of a previous application shall be required to specify the number of that application; this number shall be published as provided for by paragraph (2), above.

E. — (1) Where an industrial design is filed in a country by virtue of a right of priority based on the filing of a utility model, the period of priority shall be the same as that fixed for industrial designs.

(2) Furthermore, it is permissible to file a utility model in a country by virtue of a right of priority based on the filing of a patent application, and vice versa.

F. — No country of the Union may refuse a priority or a patent application on the ground that the applicant claims multiple priorities, even if they originate in different countries, or on the ground that an application claiming one or more priorities contains one or more elements that were not included in the application or applications whose priority is claimed, provided that, in both cases, there is unity of invention within the meaning of the law of the country.

With respect to the elements not included in the application or applications whose priority is claimed,

PARIS CONVENTION

the filing of the subsequent application shall give rise to a right of priority under ordinary conditions.

G. — (1) If the examination reveals that an application for a patent contains more than one invention, the applicant may divide the application into a certain number of divisional applications and preserve as the date of each the date of the initial application and the benefit of the right of priority, if any.

(2) The applicant may also, on his own initiative, divide a patent application and preserve as the date of each divisional application the date of the initial application and the benefit of the right of priority, if any. Each country of the Union shall have the right to determine the conditions under which such division shall be authorized.

H. — Priority may not be refused on the ground that certain elements of the invention for which priority is claimed do not appear among the claims formulated in the application in the country of origin, provided that the application documents as a whole specifically disclose such elements.

I. — (1) Applications for inventors' certificates filed in a country in which applicants have the right to apply at their own option either for a patent or for an inventor's certificate shall give rise to the right of priority provided for by this Article, under the same conditions and with the same effects as applications for patents.

(2) In a country in which applicants have the right to apply at their own option either for a patent or for an inventor's certificate, an applicant for an inventor's certificate shall, in accordance with the provisions of this Article relating to patent applications, enjoy a right of priority based on an application for a patent, a utility model, or an inventor's certificate.

Article 4^{bis}

[Patents: Independence of Patents Obtained for the Same Invention in Different Countries]

(1) Patents applied for in the various countries of the Union by nationals of countries of the Union shall be independent of patents obtained for the same invention in other countries, whether members of the Union or not.

(2) The foregoing provision is to be understood in an unrestricted sense, in particular, in the sense that patents applied for during the period of priority are

independent, both as regards the grounds for nullity and forfeiture, and as regards their normal duration.

(3) The provision shall apply to all patents existing at the time when it comes into effect.

(4) Similarly, it shall apply, in the case of the accession of new countries, to patents in existence on either side at the time of accession.

(5) Patents obtained with the benefit of priority shall, in the various countries of the Union, have a duration equal to that which they would have, had they been applied for or granted without the benefit of priority.

Article 4^{ter}

[Patents: Mention of the Inventor in the Patent]

The inventor shall have the right to be mentioned as such in the patent.

Article 4^{quater}

[Patents: Patentability in Case of Restrictions of Sale by Law]

The grant of a patent shall not be refused and a patent shall not be invalidated on the ground that the sale of the patented product or of a product obtained by means of a patented process is subject to restrictions or limitations resulting from the domestic law.

Article 5

[A. Patents: Importation of Articles; Failure to Work or Insufficient Working; Compulsory Licenses. — B. Industrial Designs: Failure to Work; Importation of Articles. — C. Marks: Failure to Use; Different Forms; Use by Co-proprietors. — D. Patents, Utility Models, Marks, Industrial Designs: Marking]

A. — (1) Importation by the patentee into the country where the patent has been granted of articles manufactured in any of the countries of the Union shall not entail forfeiture of the patent.

(2) Each country of the Union shall have the right to take legislative measures providing for the grant of compulsory licenses to prevent the abuses which might result from the exercise of the exclusive rights conferred by the patent, for example, failure to work.

(3) Forfeiture of the patent shall not be provided for except in cases where the grant of compulsory licenses would not have been sufficient to prevent the said abuses. No proceedings for the forfei-

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

ture or revocation of a patent may be instituted before the expiration of two years from the grant of the first compulsory license.

(4) A compulsory license may not be applied for on the ground of failure to work or insufficient working before the expiration of a period of four years from the date of filing of the patent application or three years from the date of the grant of the patent, whichever period expires last; it shall be refused if the patentee justifies his inaction by legitimate reasons. Such a compulsory license shall be non-exclusive and shall not be transferable, even in the form of the grant of a sub-license, except with that part of the enterprise or goodwill which exploits such license.

(5) The foregoing provisions shall be applicable, *mutatis mutandis*, to utility models.

B. — The protection of industrial design shall not, under any circumstance, be subject to any forfeiture, either by reason of failure to work or by reason of the importation of articles corresponding to those which are protected.

C. — (1) If, in any country, use of the registered mark is compulsory, the registration may be cancelled only after a reasonable period, and then only if the person concerned does not justify his inaction.

(2) Use of a trademark by the proprietor in a form differing in elements which do not alter the distinctive character of the mark in the form in which it was registered in one of the countries of the Union shall not entail invalidation of the registration and shall not diminish the protection granted to the mark.

(3) Concurrent use of the same mark on identical or similar goods by industrial or commercial establishments considered as co-proprietors of the mark according to the provisions of the domestic law of the country where protection is claimed shall not prevent registration or diminish in any way the protection granted to the said mark in any country of the Union, provided that such use does not result in misleading the public and is not contrary to the public interest.

D. — No indication or mention of the patent, of the utility model, of the registration of the trademark, or of the deposit of the industrial design, shall be required upon the goods as a condition of recognition of the right to protection.

Article 5^{bis}

[All Industrial Property Rights: Period of Grace for the Payment of Fees for the Maintenance of Rights; Patents: Restoration]

(1) A period of grace of not less than six months shall be allowed for the payment of the fees prescribed for the maintenance of industrial property rights, subject, if the domestic legislation so provides, to the payment of a surcharge.

(2) The countries of the Union shall have the right to provide for the restoration of patents which have lapsed by reason of non-payment of fees.

Article 5^{ter}

[Patents: Patented Devices Forming Part of Vessels, Aircraft, or Land Vehicles]

In any country of the Union the following shall not be considered as infringements of the rights of a patentee:

(1) the use on board vessels of other countries of the Union of devices forming the subject of his patent in the body of the vessel, in the machinery, tackle, gear and other accessories, when such vessels temporarily or accidentally enter the waters of the said country, provided that such devices are used there exclusively for the needs of the vessel;

(2) the use of devices forming the subject of the patent in the construction or operation of aircraft or land vehicles of other countries of the Union, or of accessories of such aircraft or land vehicles, when those aircraft or land vehicles temporarily or accidentally enter the said country.

Article 5^{quater}

[Patents: Importation of Products Manufactured by a Process Patented in the Importing Country]

When a product is imported into a country of the Union where there exists a patent protecting a process of manufacture of the said product, the patentee shall have all the rights, with regard to the imported product, that are accorded to him by the legislation of the country of importation, on the basis of the process patent, with respect to products manufactured in that country.

PARIS CONVENTION

Article 5^{quinquies}

[Industrial Designs]

Industrial designs shall be protected in all the countries of the Union.

Article 6

[Marks: Conditions of Registration; Independence of Protection of Same Mark in Different Countries]

(1) The conditions for the filing and registration of trademarks shall be determined in each country of the Union by its domestic legislation.

(2) However, an application for the registration of a mark filed by a national of a country of the Union in any country of the Union may not be refused, nor may a registration be invalidated, on the ground that filing, registration, or renewal, has not been effected in the country of origin.

(3) A mark duly registered in a country of the Union shall be regarded as independent of marks registered in the other countries of the Union, including the country of origin.

Article 6^{bis}

[Marks: Well Known Marks]

(1) The countries of the Union undertake, *ex officio* if their legislation so permits, or at the request of an interested party, to refuse or to cancel the registration, and to prohibit the use, of a trademark which constitutes a reproduction, an imitation, or a translation, liable to create confusion, of a mark considered by the competent authority of the country of registration or use to be well known in that country as being already the mark of a person entitled to the benefits of this Convention and used for identical or similar goods.

These provisions shall also apply when the essential part of the mark constitutes a reproduction of any such well-known mark or an imitation liable to create confusion therewith.

(2) A period of at least five years from the date of registration shall be allowed for requesting the cancellation of such a mark. The countries of the Union may provide for a period within which the prohibition of use must be requested.

(3) No time limit shall be fixed for requesting the cancellation or the prohibition of the use of marks registered or used in bad faith.

Article 6^{ter}

[Marks: Prohibitions concerning State Emblems, Official Hallmarks, and Emblems of Intergovernmental Organizations]

(1)(a) The countries of the Union agree to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit by appropriate measures the use, without authorization by the competent authorities, either as trademarks or as elements of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags, and other State emblems, of the countries of the Union, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by them, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (a), above, shall apply equally to armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations of which one or more countries of the Union are members, with the exception of armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, that are already the subject of international agreements in force, intended to ensure their protection.

(c) No country of the Union shall be required to apply the provisions of subparagraph (b), above, to the prejudice of the owners of rights acquired in good faith before the entry into force, in that country, of this Convention. The countries of the Union shall not be required to apply the said provisions when the use or registration referred to in subparagraph (a), above, is not of such a nature as to suggest to the public that a connection exists between the organization concerned and the armorial bearings, flags, emblems, abbreviations, and names, or if such use or registration is probably not of such a nature as to mislead the public as to the existence of a connection between the user and the organization.

(2) Prohibition of the use of official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty shall apply solely in cases where the marks in which they are incorporated are intended to be used on goods of the same or a similar kind.

(3)(a) For the application of these provisions, the countries of the Union agree to communicate reciprocally, through the intermediary of the International Bureau, the list of State emblems, and official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty, which they desire, or may hereafter desire, to place wholly or within certain limits under the protection of this

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Article, and all subsequent modifications of such list. Each country of the Union shall in due course make available to the public the lists so communicated.

Nevertheless such communication is not obligatory in respect of flags of States.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (b) of paragraph (1) of this Article shall apply only to such armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations as the latter have communicated to the countries of the Union through the intermediary of the International Bureau.

(4) Any country of the Union may, within a period of twelve months from the receipt of the notification, transmit its objections, if any, through the intermediary of the International Bureau, to the country or international intergovernmental organization concerned.

(5) In the case of State flags, the measures prescribed by paragraph (1), above, shall apply solely to marks registered after November 6, 1925.

(6) In the case of State emblems other than flags, and of official signs and hallmarks of the countries of the Union, and in the case of armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations, these provisions shall apply only to marks registered more than two months after receipt of the communication provided for in paragraph (3), above.

(7) In cases of bad faith, the countries shall have the right to cancel even those marks incorporating State emblems, signs, and hallmarks, which were registered before November 6, 1925.

(8) Nationals of any country who are authorized to make use of the State emblems, signs, and hallmarks, of their country may use them even if they are similar to those of another country.

(9) The countries of the Union undertake to prohibit the unauthorized use in trade of the State armorial bearings of the other countries of the Union, when the use is of such a nature as to be misleading as to the origin of the goods.

(10) The above provisions shall not prevent the countries from exercising the right given in paragraph (3) of Article 6^{quinquies}, Section B, to refuse or to invalidate the registration of marks incorporating, without authorization, armorial bearings, flags, other State emblems, or official signs and hallmarks

adopted by a country of the Union, as well as the distinctive signs of international intergovernmental organizations referred to in paragraph (1), above.

Article 6^{quater}

[Marks: Assignment of Marks]

(1) When, in accordance with the law of a country of the Union, the assignment of a mark is valid only if it takes place at the same time as the transfer of the business or goodwill to which the mark belongs, it shall suffice for the recognition of such validity that the portion of the business or goodwill located in that country be transferred to the assignee, together with the exclusive right to manufacture in the said country, or to sell therein, the goods bearing the mark assigned.

(2) The foregoing provision does not impose upon the countries of the Union any obligation to regard as valid the assignment of any mark the use of which by the assignee would, in fact, be of such a nature as to mislead the public, particularly as regards the origin, nature, or essential qualities, of the goods to which the mark is applied.

Article 6^{quinquies}

[Marks: Protection of Marks Registered in One Country of the Union in the Other Countries of the Union]

A. — (1) Every trademark duly registered in the country of origin shall be accepted for filing and protected as is in the other countries of the Union, subject to the reservations indicated in this Article. Such countries may, before proceeding to final registration, require the production of a certificate of registration in the country of origin, issued by the competent authority. No authentication shall be required for this certificate.

(2) Shall be considered the country of origin the country of the Union where the applicant has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment, or, if he has no such establishment within the Union, the country of the Union where he has his domicile, or, if he has no domicile within the Union but is a national of a country of the Union, the country of which he is a national.

B. — Trademarks covered by this Article may be neither denied registration nor invalidated except in the following cases:

PARIS CONVENTION

1. when they are of such a nature as to infringe rights acquired by third parties in the country where protection is claimed;

2. when they are devoid of any distinctive character, or consist exclusively of signs or indications which may serve, in trade, to designate the kind, quality, quantity, intended purpose, value, place of origin, of the goods, or the time of production, or have become customary, in the current language or in the bona fide and established practices of the trade of the country where protection is claimed;

3. when they are contrary to morality or public order and, in particular, of such a nature as to deceive the public. It is understood that a mark may not be considered contrary to public order for the sole reason that it does not conform to a provision of the legislation on marks, except if such provision itself relates to public order.

This provision is subject, however, to the application of Article 10^{bis}.

C. — (1) In determining whether a mark is eligible for protection, all the factual circumstances must be taken into consideration, particularly the length of time the mark has been in use.

(2) No trademark shall be refused in the other countries of the Union for the sole reason that it differs from the mark protected in the country of origin only in respect of elements that do not alter its distinctive character and do not affect its identity in the form in which it has been registered in the said country of origin.

D. — No person may benefit from the provisions of this Article if the mark for which he claims protection is not registered in the country of origin.

E. — However, in no case shall the renewal of the registration of the mark in the country of origin involve an obligation to renew the registration in the other countries of the Union in which the mark has been registered.

F. — The benefit of priority shall remain unaffected for applications for the registration of marks filed within the period fixed by Article 4, even if registration in the country of origin is effected after the expiration of such period.

Article 6^{sexies}

[Marks: Service Marks]

The countries of the Union undertake to protect service marks. They shall not be required to provide for the registration of such marks.

Article 6^{septies}

[Marks: Registration in the Name of the Agent or Representative of the Proprietor Without the Latter's Authorization]

(1) If the agent or representative of the person who is the proprietor of a mark in one of the countries of the Union applies, without such proprietor's authorization, for the registration of the mark in his own name, in one or more countries of the Union, the proprietor shall be entitled to oppose the registration applied for or demand its cancellation or, if the law of the country so allows, the assignment in his favor of the said registration, unless such agent or representative justifies his action.

(2) The proprietor of the mark shall, subject to the provisions of paragraph (1), above, be entitled to oppose the use of his mark by his agent or representative if he has not authorized such use.

(3) Domestic legislation may provide an equitable time limit within which the proprietor of a mark must exercise the rights provided for in this Article.

Article 7

[Marks: Nature of the Goods to which the Mark is Applied]

The nature of the goods to which a trademark is to be applied shall in no case form an obstacle to the registration of the mark.

Article 7^{bis}

[Marks: Collective Marks]

(1) The countries of the Union undertake to accept for filing and to protect collective marks belonging to associations the existence of which is not contrary to the law of the country of origin even if such associations do not possess an industrial or commercial establishment.

(2) Each country shall be the judge of the particular conditions under which a collective mark shall be protected and may refuse protection if the mark is contrary to the public interest.

(3) Nevertheless, the protection of these marks shall not be refused to any association the existence of which is not contrary to the law of the country of origin, on the ground that such association is not established in the country where protection is sought or is not constituted according to the law of the latter country.

Article 8

[Trade Names]

A trade name shall be protected in all the countries of the Union without the obligation of filing or registration, whether or not it forms part of a trademark.

Article 9

[Marks, Trade Names: Seizure, on Importation, etc., of Goods Unlawfully Bearing a Mark or Trade Name]

(1) All goods unlawfully bearing a trademark or trade name shall be seized on importation into those countries of the Union where such mark or trade name is entitled to legal protection.

(2) Seizure shall likewise be effected in the country where the unlawful affixation occurred or in the country in to which the goods were imported.

(3) Seizure shall take place at the request of the public prosecutor, or any other competent authority, or any interested party, whether a natural person or a legal entity, in conformity with the domestic legislation of each country.

(4) The authorities shall not be bound to effect seizure of goods in transit.

(5) If the legislation of a country does not permit seizure on importation, seizure shall be replaced by prohibition of importation or by seizure inside the country.

(6) If the legislation of a country permits neither seizure on importation nor prohibition of importation nor seizure inside the country, then, until such time as the legislation is modified accordingly, these measures shall be replaced by the actions and remedies available in such cases to nationals under the law of such country.

Article 10

[False Indications: Seizure, on Importation, etc., of Goods Bearing False Indications as to their Source or the Identity of the Producer]

(1) The provisions of the preceding Article shall apply in cases of direct or indirect use of a false indication of the source of the goods or the identity of the producer, manufacturer, or merchant.

(2) Any producer, manufacturer, or merchant, whether a natural person or a legal entity, engaged in the production or manufacture of or trade in such goods and established either in the locality falsely indicated as the source, or in the region where such locality is situated, or in the country falsely indicated, or in the country where the false indication of source is used, shall in any case be deemed an interested party.

Article 10^{bis}

[Unfair Competition]

(1) The countries of the Union are bound to assure to nationals of such countries effective protection against unfair competition.

(2) Any act of competition contrary to honest practices in industrial or commercial matters constitutes an act of unfair competition.

(3) The following in particular shall be prohibited:

1. all acts of such a nature as to create confusion by any means whatever with the establishment, the goods, or the industrial or commercial activities, of a competitor;

2. false allegations in the course of trade of such a nature as to discredit the establishment, the goods, or the industrial or commercial activities, of a competitor;

3. indications or allegations the use of which in the course of trade is liable to mislead the public as to the nature, the manufacturing process, the characteristics, the suitability for their purpose, or the quantity, of the goods.

Article 10^{ter}

[Marks, Trade Names, False Indications, Unfair Competition: Remedies, Right to Sue]

(1) The countries of the Union undertake to assure to nationals of the other countries of the Union

PARIS CONVENTION

appropriate legal remedies effectively to repress all the acts referred to in Articles 9, 10, and 10^{bis}.

(2) They undertake, further, to provide measures to permit federations and associations representing interested industrialists, producers, or merchants, provided that the existence of such federations and associations is not contrary to the laws of their countries, to take action in the courts or before the administrative authorities, with a view to the repression of the acts referred to in Articles 9, 10, and 10^{bis}, in so far as the law of the country in which protection is claimed allows such action by federations and associations of that country.

Article 11

[Inventions, Utility Models, Industrial Designs, Marks: Temporary Protection at Certain International Exhibitions]

(1) The countries of the Union shall, in conformity with their domestic legislation, grant temporary protection to patentable inventions, utility models, industrial designs, and trademarks, in respect of goods exhibited at official or officially recognized international exhibitions held in the territory of any of them.

(2) Such temporary protection shall not extend the periods provided by Article 4. If, later, the right of priority is invoked, the authorities of any country may provide that the period shall start from the date of introduction of the goods into the exhibition.

(3) Each country may require, as proof of the identity of the article exhibited and of the date of its introduction, such documentary evidence as it considers necessary.

Article 12

[Special National Industrial Property Services]

(1) Each country of the Union undertakes to establish a special industrial property service and a central office for the communication to the public of patents, utility models, industrial designs, and trademarks.

(2) This service shall publish an official periodical journal. It shall publish regularly:

(a) the names of the proprietors of patents granted, with a brief designation of the inventions patented;

(b) the reproductions of registered trademarks.

Article 13

[Assembly of the Union]

(1)(a) The Union shall have an Assembly consisting of those countries of the Union which are bound by Articles 13 to 17.

(b) The Government of each country shall be represented by one delegate, who may be assisted by alternate delegates, advisors, and experts.

(c) The expenses of each delegation shall be borne by the Government which has appointed it.

(2)(a) The Assembly shall:

(i) deal with all matters concerning the maintenance and development of the Union and the implementation of this Convention;

(ii) give directions concerning the preparation for conferences of revision to the International Bureau of Intellectual Property (hereinafter designated as the International Bureau) referred to in the Convention establishing the World Intellectual Property Organization (hereinafter designated as the Organization), due account being taken of any comments made by those countries of the Union which are not bound by Articles 13 to 17;

(iii) review and approve the reports and activities of the Director General of the Organization concerning the Union, and give him all necessary instructions concerning matters within the competence of the Union;

(iv) elect the members of the Executive Committee of the Assembly;

(v) review and approve the reports and activities of its Executive Committee, and give instructions to such Committee;

(vi) determine the program and adopt the biennial budget of the Union, and approve its final accounts;

(vii) adopt the financial regulations of the Union;

(viii) establish such committees of experts and working groups as it deems appropriate to achieve the objectives of the Union;

(ix) determine which countries not members of the Union and which intergovernmental and international nongovernmental organizations shall be admitted to its meetings as observers;

(x) adopt amendments to Articles 13 to 17;

(xi) take any other appropriate action designed to further the objectives of the Union;

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

matters concerning the protection of industrial property.

(5) The International Bureau shall conduct studies, and shall provide services, designed to facilitate the protection of industrial property.

(6) The Director General and any staff member designated by him shall participate, without the right to vote, in all meetings of the Assembly, the Executive Committee, and any other committee of experts or working group. The Director General, or a staff member designated by him, shall be *ex officio* secretary of these bodies.

(7)(a) The International Bureau shall, in accordance with the directions of the Assembly and in cooperation with the Executive Committee, make the preparations for the conferences of revision of the provisions of the Convention other than Articles 13 to 17.

(b) The International Bureau may consult with intergovernmental and international non-governmental organizations concerning preparations for conferences of revision.

(c) The Director General and persons designated by him shall take part, without the right to vote, in the discussions at these conferences.

(8) The International Bureau shall carry out any other tasks assigned to it.

Article 16

[Finances]

(1)(a) The Union shall have a budget.

(b) The budget of the Union shall include the income and expenses proper to the Union, its contribution to the budget of expenses common to the Unions, and, where applicable, the sum made available to the budget of the Conference of the Organization.

(c) Expenses not attributable exclusively to the Union but also to one or more other Unions administered by the Organization shall be considered as expenses common to the Unions. The share of the Union in such common expenses shall be in proportion to the interest the Union has in them.

(2) The budget of the Union shall be established with due regard to the requirements of coordination with the budgets of the other Unions administered by the Organization.

(3) The budget of the Union shall be financed from the following sources:

(i) contributions of the countries of the Union;

(ii) fees and charges due for services rendered by the International Bureau in relation to the Union;

(iii) sale of, or royalties on, the publications of the International Bureau concerning the Union;

(iv) gifts, bequests, and subventions;

(v) rents, interests, and other miscellaneous income.

(4)(a) For the purpose of establishing its contribution towards the budget, each country of the Union shall belong to a class, and shall pay its annual contributions on the basis of a number of units fixed as follows:

Class I	25
Class II	15
Class III	15
Class IV	10
Class V	5
Class VI	3
Class VII	1

(b) Unless it has already done so, each country shall indicate, concurrently with depositing its instrument of ratification or accession, the class to which it wishes to belong. Any country may change class. If it chooses a lower class, the country must announce such change to the Assembly at one of its ordinary sessions. Any such change shall take effect at the beginning of the calendar year following the said session.

(c) The annual contribution of each country shall be an amount in the same proportion to the total sum to be contributed to the budget of the Union by all countries as the number of its units is to the total of the units of all contributing countries.

(d) Contributions shall become due on the first of January of each year.

(e) A country which is in arrears in the payment of its contributions may not exercise its right to

PARIS CONVENTION

vote in any of the organs of the Union of which it is a member if the amount of its arrears equals or exceeds the amount of the contributions due from it for the preceding two full years. However, any organ of the Union may allow such a country to continue to exercise its right to vote in that organ if, and as long as, it is satisfied that the delay in payment is due to exceptional and unavoidable circumstances.

(f) If the budget is not adopted before the beginning of a new financial period, it shall be at the same level as the budget of the previous year, as provided in the financial regulations.

(5) The amount of the fees and charges due for services rendered by the International Bureau in relation to the Union shall be established, and shall be reported to the Assembly and the Executive Committee, by the Director General.

(6)(a) The Union shall have a working capital fund which shall be constituted by a single payment made by each country of the Union. If the fund becomes insufficient, the Assembly shall decide to increase it.

(b) The amount of the initial payment of each country to the said fund or of its participation in the increase thereof shall be a proportion of the contribution of that country for the year in which the fund is established or the decision to increase it is made.

(c) The proportion and the terms of payment shall be fixed by the Assembly on the proposal of the Director General and after it has heard the advice of the Coordination Committee of the organization.

(7)(a) In the headquarters agreement concluded with the country on the territory of which the Organization has its headquarters, it shall be provided that, whenever the working capital fund is insufficient, such country shall grant advances. The amount of these advances and the conditions on which they are granted shall be the subject of separate agreements, in each case, between such country and the Organization. As long as it remains under the obligation to grant advances, such country shall have an *ex officio* seat on the Executive Committee.

(b) The country referred to in subparagraph (a) and the Organization shall each have the right to denounce the obligation to grant advances, by written notification. Denunciation shall take effect three years after the end of the year in which it has been notified.

(8) The auditing of the accounts shall be effected by one or more of the countries of the Union or by external auditors, as provided in the financial regulations. They shall be designated, with their agreement, by the Assembly.

Article 17

[Amendment of Articles 13 to 17]

(1) Proposals for the amendment of Articles 13, 14, 15, 16, and the present Article, may be initiated by any country member of the Assembly, by the Executive Committee, or by the Director General. Such proposals shall be communicated by the Director General to the member countries of the Assembly at least six months in advance of their consideration by the Assembly.

(2) Amendments to the Articles referred to in paragraph (1) shall be adopted by the Assembly. Adoption shall require three-fourths of the votes cast, provided that any amendment to Article 13, and to the present paragraph, shall require four-fifths of the votes cast.

(3) Any amendment to the Articles referred to in paragraph (1) shall enter into force one month after written notifications of acceptance, effected in accordance with their respective constitutional processes, have been received by the Director General from three-fourths of the countries members of the Assembly at the time it adopted the amendment. Any amendment to the said Articles thus accepted shall bind all the countries which are members of the Assembly at the time the amendment enters into force, or which become members thereof at a subsequent date, provided that any amendment increasing the financial obligations of countries of the Union shall bind only those countries which have notified their acceptance of such amendment.

Article 18

[Revision of Articles 1 to 12 and 18 to 30]

(1) This Convention shall be submitted to revision with a view to the introduction of amendments designed to improve the system of the Union.

(2) For that purpose, conferences shall be held successively in one of the countries of the Union among the delegates of the said countries.

(3) Amendments to Articles 13 to 17 are governed by the provisions of Article 17.

Article 19

[Special Agreements]

It is understood that the countries of the Union reserve the right to make separately between themselves special agreements for the protection of industrial property, in so far as these agreements do not contravene the provisions of this Convention.

Article 20

[Ratification or Accession by Countries of the Union; Entry Into Force]

(1)(a) Any country of the Union which has signed this Act may ratify it, and, if it has not signed it, may accede to it. Instruments of ratification and accession shall be deposited with the Director General.

(b) Any country of the Union may declare in its instrument of ratification or accession that its ratification or accession shall not apply:

- (i) to Articles 1 to 12, or
- (ii) to Articles 13 to 17.

(c) Any country of the Union which, in accordance with subparagraph (b), has excluded from the effects of its ratification or accession one of the two groups of Articles referred to in that subparagraph may at any later time declare that it extends the effects of its ratification or accession to that group of Articles. Such declaration shall be deposited with the Director General.

(2)(a) Articles 1 to 12 shall enter into force, with respect to the first ten countries of the Union which have deposited instruments of ratification or accession without making the declaration permitted under paragraph (1)(b)(i), three months after the deposit of the tenth such instrument of ratification or accession.

(b) Articles 13 to 17 shall enter into force, with respect to the first ten countries of the Union which have deposited instruments of ratification or accession without making the declaration permitted under paragraph (1)(b)(ii), three months after the deposit of the tenth such instrument of ratification or accession.

(c) Subject to the initial entry into force, pursuant to the provisions of subparagraphs (a) and (b), of each of the two groups of Articles referred to in paragraph (1)(b)(i) and (ii), and subject to the provisions of paragraph (1)(b), Articles 1 to 17 shall, with respect to any country of the Union, other than those referred to in subparagraphs (a) and (b), which depos-

its an instrument of ratification or accession or any country of the Union which deposits a declaration pursuant to paragraph (1)(c), enter into force three months after the date of notification by the Director General of such deposit, unless a subsequent date has been indicated in the instrument or declaration deposited. In the latter case, this Act shall enter into force with respect to that country on the date thus indicated.

(3) With respect to any country of the Union which deposits an instrument of ratification or accession, Articles 18 to 30 shall enter into force on the earlier of the dates on which any of the groups of Articles referred to in paragraph (1)(b) enters into force with respect to that country pursuant to paragraph (2)(a), (b), or (c).

Article 21

[Accession by Countries Outside the Union; Entry Into Force]

(1) Any country outside the Union may accede to this Act and thereby become a member of the Union. Instruments of accession shall be deposited with the Director General.

(2)(a) With respect to any country outside the Union which deposits its instrument of accession one month or more before the date of entry into force of any provisions of the present Act, this Act shall enter into force, unless a subsequent date has been indicated in the instrument of accession, on the date upon which provisions first enter into force pursuant to Article 20(2)(a) or (b); provided that:

(i) if Articles 1 to 12 do not enter into force on that date, such country shall, during the interim period before the entry into force of such provisions, and in substitution therefor, be bound by Articles 1 to 12 of the Lisbon Act,

(ii) if Articles 13 to 17 do not enter into force on that date, such country shall, during the interim period before the entry into force of such provisions, and in substitution therefor, be bound by Articles 13 and 14 (3), (4), and (5), of the Lisbon Act.

If a country indicates a subsequent date in its instrument of accession, this Act shall enter into force with respect to that country on the date thus indicated.

(b) With respect to any country outside the Union which deposits its instrument of accession on a date which is subsequent to, or precedes by less than one month, the entry into force of one group of Arti-

PARIS CONVENTION

cles of the present Act, this Act shall, subject to the proviso of subparagraph (a), enter into force three months after the date on which its accession has been notified by the Director General, unless a subsequent date has been indicated in the instrument of accession. In the latter case, this Act shall enter into force with respect to that country on the date thus indicated.

(3) With respect to any country outside the Union which deposits its instrument of accession after the date of entry into force of the present Act in its entirety, or less than one month before such date, this Act shall enter into force three months after the date on which its accession has been notified by the Director General, unless a subsequent date has been indicated in the instrument of accession. In the latter case, this Act shall enter into force with respect to that country on the date thus indicated.

Article 22

[Consequences of Ratification or Accession]

Subject to the possibilities of exceptions provided for in Articles 20(1) (b) and 28(2), ratification or accession shall automatically entail acceptance of all the clauses and admission to all the advantages of this Act.

Article 23

[Accession to Earlier Acts]

After the entry into force of this Act in its entirety, a country may not accede to earlier Acts of this Convention.

Article 24

[Territories]

(1) Any country may declare in its instrument of ratification or accession, or may inform the Director General by written notification any time thereafter, that this Convention shall be applicable to all or part of those territories, designated in the declaration or notification, for the external relations of which it is responsible.

(2) Any country which has made such a declaration or given such a notification may, at any time, notify the Director General that this Convention shall cease to be applicable to all or part of such territories.

(3)(a) Any declaration made under paragraph (1) shall take effect on the same date as the ratification or accession in the instrument of which it was included,

and any notification given under such paragraph shall take effect three months after its notification by the Director General.

(b) Any notification given under paragraph (2) shall take effect twelve months after its receipt by the Director General.

Article 25

[Implementation of the Convention
on the Domestic Level]

(1) Any country party to this Convention undertakes to adopt, in accordance with its constitution, the measures necessary to ensure the application of this Convention.

(2) It is understood that, at the time a country deposits its instrument of ratification or accession, it will be in a position under its domestic law to give effect to the provisions of this Convention.

Article 26

[Denunciation]

(1) This Convention shall remain in force without limitation as to time.

(2) Any country may denounce this Act by notification addressed to the Director General. Such denunciation shall constitute also denunciation of all earlier Acts and shall affect only the country making it, the Convention remaining in full force and effect as regards the other countries of the Union.

(3) Denunciation shall take effect one year after the day on which the Director General has received the notification.

(4) The right of denunciation provided by this Article shall not be exercised by any country before the expiration of five years from the date upon which it becomes a member of the Union.

Article 27

[Application of Earlier Acts]

(1) The present Act shall, as regards the relations between the countries to which it applies, and to the extent that it applies, replace the Convention of Paris of March 20, 1883, and the subsequent Acts of revision.

(2)(a) As regards the countries to which the present Act does not apply, or does not apply in its entirety, but to which the Lisbon Act of October 31, 1958, applies, the latter shall remain in force in its

entirety or to the extent that the present Act does not replace it by virtue of paragraph (1).

(b) Similarly, as regards the countries to which neither the present Act, nor portions thereof, nor the Lisbon Act applies, the London Act of June 2, 1934, shall remain in force in its entirety or to the extent that the present Act does not replace it by virtue of paragraph (1).

(c) Similarly, as regards the countries to which neither the present Act, nor portions thereof, nor the Lisbon Act, nor the London Act applies, The Hague Act of November 6, 1925, shall remain in force in its entirety or to the extent that the present Act does not replace it by virtue of paragraph (1).

(3) Countries outside the Union which become party to this Act shall apply it with respect to any country of the Union not party to this Act or which, although party to this Act, has made a declaration pursuant to Article 20(1)(b)(i). Such countries recognize that the said country of the Union may apply, in its relations with them, the provisions of the most recent Act to which it is party.

Article 28

[Disputes]

(1) Any dispute between two or more countries of the Union concerning the interpretation or application of this Convention, not settled by negotiation, may, by any one of the countries concerned, be brought before the International Court of Justice by application in conformity with the Statute of the Court, unless the countries concerned agree on some other method of settlement. The country bringing the dispute before the Court shall inform the International Bureau; the International Bureau shall bring the matter to the attention of the other countries of the Union.

(2) Each country may, at the time it signs this Act or deposits its instrument of ratification or accession, declare that it does not consider itself bound by the provisions of paragraph (1). With regard to any dispute between such country and any other country of the Union, the provisions of paragraph (1) shall not apply.

(3) Any country having made a declaration in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (2) may, at any time, withdraw its declaration by notification addressed to the Director General.

Article 29

[Signature, Languages, Depositary Functions]

(1)(a) This Act shall be signed in a single copy in the French language and shall be deposited with the Government of Sweden.

(b) Official texts shall be established by the Director General, after consultation with the interested Governments, in the English, German, Italian, Portuguese, Russian and Spanish languages, and such other languages as the Assembly may designate.

(c) In case of differences of opinion on the interpretation of the various texts, the French text shall prevail.

(2) This Act shall remain open for signature at Stockholm until January 13, 1968.

(3) The Director General shall transmit two copies, certified by the Government of Sweden, of the signed text of this Act to the Governments of all countries of the Union and, on request, to the government of any other country.

(4) The Director General shall register this Act with the Secretariat of the United Nations.

(5) The Director General shall notify the Governments of all countries of the Union of signatures, deposits of instruments of ratification or accession and any declarations included in such instruments or made pursuant to Article 20(1)(c), entry into force of any provisions of this Act, notifications of denunciation, and notifications pursuant to Article 24.

Article 30

[Transitional Provisions]

(1) Until the first Director General assumes office, references in this Act to the International Bureau of the Organization or to the Director General shall be deemed to be references to the Bureau of the Union or its Director, respectively.

(2) Countries of the Union not bound by Articles 13 to 17 may, until five years after the entry into force of the Convention establishing the Organization, exercise, if they so desire, the rights provided under Articles 13 to 17 of this Act as if they were bound by those Articles. Any country desiring to exercise such rights shall give written notification to that effect to the Director General; such notification shall be effective from the date of its receipt. Such countries shall be deemed to be members of the Assembly until the expiration of the said period.

PARIS CONVENTION

(3) As long as all the countries of the Union have not become Members of the Organization, the International Bureau of the Organization shall also function as the Bureau of the Union, and the Director General as the Director of the said Bureau.

(4) Once all the countries of the Union have become Members of the Organization, the rights, obligations, and property, of the Bureau of the Union shall devolve on the International Bureau of the Organization.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

1. The purpose of this manual is to provide a guide for the examination of patent applications. It is intended for use by examiners and is not to be construed as a rule. The manual is subject to change without notice. The manual is published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20503. The manual is available in both printed and electronic form. The manual is available for purchase from the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20503. The manual is available for purchase from the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20503.





